IMAGE EVALUATION
TEST TARGET (MT-3)

Photographic Sciences Corporation
23 WEST MAIN STREET
WEBSTER, N.Y. 14580
(716) 872-4503
Technical and Bibliographic Notes/Notes techniques et bibliographiques

The Institute has attempted to obtain the best original copy available for filming. Features of this copy which may be bibliographically unique, which may alter any of the images in the reproduction, or which may significantly change the usual method of filming, are checked below.

☐ Coloured covers/
   Couverture de couleur

☐ Covers damaged/
   Couverture endommagée

☐ Covers restored and/or laminated/
   Couverture restaurée et/ou pelliculée

☐ Cover title missing/
   Le titre de couverture manque

☐ Coloured maps/
   Cartes géographiques en couleur

☐ Coloured ink (i.e. other than blue or black)/
   Encre de couleur (i.e. autre que bleue ou noire)

☐ Coloured plates and/or illustrations/
   Planches et/ou illustrations en couleur

☐ Bound with other material/
   Relié avec d'autres documents

☐ Tight binding may cause shadows or distortion
   along interior margin/
   La reliure serrée peut causer de l'ombre ou de la
   distorsion le long de la marge intérieure

☐ Blank leaves added during restoration may
   appear within the text. Whenever possible, these
   have been omitted from filming /
   Il se peut que certaines pages blanches ajoutées
   lors d'une restauration apparaissent dans le texte,
   mais, lorsque cela était possible, ces pages n'ont
   pas été filmées.

☐ Additional comments:
   Commentaires supplémentaires:

This item is filmed at the reduction ratio checked below/
Ce document est filmé au taux de réduction indiqué ci-dessous.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>10X</th>
<th>14X</th>
<th>18X</th>
<th>22X</th>
<th>26X</th>
<th>30X</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>X</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
The copy filmed here has been reproduced thanks to the generosity of:

D. B. Weldon Library
University of Western Ontario
(Regional History Room)

The images appearing here are the best quality possible considering the condition and legibility of the original copy and in keeping with the filming contract specifications.

Original copies in printed paper covers are filmed beginning with the front cover and ending on the last page with a printed or illustrated impression, or the back cover when appropriate. All other original copies are filmed beginning on the first page with a printed or illustrated impression, and ending on the last page with a printed or illustrated impression.

The last recorded frame on each microfiche shall contain the symbol → (meaning "CONTINUED"), or the symbol ▼ (meaning "END"), whichever applies.

Maps, plates, charts, etc., may be filmed at different reduction ratios. Those too large to be entirely included in one exposure are filmed beginning in the upper left hand corner, left to right and top to bottom, as many frames as required. The following diagrams illustrate the method:

---

L'exemple filmé fut reproduit grâce à la générosité de:

D. B. Weldon Library
University of Western Ontario
(Regional History Room)

Les images suivantes ont été reproduites avec le plus grand soin, compte tenu de la condition et de la netteté de l'exemplaire filmé, et en conformité avec les conditions du contrat de filmage.

Les exemplaires originaux dont la couverture en papier est imprimée sont filmés en commençant par le premier plat et en terminant soit par la dernière page qui comporte une empreinte d'impression ou d'illustration, soit par le second plat, selon le cas. Tous les autres exemplaires originaux sont filmés en commençant par la première page qui comporte une empreinte d'impression ou d'illustration et en terminant par la dernière page qui comporte une telle empreinte.

Un des symboles suivants apparaîtra sur la dernière image de chaque microfiche, selon le cas: le symbole → signifie "À SUIVRE", le symbole ▼ signifie "FIN".

Les cartes, planches, tableaux, etc., peuvent être filmées à des taux de réduction différents. Lorsque le document est trop grand pour être reproduit en un seul cliché, il est filmé à partir de l'angle supérieur gauche, de gauche à droite, et de haut en bas, en prenant le nombre d'images nécessaire. Les diagrammes suivants illustrent la méthode.
HENDERSON'S CLASSICS.
The following Classics with Notes, Vocabulary, etc.
By JOHN HENDERSON, M.A.

CAESAR'S BELLUM GALLICUM. (B. I.)
With Life of Caesar—Notes and Vocabulary.
Price 50c.

CAESAR'S BELLUM BRITANNICUM.
With Life of Caesar—Notes and Vocabulary.
Price 50c.

CICERO IN CATILINAM. (B. I.)
With Life of Cicero—Notes and Vocabulary.
Price 50c.

CICERO IN CATILINAM. (B. II.)
With Life of Cicero—Notes and Vocabulary.
Price 50c.

VERGIL'S AENEID (B. I.)
With Life of Vergil—Notes and Vocabulary.
Price 50c.

VERGIL'S AENEID (B. V.)
With Life of Vergil—Notes and Vocabulary.
Price 60c.

CAESAR'S BELLUM GALLICUM. (B. I. and II.)
With Life of Caesar—Maps, Notes and Vocabulary, etc.
Price 75c.
(also in separate volumes, each 50c.)

Milton Baker.
FASQUELLE'S FIRST LESSONS IN FRENCH.
New and Revised Edition. Enlarged by Prof. E. Roubaud, B.A.
Special Canadian Authorized Edition - 65c.

GOODWIN'S CHEMISTRY FOR MEDICAL STUDENTS
By W. L. Goodwin, D.Sc. (Edin.)
Price, - $1.75
This book comprises not only theoretical but practical Chemistry, and may thus serve as a Text Book for the whole course followed by students of medicine.

GREEN'S SHORT HISTORY OF THE ENGLISH PEOPLE.
Special Canadian Authorized Edition - $1.50

HIGH SCHOOL ZOOLOGY.
Authorized by Education Department. Price, - 75c.

MACMURCHY AND BROWN'S ELEMENTARY ARITHMETIC,
Price, - 25c.

MAGNUS' LESSONS IN ELEMENTARY MECHANICS
Price, - $1.00

MOIR'S MAP GEOGRAPHY.
Containing 12 Coloured Maps. Price, - 25c.

MOIR'S BRITISH HISTORY NOTES.
Price, - 15c.
Practical Exercises in Composition,
By H. I. Strang, B.A.
25 Cents.

MATHEMATICS.

Elementary Trigonometry,
By J. B. Lock, M.A., Fellow of Gonville and Caius College, Cambridge.
Special Canada Edition, $1.00.

Book-keeping Blanks,
(For use with McLean's High School Book-keeping.)
25 Cents.

Bi-Lingual Readers,
FIRST READER—PART I. ........................................ 10 Cents.
" " PART II. ........................................ 15 "
SECOND BOOK. ........................................ 25 "
THIRD " ........................................ 35 "
LES GRAND INVENTIONS ........................................ 50 "

Authorized by Education Department of Ontar.

Christian Catechism,
By Philip Schaff, D.D., New York, slightly abridged (by permission of the Author) from the edition published by the American S. S. Union.

Per 100 ........................................ $3.00.

The Copp, Clark Co., Ltd., Toronto.
CAESAR'S

BELLUM GALLicUM,

(BOOKS I. & II.)

WITH

INTRODUCTORY NOTICES, NOTES AND COMPLETE VOCABULARY,

FOR THE USE OF

CLASSES READING FOR DEPARTMENTAL AND UNIVERSITY
EXAMINATIONS.

BY

JOHN HENDERSON, M.A.,

HEAD MASTER, ST. CATHARINES COLLEGIATE INSTITUTE.

TORONTO:
THE COPP CLARK COMPANY, LIMITED,
9 FRONT STREET WEST.
1890.
Entered according to Act of the Parliament of Canada, in the year one thousand eight hundred and ninety, by THE COPP, CLARK COMPANY, LIMITED, Toronto, Ontario, in the Office of the Minister of Agriculture.
PREFACE.

This Edition is similar to the others of the same series of Classical Texts. While attempting to avoid giving too much help, the Editor has never refrained from assisting the Student in all passages in need of explanation. The grammatical references have been made very full. The only way to teach Latin Syntax is through the living language, and this can be successfully done if the Student carefully and studiously gets up the references to the grammar and applies them to the examples in the Text.

ST. CATHARINES COLLEGIATE INSTITUTE
March 1st, 1890
Caius Julius Caesar was born on the 12th of July, B.C. BIRTH. He was thus six years younger than Cicero and Pompey. His family (gens Julia) was not merely one of the oldest, but was also one of the most respected of the patrician families of the capital. It traced its descent to Iulus, son of Aeneas, and thus through Venus claimed to be of divine origin. It also embraced among its members many who distinguished themselves in the service of the state.

Little is known of Caesar's father, except that he held at some time or other the office of praetor, and that he died suddenly at Pisa, B.C. 84. The education of young Caesar seems to have been directed chiefly by his mother, Aurelia, who was a woman of lofty ambition and a firm believer in the noble destiny of her son. His early training, according to the fashion of that day, consisted in acquiring a knowledge of numbers, grammar, music, and in practising physical exercises. He is also said to have devoted considerable time to verse making.

1 Each Roman citizen had usually three names: called the praenomen (marking the individual), the nomen (designating the gens or clan), and the cognomen (telling the family). Thus Caius is a praenomen, Julius is a nomen, and Caesar, a cognomen. Sometimes an agnomen was added for honorary distinction as Africanus to P. Cornelius Scipio.

2 Mommsen (Hist. of Rome, Vol. III., 16) argues that Caesar was born 109 B.C. His main reason for assigning this date is that the lex annalis, which prescribed the minimum age at which a citizen could hold certain offices, was observed in Caesar's case. By this law no one could hold the qaestorship before he was 34, the aedileship before 37, the praetorship before 41, the consulship before 45. By referring to the chronological table the plausibility of the argument would appear. In answer to this we may say that: (1) the law was not always observed; (2) Suetonius represents Caesar as 16 years of age when his father died; (3) Plutarch, Suetonius and Appian, state that Caesar was 56 years of age when he was assassinated.

3 Laudes Herculis and Oedipus were among his youthful poems.
His aunt Julia was married to C. Marius. To this relationship may be ascribed the fact that Caesar at the early age of 14 was appointed to the office of priest of Jove (flamen dialis), by virtue of which he was a member of the sacred college and received a handsome income. We may also ascribe to his connection with Marius the bent of his political opinions. Caesar after the death of the great dictator led the popular or democratic party as opposed to the senatorial or aristocratic party.

He was at first betrothed to Cossutia, a wealthy heiress, but he broke off the engagement on the death of his father. In the following year (83 B.C.), he married Cornelia, daughter of L. Cornelius Cinna, the leader of the popular party and the avowed opponent of Sylla. This union was displeasing to Sylla, who ordered Caesar to divorce Cornelia. This Caesar refused to do. Through the intercession of Aurelius Cotta, Caesar was at length pardoned.

In consequence of having thwarted the will of Sylla, Caesar incurred his enmity and found it unsafe to remain at Rome. He went to the East, and served his first campaign under M. Minucius Thermus. He seems to have remained in the East for about four years, distinguishing himself for personal bravery at the siege of Mitylene and in the war against the Cilician pirates. On the report of Sylla's death, 78 B.C., he came home.

The tactics that Caesar adopted at this time to further the interests of his party showed his consummate skill as a political leader. The Roman Senate had become utterly powerless to deal with the duty of administering properly the government. The lower classes thronged with turbulent crowds the cities, in consequence of the free labour of the Italian provincials being in a great measure supplanted by slave labour. Ever since the days of the Gracchi opposed to this democratic element was the Senate, conservative in its nature, being composed of men whose interests were likely to suffer if the democratic element should get any power in the state. In the midst between these two forces we have the wealthy class led by such men as Crassus, without any aristocratic antecedents, on the one hand opposed to democracy as men of affluence naturally are, and on the other opposed to the old families who simply prided themselves in having their descent through a long line of ancestors. In fact the history of Rome from the middle of the second century, B.C., down to the time of Augustus, presents little more than
the intrigues of wily politicians who by unscrupulousness endeavoured to supplant each other in the favour of the people.

Caesar attempted to show that the Senatorial government of the provincials was thoroughly corrupt. He indicted Cn. Dolabella (78 B.C.) and C. Antonius (77 B.C.) for extortion. Though Caesar lost these causes, he really gained a triumph, since he proved the utter corruption of the courts which were filled by the Senatorial faction. To improve his style in oratory, he went to the school of Molo, at Rhodes. On the voyage thither Caesar's vessel was captured by pirates at Pharmacussa (now Captured by pirates Fermaco), one of the Sporades. He was detained for forty days, and was not released till a ransom of $50,000 had been paid. During his detention, he is said to have joined with these marauders in their sports, and to have jestingly told them that he would, when liberated, have them crucified. This threat he afterwards made good. Landing at Miletus, he collected a small fleet, captured them, and brought them to Pergamus, where they were executed. He stayed at the school of Molo for two years.

When absent from Rome, Caesar was elected pontifex. This office could be held only by one residing in the capital, and thus he was compelled to return. A reaction had meanwhile set in opposed to the policy of Sylla. With the Consulship of Pompey and Crassus (70 B.C.) a reform had been introduced by restoring the rights of the tribunes and the censors, and by remodelling the Senate. Both Pompey and Caesar supported these reforms. In 68 B.C., Caesar became quaestor, and by the virtue of this office he was entitled to a seat in the Senate. He went soon after his election with Antistius Vetus into Spain, and took up his residence at Corduba (now Cordova). One of the chief duties of the quaestor was to attend the provincial assizes (conventus), and settle the disputes that arose between provincials. In this office he displayed a spirit of equity and moderation in striking contrast to the policy of his predecessors. His popularity gained for him many adherents, who, in after days, flocked to his standard at the battle of Munda. It was during this year that he lost his wife Cornelia.

Caesar married Pompey's cousin, Pompeia, in the following year. No doubt this union was concluded for political reasons. Pompeia was now in the height of his fame. This very year he was appointed by the Gabinian law (lex Gabinia) sole com-
mander of the Roman fleet to clear the coasts of the Mediterranean of the pirates who invested it. Next year he was equally successful in defeating Mithridates, king of Armenia.

In 65 B.C., Caesar was elected curule aedile. While holding this office, he increased his popularity, as well as his debts, by the costly gladiatorial shows he gave to gratify the depraved tastes of a Roman populace. He also showed his devotion to the memory of Marius by causing the trophies of that great commander, which had been destroyed by Sylla, to be replaced. Many a veteran, reading the inscriptions recounting the victories of Campi Raudii, Aquae Sextiae, and over Jugurtha, would recall the memory of the greatest soldier of the age, the deliverer of Italy, and the sturdy supporter of popular rights. In the year 63 B.C., a year noted for the conspiracy of Catiline, Caesar became pontifex maximus. On the trial of the conspirators, Caesar advocated the penalty of perpetual banishment, while Cato advocated the death penalty. Subsequent events proved that Caesar was right.

In 62 B.C., Caesar was elected praetor, and while in this office he openly opposed the party of the Senate. On resigning the office, he went as praetor to Spain, when he managed to gain money enough to pay off his enormous debts. On his return, he united with Pompey and Crassus to form the coalition called the First Triumvirate. Pompey may be said to have been the representative of the aristocratic classes, Caesar of the democratic, while Crassus was an exponent of the moneyed party. In the next year Caesar was Consul. To further cement the union, Pompey married Julia, Caesar's daughter. During his Consulship he brought up several reforms, especially a bill for the division of the lands among the people. Before laying down his Consulship he procured the passage of a bill by which he was invested for five years with proconsular power over the Gauls and Illyricum.

Nine years were spent in the subjugation of the Gauls. In the first campaign, Caesar at Bibracte (now Autun) drove back the Helvetii who were moving westward, and attempted to subdue Gaul. In the same year he defeated at Basle Ariovistus, a German king, who at the instigation of the Arverni and Sequani had been invited to take their part against the Aedui.

In the second campaign, Caesar defeated the Belgae at the river Sabis (now Sambre).
Caesar in the third campaign broke up a coalition of the tribes B.C. 56.
of the north-west of Gaul, which had united against him. During
this year, he renewed the agreement with Pompey and
Crassus, who covenanted that his command should be extended
to five years further.

In his fourth campaign, Caesar crossed the Rhine, but remained B.C. 55.
only eighteen days on the German side. Later on in the same
year he crossed over to Britain.

The next campaign was chiefly against Britain, which, how-
ever, he only partially subdued, being recalled by a sudden up-
rising in Gaul.

He in the next campaign crushed the general revolt, under B.C. 53
Vercingetorix, of the subject tribes in Gaul. With the fall of
Alesia, the power of the Gauls was crushed for ever.

In his eighth campaign, he was complete master of Gaul, B.C. 52.
having reduced the tribes one after another to subjection.

The last campaign is uneventful. He remained in Cisalpine
Gaul, and returned to Transalpine Gaul for a short time in the
summer to review his troops.

During Caesar's absence in Gaul, Crassus was slain at the
battle of Carrhae, B.C. 53. This really broke up the Trium-
virate. Pompey began to view Caesar's career with distrust and
alarm. He entered into a league with the aristocracy and the
Senate. A demand was finally passed by the Senate that Caesar
should disband his legions. This Caesar refused to do, unless
Pompey followed the same course. Finally a decree that the
Consuls should provide that the State should receive no hurt,
was passed. This order was equivalent to a declaration of war,
and was regarded as such by Caesar.

With one legion he crossed the Rubicon, the boundary between
Gaul and Italy. Soon Italy came over to his side. Pompey
and the party of the Senate fled to Greece. Caesar marched to
Spain, defeated the party of Pompey at Ilerda, and took Massalia
in Southern Gaul.

Caesar then prepared to follow Pompey. For some time both
armies encamped on the Aegus in Illyricum. Finally the decisive
battle was fought August 9th, B.C. 48, at Pharsalia. Though
Caesar's forces were but one-half the number of those of Pompey,
the superior generalship and the courage of despair won the day,
and Pompey's troops were completely routed. Pompey fled to
Egypt, where he was treacherously murdered by an emissary of the king. Caesar followed and became involved in difficulties in settling the succession to the throne.

Soon after he crushed the Pompeian party at the battle of Thapsus, in Africa, 46 B.C. Caesar was now the master of the Roman world. He returned to Rome, celebrated his three triumphs, and published a general amnesty to his opponents. He reformed the calendar, and introduced many useful measures for the internal economy of the State.

In 45 B.C., the two sons of Pompey had collected a force in Spain. Thither Caesar marched, and at Munda totally defeated it. The Senate conferred on him nearly all the offices of State, and thus the whole authority was centered in one man.

A conspiracy, headed by Brutus and Cassius, was formed against him. They were actuated partly by mistaken patriotic motives, and partly by personal jealousy and hatred. Caesar fell March 15th, 44 B.C., pierced by the daggers of the assassins just as he had entered the Senate house.

Caesar was tall, and of commanding aspect; his features well marked and prominent; his complexion fair; his eyes keen, black, and expressive. In latter life he was bald, which he somewhat concealed by wearing a sort of diadem. His robust frame was inured to hardship, and exhibited remarkable powers of endurance. With regard to dress he was very fastidious. His private life was singularly free from many of the vices of the age.

II.

THE WORKS OF CAESAR.

(1) Extant:—

(a) Commentarii de Bello Gallico, in seven books. This work contains an account of the conquest of Gaul, from B.C. 58 to B.C. 52. In the first book we have the conquest of the Helvetii mentioned, and in the seventh book the death of Clodius is referred to as lately having taken place. As the death of Clodius happened B.C. 52, we may assume that the events recorded happened between these two dates. An eighth book was added by Aulus Hirtius to complete the events to 51 B.C.

(b) Commentarii de Bello Civili, in three books. This gives an account of the civil wars down to the time of the
LIFE OF CAESAR.

Alexandrine war. The history of the Alexandrine, African, and Spanish campaigns were afterwards added. Hirtius probably wrote the account of the Alexandrine campaign; Oppius, that of the African; the account of the Spanish war was written probably by a centurion of Caesar’s army, according to Niebuhr, who discovers a change in style and expression from that of the other two accounts.

(2) Lost Works:—

(a) Anticato. A reply to Cicero’s panegyric on Cato Uticensis, who fell at Thapsus, B.C. 46.

(b) De Analoga, or as Cicero calls it, De Ratione Latine loquendi. Dedicated to Cicero, and written when Caesar was crossing the Alps.

(c) Libri Auspiciorvm or Auguralia. Published B.C. 63, when Caesar was Pontifex maximus.

(d) De Astris. Published also B.C. 63.

(e) Apothegmata, or Dieta Collectanea. A collection of witticisms made at different times.

(f) Poemata; nearly all written in his youth. To these belong Oedipus, Laudes Herculis, and Iter (describing his journey from Spain, B.C. 46).

III.

THE CONQUEST OF GAUL.

In the year 600 B.C., the Greeks of Phocaea, in Asia Minor, Greek emigrated and settled at Massilia (now Marseilles). On the conquest of Asia Minor by Cyrus, the Great, many of their countrymen joined the Phocaeans; and soon the young Greek colony rose to power. The inhabitants of Massilia became the leaders in learning and commerce, and established colonies along the neighbouring coast of the Mediterranean. As the Greek colonies encroached on the wild barbarians, wars naturally arose. In 154 B.C., the Ligurians besieged Antipolis and Nicaea, two dependencies of Massilia, when the Massiliots called in the aid of the Romans, by whose aid the Ligurians were defeated, and part of the territory of the Ligurians given to the Massiliots. Another attack soon after (125 B.C.) was made by the Ligurians, who were reduced a second time. The army of C. Sextius Calvinus, after three campaigns, plundered their territory, and reduced the inhabitants to slavery. Near Massilia,
he founded the town of Aquae Sextiae (now Aix), which obtained its name from the hot springs of the neighbourhood. About this time, the Aedui and Allobroges were at war. The Arverni, the most powerful of the Gallic tribes, aided the Allobroges, while the Aedui concluded a treaty with the Romans. In 121 B.C., Cn. Domitius defeated the Allobroges at Vindali-um, a little above Avignon; and in the same year the Gallic confederates were defeated by the united armies of Cn. Domitius and Q. Fabius Maximus, near the united of the Isere and the Rhone. The country of the Allobroges was reduced to a Roman province, and received the name Provincia. Massilia, however, still retained her independence. Within the next succeeding years, the Romans enlarged the boundaries of the original Provincia, which extended at first from the Alps to the Rhone, by reducing that portion of Gaul from the Rhone to the Pyrenees; thus keeping open the road to Spain.

In 113 B.C. the whole of Italy was thrown into consternation by the invasion of the Cimbri and Teutones. After wandering about the Northern Italy, they entered Gaul and attacked the Roman Provincia. In 109 B.C. they defeated the Consul, M. Junius Silanus. The Romans sustained another defeat two years later when they attempted to keep back the Tugurini, one of the Helvetic cantons who were attempting to enter Gaul. In this battle fell L. Piso, the grandfather of Caesar's father-in-law. In 106 B.C., Q. Servilius Caepio sacked Toulouse, which had formed a league with the Cimbri and Teutones. This temporary gain was followed by a crushing defeat inflicted on the Romans near the banks of the Rhone by the Cimbri and Teutones.

The Cimbri separated from the Teutones and laid waste all the land between the Rhone and the Pyrenees. While the Teutones remained on the East of the Rhone, the Cimbri turned back from the Pyrenees, joined the Teutones, and then passed the Alps. Marius, who had gained great glory in the Jugurthine war, was sent against the invaders. He hastened to Southern Gaul, and defeated the Teutones at Aquae Sextiae, 102 B.C. In the following year he met the Cimbri at Vercellae and crushed them in battle.

During the civil war, Sertorius, a follower of Marius, stirred up the Aquitani to revolt. The revolt, however, was unimportant. During the Consulship of Cicero, Catiline attempted to carry out his nefarious conspiracy. He and his associates...
attempted to gain over the deputies of the Allobroges, who were on some mission at Rome, to join the conspiracy. These deputies betrayed the proposals to the Consul. The Allobroges not being successful in their mission, and perhaps instigated by the representations of Catiline, took up arms and defeated Manlius Lentulus. In a second battle, however, they were defeated by Pomptinus.

The Aedui, proud of their alliance with Rome, began to lord it over the other tribes. The Sequani formed an alliance with the Arverni. These two tribes invited Ariovistus, a German, to assist them against the Aedui. Soon the Aedui were reduced to submission. Their chief, Divitiacus, went to Rome, and implored the aid of the Senate. The Sequani meanwhile found out that Ariovistus from being an ally turned to be their master. He demanded a third part of the territory of the Sequani, and being refused, defeated them in battle at Magetobriga. After this he ruled them with unbearable insolence.

In B.C. 60, a report reached Rome that the Helvetii, like the Emigration of Helvetii. Cimbri and Teutones, were preparing for a grand emigration.

The plan was under the direction of Orgetorix, a wealthy Helvetic noble. Seeing the fertile plains of Gaul, they were dissatisfied with their own land. In the previous year a decree had been passed at Rome, that the Governor of Gaul for the time being should protect the allies of the Roman people. In the next year 59 B.C., Julius Caesar was Consul. During his Consulship, P. Vatinius proposed a law giving Caesar the government of Gaul and Illyricum for five years. Caesar's object was to complete the conquest of Gaul. He remained at Rome till after the exile of Cicero. Soon after this B.C. 58, he hastily set out for Gaul, on the report that the Helvetii were on the move westward.

IV.
THE ROMAN ARMY.

In ancient times of Rome, the army was drawn in a solid mass (phalanx), a method very common among the Macedonians, and perhaps derived from them. Camillus (circa, 390 B.C.) is said to have broken up the phalanx into smaller bodies, called manipuli, capable of acting independently and also in concert. The whole legion was arranged in three lines. In the first (hastati) were the youngest men, in the second (principes) were
men in the full vigor of life, and in the third (triarii) were the veterans. Each line contained ten manipuli, arranged in the following fashion:

*Hastati*: 

*Principes*: 

*Triarii*: 

Each manipulus of the two first lines contained two centuriae, each commanded by a centurio. The centurian commanding the right century of the manipuli was styled centurio prior, the one commanding the left century, centurio posterior. Light armed troops (velites) were attached, twenty, to each century. Thus we have:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Line</th>
<th>Manipuli</th>
<th>Men</th>
<th>Centuriae</th>
<th>Men</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><em>Hastati</em></td>
<td>10</td>
<td>120</td>
<td>20</td>
<td>60</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Principes</em></td>
<td>10</td>
<td>120</td>
<td>20</td>
<td>60</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Triarii</em></td>
<td>10</td>
<td>60</td>
<td>30</td>
<td>30</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

To every century, 20 velites = 1,200

This was the *triplex acies* referred to so often by Caesar. To each legion were attached 10 turma, or squadrons of cavalry of 30 men each; each turma being sub-divided into three decuriae of 10 men each; each decuria was headed by an officer called decurio.

To Caesar or Marius is ascribed the custom of drawing up the legion of cohorts. Each legion, when complete, had regularly 6,000 men, divided into 10 cohorts (cohortes), each cohort divided into 3 maniples (manipuli), and each maniple into two centuries (centuriae). The spear (hasta) was given to the triarii, who also seem to have been armed with the pike (pilum). Hence the two first lines were sometimes called *ante-pilari*.

**Officers.** The officers of the army were:

**Centurions.** (a) *Centuriones (Centuriones)*: These were the leaders of the centuries, two in each maniple, six in each cohort, and sixty in each legion. There was a regular system of promotion in the Roman army. The highest centurion was the first centurion of the first maniple of the first cohort, so the lowest would be the second centurion of the third
maniple of the tenth cohort. As a badge of authority the centurions carried a staff.

(b) **Military Tribunes (Tribuni Militum):** These were six Tribunes to each legion; hence ten centurions were under each tribune.

(c) **Lieutenants (Legati):** These were next the general in Legati command. The cavalry were under the command of the praefecti equitum and decuriones.

The weapons of a Roman soldier were of two kinds:

(1) **Offensive weapons.** The ordinary soldier (miles legionarius) Arma. was armed with (a) the javelin. Of this there were four kinds: pilum, jaculum, hasta, lancea. The pilum was a strong heavy pike, consisting of a square shaft of wood four feet long, to the end of which was a strong sharp iron point about two feet long attached. The jaculum was a lighter dart used for hurling, while the hasta was a long spear used for stabbing. The lancea was a light spear with a broad point. The infantry used the pilum, while the cavalry and light armed troops, the jaculum) hasta, and lancea. Some of the latter carried bows (arcus, and arrows (sagittae), slings (fundae).

(b) The sword (gladius) was short, broad, double-edged and pointed more used for stabbing than for slashing. It was kept in a light scabbard fastened to a belt (balteus).

(2) **Defensive weapons.** The soldier of the legion had: (a) a brass helmet (cassis), surmounted with a crest; (b) a cuirass (lorica), made of leather, or of strips of metal fastened on the leather, or of metallic scales, or of brazen plates; (c) greaves (ocreae), reaching as high as the knee: (d) a shield, either oblong, made of boards, covered with leather and surrounded with a broad metallic rim (scutum), or made of bronze and of an oval shape (cfipeus). The light armed troops had a small buckler (parma) and a helmet of leather (galea). The soldier had beneath his armour his tunic (tunica), a thick, woollen under-garment reaching nearly to the knees. His cloak (sagum) was of heavy, woollen stuff, fastened by a brooch on the shoulder, and open in front. The cloak of the general was called paludamentum.
The standards of the Roman army were: (a) Aquila, or eagle, the standard of the legion. This was of gold, silver, or bronze, with expanded wings. It was generally borne by the first centurion (principus). To lose the eagle was a great disgrace. The standard of the maniples was called (b) signum, and was of various designs, sometimes a wolf, dog, horse, serpent, figure of victory, &c. (c) The vexillum was a square or oblong banner carried by the cavalry.

The musical instruments of the army were: (a) tūba, trumpet, was straight, and deep-toned. This was used for the signals of advance and retreat for infantry; (b) cornu and buccina were crooked, and had a shriller note, and generally used to indicate a change of watch; (c) lituus, was formed like an augur's staff, and used for cavalry.

V.
THE ARMY ON THE MARCH.

The army on the march may be divided into three divisions: (a) agmen primum, or van; (b) exercitus, agmen legionum, or main body; (c) agmen novissimum, or rear. The van was generally composed of light armed troops of infantry or cavalry. Their chief duty was to find out the force of the enemy, or to hold the enemy at bay until the main body should arrive. The main body with the baggage train (impedimenta), followed. The rear generally consisted of cavalry or light armed troops.

The average march (iter justum) was from six to seven hours, or from fifteen to twenty miles a day. On the forced march the soldiers often covered fifty miles a day.

On the march, the soldiers carried two Roman pecks of grain (frumentum), cooking utensils (vasa), his arms, blanket, and two rampart stakes (valli). The private baggage of the soldier was called sarcinae.

VI.
THE ARMY IN CAMP.

When the army was on the march, men (metatores) were sent forward to select a suitable place for a camp. If possible, a high ground (locus superior) was sought.

The camp was usually square or oblong. An embankment (vallum), formed from the ground thrown up from trench (fossa), surrounded the camp. The camp had four gates: (1) porta praetoria, near the praetorium, or general's tent, faced the
enemy; (2) porta decumana was opposite to this; (3) porta principalis sinistra on the left; and (4) porta principalis dextra on the right. Connecting these two latter gates was the via principalis, and parallel to the street was the via quintana. Connecting the porta praetoria and porta decumana was the via praetoria.

The pickets were generally called excubitores; vigiliae were night watches; custodiae were sentinels to guard some particular post.

The average pay was about 6½ cents per day. Caesar doubled this. A centurion received 25 cents a day. Besides their regular pay Caesar often gave them the money that accrued from the sale of booty.
DIAGRAM OF CAMP.
EXPLANATION OF DIAGRAM.

1. Prætorium, or General's tent.
2. Ground for horses and baggage of the Tribuni militum.
3. Tents of the Tribuni militum.
4. Ground occupied by horses and baggage of praefcti sociorum.
5. Tents of praefcti sociorum.
6. Street, 100 feet wide called principia or via principalis.
7. Cross street, 50 feet wide, on both sides of which were the tents of the Roman equites or horse.
8. The equites of two Roman legions, in 10 turmas or troops each.
9. The triarii of two Roman legions, in 10 maniipuli each, forming on two different streets.
10. Two streets, each 50 feet wide, between the triarii and principes of two legions.
11. The principes of two Roman legions, in 10 manipuli each.
12. The hastati of two Roman legions, in 10 manipuli each.
13. Two streets, each 50 feet wide between the hastati of the two Roman legions and the horse (equites) of the allies.
14. The horse of the allies.
15. The infantry of the allies.
16. The quintana via, a street 50 feet wide.
17. Quaestorium, the quaestor's tent.
18. The tents of legati; in front of them and the quaestorium was the forum where things were sold.
19. The veteran horse (evocati equites).
20. The veteran foot (evocati pedites).
21. The horse of the consular life guards (ablecti equites).
22. The foot of the consular life guards (ablecti pedites).
23. A cross street, 100 feet wide.
25. Extraordinarii equites, a part of allied horse to serve in consul's body guard.
26. Extraordinarii pedites, a part of allied foot to serve in consul's body guard.
27. Quarters for strangers coming into camp.
28. A span of 200 feet between tents and rampart.
29. Rampart (vallum).
30. Ditch (fossa), 9 feet deep, 12 feet wide.
31. Porta principales dextra.
32. Porta principalis sinistra.
33. Porta decumana.
34. Porta praetoria.
35. A transverse breastwork protecting the gates.
C. JULII CAESARIS
DE BELLO GALLICO
COMMENTARIORUM.
LIBER PRIMUS.

I. Gallia est omnis divisa in partes tres, quorum unam incolunt Belgae, aliam Aquitani, tertiam qui ipsorum lingua Celtae, nostra Galli, appellantur. Hi omnes lingua, institutis, legibus inter se differunt. Gallos ab Aquitanis Garumna flumen, a Belgis Matrona et Sequana dividit. Horum omnium fortissimi sunt Belgae, propter quod a cultui atque humanitate provinciae longissime absunt, minimeque ad eos mercatores saepe commen, atque ea quae ad effeminandos animos pertinent important; proximique sunt Germanis qui trans Rhenum incolunt, quibuscum continenter bellum gerunt. Qua de causa Helvetii quoque reliquos Gallos virtute praecedunt, quod fere quotidians proelii cum Germanis contendunt, quum aut suis finibus eos prohibent, aut ipsi in eorum finibus bellum gerunt. Eorum una pars, quam Gallos obtinere dictum est, infimum capit a flumine Rhodano; continetur Garumna flumine, Oceano, finibus Belgarum; attingit etiam ab Sequanis et Helvetiis flumen Rhenum; vergit ad septentriones. Belgae ab extremis Galliae finibus oruntur; pertinent ad inferiorem partem Fluminis Rheni; spectant in septentriones et orientem solem. Aquitania a Garumna flumine ad Pyrenaos montes et eam partem Oceani, quae est ad Hispaniam, pertinet; spectat inter occasum solis et septentriones.

II.—Apud Helvetios longe nobilissimus et ditissimus fuit Oger- torix. Is, Marco Messala et Marco Pison consulibus, regni cupiditate inductus, conjurationem nobilitatis fecit; et civitati per- sit ut de finibus suis cum omnibus copiis exirent; facile esse,
quum virtute omnibus praestarent, totius Galliae imperio potiri. Id lucilius eis persuasit quod undique loci natura Helvetii continentur: una ex parte flumine Rheno, latissimo atque altissimo, qui agrum Helvetium a Germanis dividit: altera ex parte monte Jura altissimo, qui est inter Sequanos et Helvetios; tertia, lacus Lemanno et flumine Rhodano qui Provinciam nostram ab Helvetiis dividit. His rebus fiebat ut et minus late vagarentur et minus facile finitimis bellum inferre possent: qua de causa homines bellandi cupidi magno dolore afficiabantur. Pro multitudine autem hominum et pro gloria belli atque fortitudinis Rustos se fines habere arbitrabantur qui in longitudinem millia passuum ducenta et quadraginta, in latitudinem centum et octoginta patebant.

III.—His rebus adducti et auctoritate Orgetorigis permoti constituerunt ca quae ad profisciscendum pertinere comparare, jumentorum et carorum quam maximum numerum coemere, sementes quam maximas facere ut in itinere copia frumenti suppeteret, cum proximis civitatibus pacem et amicitiam confirmare. Ad eas res conficiendas biennium sibi satis esse duxerunt; in tertium annum profectionem lege confirmant. Ad eas res conficiendas Orgetorigis deligitur. Is sibi legationem ad civitates suscepit. In eo itinere persuadet Castico, Catamantaloedis filio, Sequano, cujus pater regnum in Sequanis multis annos obtinuerat et a senatu populi Romani amicus appellatus erat ut regnum in civitate sua occuparet quod pater ante habuerat; itemque Dumnorigi Aeduos, fraatri Divitiaci, qui eo tempore principatum in civitate obtinebat ac maxime plebi acceptus erat, ut idem conaretur, persuadet, elque filiam suam in matrimonium dat. (Perfacile factu esse illis probat conata perficere: propere quod ipse suae civitatis imperium obtenturus esse: non esse dubium quin totius Galliae plurimum Helvetii possent: se suis copiis suoque exercitu illis regna conciliaturum confirmat. Hac oratione adducti inter se fidem et jusjurandum dant, et regno occupato per tres potentissimos ac firmissimos populos totius Galliae sese potiri posse sperant.

IV.—Ea res ut Helvetiis per indicium enuntiata, moribus suis Orgetorigem ex vinculis causam dicere coegerunt: damnatum poenam sequi oporetbat ut igni cremaretur. Die constituta causa. dictionis Orgetorigis ad judicium omnem suam familiam ad hoc.
DE BELLO GALlico, LIB. I.

num millia decem undique coegit; et omnes clientes obaeratosque
suos, quorum magnum numerum habebat, eodem conduxit: per
eos ne causam dicere se eripuit. Quum civitas ob eam rem in-
icitata armis jus suum exsequi conaretur, multitudinemque homi-
num ex agris magistratus cogerent, Orgetorix mortuus est: neque
abest suspicio, ut Helvetii arbitrantur, quin ipse sibi mortem
conscriberit.

V.—Post ejus mortem nihilo minus Helvetii id quod con-
stituerant facere conantur, ut e finibus suis exeat. Ubi jam se ad
cam rem paratos esse arbitrati sunt, oppida sua omnia numero ad
duodecim, vicis ad quadringentos, reliqua privata aedificia incen-
dunt, frumentum omnem praeter quod secum portaturi erant com-
burunt, ut, domum redidionis spe sublata, paratores ad omnia
peri culia subeunda essent; trium mensium molita cibaria sibi
quemque domo effcre jubent. Persuadent Rauracis et Tulingis
et Latobrigis finitimis uti eodem usi consilio oppidis suis
vicisque exustis una cum iis profisciscantur; Boiosque, qui trans
Rhenum incoluerant et in agrum Noricum transierant Noreiamque
oppugnarant, receptos ad se socios sibi adsciscunt.

VI.—Erant omnino itinera duo, quibus itineribus domo exire
possent: unum per Sequanos, angustum et difficile, inter montem
Juram et flumen Rhodanum, vix qua singuli carri ducerentur; mons
autem altissimus impendebat ut facile paucis prohibere possent:
alterum per Provinciam nostram, multo facilius atque expeditius,
properea quod inter fines Helvetiorum et Allobrogum, qui nuper
nacati erant, Rhodanus fluit isque nonnullis locis vado transitur.
Extremum oppidum Allobrogum est proximumque Helvetiorum
finibus Genava. Ex eo oppido pons ad Helvetios pertinet. Allo-
brogibus sese vel persuasuros, quod nondum bono animo in Popu-
lim Romanum viderentur, existimabant; vel vi coacturos ut
per suas fines eos ire paterentur. Omnibus rebus ad profe-
tionem comparatis diem dicunt, qua die ad ripam Rhodani
omnes conveniant: is dies erat ante diem quintum Kalendas
Apriles, Lucio Pisone Aulo Gabinio consulibus.

VII.—Caesari quum id nuntiatum esset, eos per Provinciam
nostram iter facere conari, maturat ab urbe profiscisci et quam
maximis potest itineribus in Galliam ulteriorem contendit et ad Genavam pervenit. Provinciae toti quam maximum militum numerum imperat: erat omnino in Gallia ulteriore legio una: pontem qui erat ad Genavam jubet rescindi. Ubi de ejus adventu Helvetii certiores facti sunt, legatos ad eum mittunt nobilissimos civitatis, cuius legationis Nameius et Verudoctius principem locum obtinebant, qui dicerent, Sibi esse in animo sine ullo maleficio iter per provinciam facere, propterea quod aliud iter haberent nullum: rogare ut ejus voluntate id sibi facere liceat. Caesar, quod memoria tenebat Lucium Cassium consulem occisum exercitumque ejus ab Helvetis pulsum et sub jugum missum, concedendum non putabat: neque homines inimico animo data facultate per provinciam itineris faciundi temperaturos ab injuria et maleficio existimabat. Tamen, ut spatium intercedere posset, dum milites quos imperaverat convenirent, legatis respondit diem se ad deliberandum sumpturum: si quid vellent, ante diem Idus Aprilis reverterentur.

VIII.—Interea ea legione quam secum habebat militibusque qui ex Provincia convenerant, a lacu Lemanno, qui in flumen Rhodanum influit, ad montem Juram qui fines Sequanorum ab Helvetis dividit, millia passus... decem novem murum in altitudinem pedum sedecim fossamque perducit. Eo operae perfecto praesidia disponit, castella communit, quo facilius, si se invito transire conarentur, prohibere posset. Ubi ea dies quam constituerat cum legatis venit, et legati ad eum reverterunt, negat Se more et exemplo Populi Romani posse iter ulli per provinciam dare et si vim facere contentur prohibiturum ostendit. Helvetii ea sper dejecti navibus junctus ratibusque compluribus factis, alii vadis Rhodani, qua minima altitudo fluminis erat, nonnullam interi, saepius noctu, si perrumpere possent conati, operis munitione et militum concursu et telis repuls, hoc conatu destiterunt.

IX.—Relinquebatur una per Sequanos via, qua Sequanis invitis propter angustias ire non poterant. His quum sua sponte persuadere non possent, legatos ad Dumnorigem Aeduum mittunt ut eo deprecatore a Sequanis impetraent. Dumnorix gratia et largitione apud Sequanos plurimum poterat, et Helvetii erat
amicus quod ex ea civitate Orgetoriligis filiam in matrimonium duxerat, et cupiditate regni adductus novis rebus studebat et quam plurimas civitates suo sibi beneficio habere obstrictas volet. Itaque rem suscipit, et a Sequanis imperat ut per fines suos ire Helvetios patiatur obdesque ut inter sese dent perficit: Sequani, ne itinere Helvetios prohibeant; Helvetii, ut sine maleficio et injuria transire.

X.—Caesari renuntiatur Helvetii esse in animo pe: agrum Sequanorum et Aedorum iter in Santonum fines facere, qui non longe a Tolosatium finibus absunt, quae civitas est in Provincia. Id si fieret, intelligebat magno cum provinciae periculo futurum ut homines bellicosos, Populi Romani inimicos, locis patentibus maximeque frumentariis finitimos haberet. Ob eas causas ei munitioni quam fecerat Titum Labienum legatum praefecit: ipse in Italiam magnis itinereibus contendit duasque ibi legiones conscriberit, et tres, quae circum Aquileiam hiemabant, ex hibernis eduit, et qua proximum iter in ulteriorem Galliam per Alpes erat cum his quinque legionibus ire contendit. Ibi Centrones et Graioceli et Caturiges locis superioribus occupatis itinere exercitum prohibere conantur. Compluribus his proeliis pulsis, ab Ocelo, quod est citerioris provinciae extremum, in fines Vocontiorum ulteriores provinciae die septimo pervenit, inde in Allobrogum fines, ab Allobrogibus in Segusianos exercitum ducit. Hi sunt extra provinciam trans Rhodanum primum.

XI.—Helvetii jam per angustias et fines Sequanorum suas copias transduxerant, et in Aedorum fines pervenerant, eorumque agros populabantur. Aedui, quum se suaque ab iis defendere non possent, legatos ad Caesarem mittunt rogatum auxilium: Ita se omni tempore de Populo Romano meritos esse ut paene in conspectu exercitus nostri agri vastari, liberi eorum in servitudinem abduci, oppida expugnari non debuerint. Eodem tempore Aedui Ambarri, necessarii et consanguinei Aedorum, Caesarem certarem faciunt sese depopulatis agris non facile ab oppidis vim hostium prohibere: item Allobroges, qui trans Rhodanum vicos possessionesque habeant, fuga se ad Caesarem recipiunt, et demonstrant sibi praeter agri solum nil element quoque. Quibus rebus adductus Caesar non expectandum sibi statuit dum omnibus fortunis sociorum consumptis in Santonos Helvetii pervenirent.
XII.—Flumen est Arar, quod per fines Aednorum et Sequanorum in Rhodanum influit incredibili lenitate, ita ut oculis in utram partem fluat judicari non possit. Id Helvetii ratibus ac lintribus junctis transibant. Ubi per exploratores Caesar certior factus est tres jam copiarum partes Helvetios id flumen transduxisse, quartam vero partem citra flumen Ararim reliquam esse, de tertia vigilia cum legionibus tribus e castris profectus ad eam partem pervenit quae nondum flumen transierat. Eos impeditos et inopinantes aggressus magnam eorum partem concidit: reliqui fugae sese mandarunt atque in proximas silvas abdiderunt.

Is pagus appellabatur Tigurinus; nam omnis civitas Helvetia in quatuor pagos divisa est. Hic pagus unus quum domo exisset patrum nostrorum memoria, Lucium Cassium consulem interfecerat et ejus exercitum sub jugum miserat. Ita sive casu, sive, consilio deorum immortalium, quae pars civitatis Helvetiae insignem calamitatem Populo Romano intulerat, ea princeps poenas persolvit. Qua in re Caesar non solum publicas sed etiam privatas injurias ultus est, quod ejus socii Lucii Pisonis avum, Lucium Pisonem legatum, Tigurini eodem proelio quo Cassium interfecerant.

XIII.—Hoc proelio facto, reliquas copias Helvetiorum ut consequi posset pontem in Arare faciendum curat, atque ita exercitum transducit. Helvetii repentino ejus adventu commoti, quum id quod ipsi diebus viginti aegerrime confecerant, ut flumen transirent, uno illum die facisse intelligerent, legatos ad eum mittunt, cujus legationis Divico princeps fuit, qui bello Cassiano dux Helvetiorum fuerat. Ita igitur Caesar egi: Si pacem Populus Romanus cum Helvetii faceret, in eam partem ituros atque ibi futuros Helvetios ubi eos Caesar constituisset atque esse voluisset: sin bello perseveraret, reminisceretur et veteris incommodi Populi Romani et pristinae virtutis Helvetiorum. Quod improviso unum pagum adortus esset, quum hi qui flumen transissent suis auxilium ferre non possent, ne ob eam rem aut suae magnopere virtutis tribueret aut ipsos despiceret: se igitur patribus majoribusque suis didicisse ut magis virtute quam dolo aut insidiis niterentur. Quare ne committeret ut is locus ubi constituisset ex calamitate Populi Romani et internece exercitus nomen caperet aut memoriam prodieret.
XIV.—His Caesar ita respondit: Eo sibi minus dubitationis dari quod eas res quas legati Helvetii commemorassent memoria teneret, atque eo gravius ferre quo minus merito Populi Romani accidissent; qui si aliquus iuriae sibi conscius fuisset, non fuisse difficile cave: sed eo deceptum quoque commissum a se interigitur quare timeret, neque sine causa timendum putaret. Quod si veteris contumeliae oblivisci velit, num etiam recentium injuriarum, quod eo invito iter per Provinciam per vim tentassent, quod Aeduos, quod Ambarros, quod Allobrogas vexassent, memoria deponere posse? Quod sua victoria tam insolenter gloriamur, quodque tamdiu se impune tulisse admirarentur codem pertineret: consuesse enim deos immortales, quo gravius homines ex commutatione rerum doleant, quos pro scelere eorum ulcisci velint, his secundiores interdum res et diuturniorem impunitatem concedere. Quum ea ita sint, tamen, si obsides ab his sibi dentur ut eae quae policeantur facturos intelligat, et si Aeduis de injuriis quas ipsius sociisque eorum intulerint, item si Allobrogibus satisfaciant, sese cum iis pacem esse facturum. Divico respondit: Ita Helvetios a majoribus suis institutos esse uti obsides accipere, non dare consueti: ejus rei Populum Romanum esse testem. Hoc responso dato decessit.

XV.—Postero die castra ex eo loco movent. Idem facit Caesar equitatumque omnem ad numerum quatuor millium, quem ex omni Provincia et Aeduis atque eorum sociis coactum habebat, praemittit qui videant quas in partes hostes iter faciant. Qui cupidius novissimam agmen sequi acero loco cum equitatu Helvetiorum proelium committunt; et pauci de nostris cadunt. Quo proelio sublati Helvetii, quod quisque equitas tantum multitudinem equitum propulerant, audaciae subsistere nonnullam et novissimam agmine proelio nostros lacesse coeperunt. Caesar suos a proelio continebat, ac satis habebat in praesentia hostem rapinis, pabulationibus populationibusque prohibere. Ita dies circiter quindecim iter fecerunt uti inter novissimum hostium agmen et nostrum primum non amplius quinis aut senis millibus passuum interesset.

XVI.—Interim quotidie Caesar Aeduos frumentum quod esset publice polliciti flagitare. Nam propter frigora, quod Gallia sub
septentrionibus, ut ante dictum est, posita est, non modo frumenta in agris matura non erant, sed ne pabuli quidem satis magna copia suppetebat: eo autem frumento quod flumine Arare navibus subvereat, propterea uti minus poterat quod iter ab Arare Helvetii averterat, a quibus discedere nolebat. Diem ex die ducere Aedui; conferri, comportari, adesse dicere. Ubi se diutius duci intellexit, et diem instare, quo die frumentum militibus metiri oporteret, convocatis eorum principibus, quorum magnam copiam in castris habebat, in his Divitaco et Lisco, qui summo magistratu praerat, quem Vergobretum appellant Aedui, qui creatur annuus, et vitae necisque in suis labet potestatem, graviter eos accusat quod, quum neque emi neque ex agris sumi posset, tam necessario tempore, tam propinquis hostibus, ab iis non subievetur; praesertim quum magna ex parte eorum precibus adductus bellum susceperit, multo etiam gravius, quod sit destitutus, queritur.

XVII.—Tum demum: Liscus oratione Caesaris adductus quod ante tacuerat proponit: Esse nonnullos, quorum auctoritas apud plebem plurimum valeat, qui privati plus possint quam ipsi magistratus. Hos seditiosa atque improba oratione multitudinem deterre ne frumentum conferant quod praestare dehant. Si jam principatum Galliae obtinere non possent, Gallorum quam Romanorum imperia perferre satius esse, neque dubitare debere quin, si Helvetios superaverint Romani, una cum reliqua Gallia Aeduis libertatem siuit erepturi. Ab iisdem nostra consilia queaque in castris gerantur hostibus enuntiari: hos a se coerceri non posse. Quin etiam quod necessario rem coactus Caesaris enuntiari, intelligere sese quanto id cum periculo fecerit, et ob eam causam quamdiu potuerit taceuisse.

XVIII.—Caesar hac oratione Lisci Dumnorigem, Divitaci fratrem, designari sentiebat: sed quod pluribus praesentibus eas res jactari nolebat, celeriter concilium dimitit, Liscum retinet: quaerit ex solo ea quae in conventu dixerat. Dicit liberius atque audacius. Eadem secreto ab alii quaerit; reperit esse vera: Ipsum esse Dumnorigem, summa audacia, magna apud plebem propter liberalitatem gratia, cupidum rerum novarum: complures annos por- toria reliquaque omnia Aeduorum vectigalia parvo pretio redempta habere, propterea quod illo licente contra liceri audeat nemo. His
rebus et suam rem familiarem auxisse et facultates ad largiendum magnas comparasse: magnum numerum equitatus suo sumptu semper alere et circum se habere: neque solum domi sed etiam apud finitimae civitates largiter posse, atque hujus potentiae causa matrem in Biturigibus homini illi nobilissimo ac potentissimo collocasse: ipsum ex Helvetis uxor habere: sororem ex matre et propinquas suas nuptum in alias civitates collocasse: favere et cupere Helvetis propter eam affinitatem: odisse etiam suo nomine Caesarem et Romanos quod corum adventu potentia ejus deminuta et Divitiacus frater in antiquum locum gratiae atque honoris sit restitutus. Si quid accidat Romanis, summam in spem per Helvetios regni obtinendi venire: imperio Populi Romani non modo de regno sed etiam de ea quam habeat gratia despare. Reperirebat etiam inquiringre Caesar, quod proelium equestre adversum paucis ante diebus esset factum, initium ejus fugae factum a Dumnorico atque ejus equitibus; nullaeque eum auxi комиссиis Aedui misericordia Dumnorice praesertim sequeperit, 

XIX.—Quibus rebus cognitis, quum ad has suspicione certissimae res accederent, quod per fines Sequanorum Helvetios transduxisset, quod obsides inter eos eadem curasset, quod ea omnia non modo injussu suo et civitatis sed etiam insciens IPSI fecisset, quod a magistratu Aeduius accusaretur, satis esse causae arbitrarium, quare in eum aut ipse animadvertet, aut civitatem animadvertere jubet. His omnibus rebus unum repugnavit quod Divitiaci fratrii summum in Populum Romanum studium, summam in se voluntatem, egregiam fidelem, justitiam, temperantiam cognoverat: nam ne ejus supplicio Divitiacis animam offendere verebatur. Itaque priscuquam quicumque conaretur, Divitiacum ad se vocari jubet et quotidians interprete remotis per Caium Valerium Procillum, principem Galliae provinciae, familarum suum, cui summam omnium rerum sedem habebat, cum eo colloquirit: simul commoneficit, quae ipso praesente in concilio Gallorum de Dumnorico sint dicta, et ostendit quae separatim quisque de eo apud se dixerit: petit atque hortatur ut sine ejus offensione animi vel ipse de eo causa cognita statuat vel civitatem statuere jubet.
XX.—Divitiacus multis cum lacrimis Caesarem complexus obscincare coepit Ne quid gravius in fratrem statueret: scire se illa esse vera, nec quemquam ex eo plus quam se doloris capere, propter qua quod, quum ipse gratia plurimum domi atque in reliqua Gallia, ille minimum propter adolescentiam posset, per se crevisset; quibus opibus ac nervis non solum ad minuendum gratiam sed paene ad perniciem suam uteretur: sese tamen et amore fraterno et existimatione vulgi commoveri. Quod si quid ei a Caesare gravius accidisset, quum ipse eum locum amicitiae apud eum teneret, neminem existimatum non sua voluntate factum; quae ex re futurum uti totius Galliae animi a se averterentur. Haec quum plunbus verbis flens a Caesare peteret, Caesar ejus dextram prendit; consolatus rogat finem orandi faciat; tanti ejus apud se gratiam esse ostendit uti et reipublicae injuriam et suum dolorem ejus voluntati et precibus condonet. Uumnorigem ad se vocat; fratrem adhibet; quae in eo reprehendat, ostendit: quae ipse intelligat, quae civitas queratur, proponit; monet ut in reliquum tempus omnes suspicaciones vitez; praeterita se Divitiaco fratri condonare dicit. Dumnorigi custodes ponit ut quae agat, quibuscum loquatatur, scire possit.

XXI.—Eodem die ab exploratoribus certior factus hostes sub monte consedisse millia passuum ab ipsius castris octo, quals esset natura montis et quals in circuitu ascensus qui cognoscerent misit. Renuntiatum est facilis esse. De tertia vigilia Titum Labienum legatum pro praetore cum duabus legionibus et iis ducibus qui iter cognoverant summum jugum montis ascendere jubet; quid sui consilii sit ostendit. Ipsi de quarta vigilia eodem itinere quo hostes ierant ad eos contendit equitatumque omnes ante se mittit. Publius Considius, qui rei militaris peritissimus habeabatur, et in exercitu Lucii Sullae et postea in Marci Crassi fuerat, cum exploratoribus praemittitur.

XXII.—Prima luce, quum summus mons a Tito Labieno tenetur, ipse ab hostium castris non longius mille et quingentis passibus abesset, neque, ut postea ex captivis comperit, aut ipsius adventus aut Labieni cognitum esset, Considius equo admissus ad eum accurrir, dicit montem quem a Labieno occupari voluerit ab hostibus teneri; id se a Gallicis armis atque insignibus cog-
novisse. Caesar suas copias in proximum collem subducit, aciem instruit. Labienus, ut erat ei praecptum a Caesare ne proelium committeret, nisi ipsius copiae prope hostium castra visae essent, ut undique uno tempore in hostes impetus fieret, monte occupato nostros exspectabat proelioque abstinebat. Multo denique die per exploratores Caesar cognovit et montem a suis teneri et Helvetios castra movisse et Considium timore perterritum quod non visset pro viso sibi renuntiasse. Eo die quo consuerat intervallo hostes sequitur, et millia passuum tria ab eorum castris castra ponit.

XXIII.—Postridie ejus diei, quod omnino biduum supererat quum exercitui frumentum metiri oporteret, et quod a Bibracte, oppido Aeduvorum longe maximo et copiosisssimo, non amplius millibus passuum octodecim aberat, rei frumentariae prospicienti num existimavit, iter ab Helvetiis avertit ac Bibracte ire contendit. Ea res per fugitivos Lucii Aemilii, decurionis equitum Gallorum, hostibus nuntiatur. Helvetii, seu quod timore perterritos Romanos discedere a se existimarent, eo magis quod pridie superioribus locis occupatis proelium non commissesent; sive eo quod re frumentaria intercludi posse considerent, commutato consilio atque itinere converso nostros a novissimo agmine insequi ac lacesse coeperunt.

XXIV.—Postquam id animum advertit, copias suas Caesar in proximum collem subducit, equitatumque qui sustineret hostium impetum misit. Ipse interim in colle medio triplicem aciem instruxit legiionum quatuor veteranarum, ita uti supra se in summo jugo duas legiones quas in Gallia citeriore proxime conscripsisset, et omnia auxilia collocaret, ac tumultum hominibus completerat; interea sarcinas in unum locum conferrit et eum ab his qui in superiore acie constiterant muniri jussit. Helvetii cum omnibus suis carris sequuti impedimenta in unum locum contulerunt: ipsi confertissima acie rejecto nostro equitatu phalange facta sub primam nostram aciem successerunt.

XXV.—Caesar primum suo, deinde omnium ex conspectu remotis equis, ut aequato omnium periculo spem fugae tolleret, cchortatus suas proelium commisit. Milites e loco superiore pilis missis facile hostium phalangem presfergerunt. Ea disjecta
gladiis destrictis in eos impetum fecerunt. Gallis magno ad pugnam erat impedimento quod pluribus eorum scutis uno ictu pilorum transfixis et colligatis, quem ferrum se inflexisset, neque evellere neque sinistra impedita satis commode pugnare poterant; multi ut diu jactato bracchio praecipitabant scutum manumittere et nudo corpore pugnare. Tandem vulneribus defessi et pedem referre, et quod mons suberat mille passuum eo se recipere coeperunt. Capto monte et succedentibus nostris, Boii et Tulingi, qui hominum millibvs circiter quindecim agmen hostium claudebant et novissimis praevidio crant, ex itinere nostros latera aperto aggressi circumvenere, et id conspicati Helvetii, qui in montem sese receperant, rursus instare et proelium redintegrare coeperunt. Romani conversa signa bipartito intulerunt: prima ac secunda acies ut victis ac summotis resisteret, tertia ut venientes exciperet.

XXVI.---Ita ancipiti proelio diu atque acriter pugnatum est. Diutius quum nostrorum impetus sustinere non possent, alteri se ut coeperant in montem receperunt, alteri ad impedimenta et carro suos se contulerunt. Nam hoc toto proelio, quum ab hora septima ad vesperum pugnatum sit, aversum hostem videre nemo potuit. Ad multam noctem etiam ad impedimenta pugnatum est, propterea quod pro vallo carros objecerant et e loco superiore in nostros venientes tela conjiciebant, et nonnulli inter carros rotasque mataras ac tragulas subjiciebant nostrisque vulnerabant. Diu quum esset pugnatum, impedimentis castrisque nostri potiti sunt. Ibi Orgetorigis filia atque unus e filiis captus est. Ex eo proelio circiter millia hominum centum et triginta superfuerunt, eaque tota nocte continentier in fines Lingonum die quarto pervenerunt, quum et propter vulnera militum et propter sepulturam occisorum nostri triduum morati eos sequi non potuissent. Caesar ad Lingonas litteras nuntiosque misit ne eos frumento neve alia re juvarent: qui si juvisissent, se eodem loco quo Helvetios habiturum. Ipsa triduo intermisso cum omnibus copiis eos sequi coepit.

XXVII.---Helvetii omnium rerum inopia adducti legatos de deditione ad eum miserunt. Qui quum eum in itinere convenissent seque ad pedes projecissent, suppliciterque loquuti flentes pacem petissent, atque eos in eo loco quo tum essent suum adven-
DE BELLO GALLICO, LIB. I.

rum exspectare jussisset, paruerunt. Eo postquam Caesar pervenit, obsides, arma, servos qui ad eos perfugissent poposcit. Dum ea conquiritur, et conferentur nocte intermissa circiter hominum millia sex ejus pagi, qui Verbigenus appellatur, sive timore perterriti ne armis traditis supplicio afficerunt, sive spe salutis induci quod in tanta multitudine dedititorum suam fugam aut occultari aut omnino ignorari posse existimarent, prima nocte ex castris Helvetiorum egressi ad Rhenum finesque Germanorum contenterunt.

XXVIII.—Quod ubi Caesar rescit, quorum per fines ierant, his uti conquirent et reducerent, si sibi purgati esse vellet, imperavit: reductos in hostium numero habuit; reliquis omnes obsidibus, armis, perfugis traditis in deditionem accepit. Helvetios, Tulingos, Latobrigos in fines suos unde erant profecti reverti jussit, et quod omnibus frugibus amissis domi nihil erat quo famem tolerarent, Allobrogibus imperavit ut iis frumenti copiam facerent; ipsos oppida vicosque quos incenderit restituere jussit. Id ea maxime ratione fecit quod nonuit eum locum unde Helvetii discesserant, vacare, ne propter bonitatem agrorum Germani, qui trans Rhenum incolunt, e suis finibus in Helvetiorum fines transirent et finitimi Galliae provinciae Allobrogibusque essent. Boios potenti Aeduis, quod egregia virtute erant cogniti, ut in finibus suis collocarent concessit; quibus illi agris dederunt quoque postea in parem juris libertatisque conditionem atque ipsi erant receperunt.

XXIX.—In castris Helvetiorum tabulae reperta sunt literis Graecis confectae et ad Caesarem relatae, quibus in tabulis nominati ratio confecta erat, qui numerus domo exissent eorum qui arma ferre possent, et item separatim pueri, senes, mulieresque. Quarum omnium rerum summa erat, capitum Helvetiorum millia ducenta et sexaginta tria, Tulingorum millia triginta sex, Latobrigorum quatuordecim, Rauracorum viginti tria. Boicorum triginta duo: ex his qui arma ferre possent ad millia nonaginta duo. Summa omnium fuerunt ad millia trecenta et sexaginta octo. Eorum qui domum redierunt censu habito, ut Caesar imperaverat, repertus est numerus millium centum et decem.

XXX.—Bello Helvetiorum confecto totius fere Galliae legati,
principes civitatum, ad Caesarem gratulatum convenerunt: Intelligere sese, tametsi pro veteribus Helvetiorum injurias Populi Romani ab iis poenas bello repetisset, tamen eam rem non minus ex usu terrae Galliae quam Populi Romani accidisse, propterea quod eo consilio florentissimis rebus domos suas Helvetii relinquissent, uti toti Galliae bellum inferrent imperioque potirentur locumque domicilio ex magna copia deligerent, quem ex omni Gallia opportunissimum ac fructuosissimum judicasset, reliquasque civitates stipendiarias habere. Petiunt, Ut si sibi concilium totius Galliae in diem certam inter se idque Caesaris voluntate facere liceret: sese habere quasdam quas ex communi consensu ab eo petere vellet. Ea re permessa diem concilio constituerunt, et jurejurando ne quis enuntiaret nisi quibus communi consilio mandatum esset, inter se sanxerunt.

XXXI.—Eo concilio dimisso, idem principes civitatum, qui ante fuerant ad Caesarem, reverterunt petieruntque uti sibi secreto in occulto de sua omniumque salute cum eo agere liceret. Ea re impetrata sese omnes flentes Caesari ad pedes projecerunt: Non minus se id contendere et laborare ne ea quae dixissent enuntiarentur, quam uti ea quae vellent impetrarent; propterea quod, si enuntiatum esset, summum in cruciatum se venturos viderent. Loquutus est pro his Divitiacus Aeduus: Galliae totius factiones esse duas: harum alterius principatum tenere Aedusos, alterius Arvernos. Hi quam tantopere de potentatu inter se multos annos contenderent, factum esse ut ab Arvernis Sequanisque Germani mercede arces rerentur. Horum primo circiter millia quindecim Rhenum transisse: posteaquam agros et cultum et copias Gallorum homines feri ac barbari adamantissent, transductos plures: nunc esse in Gallia ad centum et viginti millium numerum: cum his Aedusos eorumque clientes semel atque iterum armis contendisse; magnam calamitatem pulsum accepisse, omnem nobilitatem, omnem senatum, omnem equitatum amisisse. Quibus proeliiis calamitatibusque fractos, qui et sua virtute et Populi Romani hospitio atque amicitia plurimum ante in Gallia potuissent, coactos esse Sequanis obsides dare, nobilissimos civitatis, et jurejurando civitatem obstringere sese neque obsides repetituros neque auxilium a Populo Romano imploraturos neque recusaturos quem in perpetuo sub illorum ditione atque imperio essent. Unum se esse ex omni civitate
DK

In bello Gallico, Lib. I.

35

Aeduarum qui adduci non potuerit ut juraret aut liberos suos obsides daret. Ob eam rem se ex civitate profugisse et Romam ad senatum venisse auxilium postulatam, quod solus neque juris jurando neque obsidibus teneretur. Sed peius victoribus Sequanis quam Aeduis victis accidisse; propterea quod Ariovistus, rex Germanorum, in corum finibus consedisset tertiamque partem agris Sequani, qui esset optimus totius Galliae, occupavisset et nunc de altera parte tertia Sequanos decedere juberet, propterea quod paucis mensibus ante Harudum millia hominum viginta quatuor ad eum venissent quibus locum ac sedes pararentur. Futurum esse paucis annis uti omnes ex Galliae finibus pellerentur atque omnes Germani Rhenum transirent: neque enim conferendum esse Gallicum cum Germanorum agro, neque hanc consuetudinem vic- tus cum illa comparandam. Ariovistum autem, ut semel Gallo- rum copias proelio vicerit, quod proelium factum sit ad Mageto- briam, superbe et crueliter imperare, obsides nobissimi ciusque liberis poscere et in eos omnia exempla cruciatusque edere, si qua res non ad nutum locus ac voluntatum ejus facta sit: hominem esse barbarum, iracundum, temerarium: non posse ejus imperia diutius sustiner. Nisi quid in Caesare Populique Romano sit auxili, omnibus Gallis idem esse faciendum quod Helvetii fecerint, ut domo emigrent, aliud domicilium, alias sedes remotas a Ger- manis petant, fortunamque quaeacumque accidat experiantur.

Haec si enuntiata Ariovisto sint, non dubitare quin de omnibus obsidibus qui apud eum sint gravissimum supplicium sumat. Caesarem vel auctoritate sua atque exercitus vel recenti victoria, vel nomine Populi Romani deterriere posse ne major multitudo Germanorum Rhenum transducatur, Galliamque omnem ab Ari- vistis injuria posse defendere.

XXXII.—Hac oratione ab Divitiaco habita, omnes qui aderant magno fato auxilium a Caesare petere coeperunt. Animadvertit, Caesar unus ex omnibus Sequanos nihil earum rerum facere quas ceteri facerent, sed tristes capite demisso terram intueri. Ejus rei causa quae esset miratus ex ipsis quae sit. Nihil Sequani respondere, sed in eadem tristitia taciti permanere. Quum ab ipsis sae- pius quaereret neque ullam omnino vocem exprimere posset, idem Divitiacus Aeduus respondit: Hoc esse miseriorem gravioremque fortunam Sequanorum quam reliquorum quod soli et in occulto
C. JULII CAESARIS

quidem quernque auxilium implorare auderent, absentisque Ariovistmi crudelitatem velut si coram adesset horrerent, propterea quod reliquis tamen fugae facultas dare tur, Sequanis vero, qui intra fines suos Ariovistum recepissent, quorum oppida omnia in potestate ejus essent, omnes cruciatum essent perferendi.

XXXIII.—His rebus cognitis Caesar Gallorum animos verbis confirmavit, pollicitusque est sibi eam rem curae futuram: magnam se habere spem et beneficio suo et auctoritate adductum Ariovistum finem injuriis facturum. Hac oratione habita concilium dimisit; et secundum ea multae res eum hortabantur quare sibi eam rem cogitandam et susceptam putaret; in primis, quod Aeduos frares consanguineosque saepenumero ab Senatu appellatos, in servitute atque in ditione videbat Germanorum teneri, eorumque obsides esse apud Ariovistum ac Sequanos intelligebat: quod in tanto imperio Populi Romani turpissimum sibi et reipublicae esse arbitrabatur. Paulatim autem Germanos consuescere Rhenum transire et in Galliam magnam eorum multitudoem venire Populo Romano periculosum videbat; neque sibi homines feros ac barbaros temperaturas existimabat quin, quum omnem Galliam occupassent, ut ante Cimbri Teutonique fecissent, in provinciam exirent atque inde in Italian contenderent, praesertim quum Sequanos a Provincia nostra Rhodanus divideret. Quibus rebus quam maturrime occurruntur putabat. Ipse autem Ariovistus tantos sibi spiritus, tantam arrogantium sumpserat ut ferendus non videretur.

XXXIV.—Quamobrem placuit ei ut ad Ariovistum legatos mitteret qui ab eo postularent uti aliquem locum medium utriusque colloquio dicaret: velle sese de republica et summis utriusque rebus cum eo agere. Ei legationi Ariovistus respondit: Si quid ipsi a Caesare opus esset, sese ad eum venturum fuisse; si quid ille se velit, illum ad se venire oportere. Praeterea se neque sine exercitu in eas partes Galliae venire audere quas Caesar possideret, neque exercitu sine magno commenatu atque emolimento in unum locum contrahere posse: sibi autem mirum videri quid in sua Gallia quam bello vicisset aut Caesar aut omnino Populo Romano negotii esset.

XXXV.—His responsis ad Caesarem relatis, iterum ad eum Caesar legatos cum his mandatis mittit: Quoniam tanto suo
Populique Romani beneficio affectus, quam in consulatu suo rex atque amicus a Senatu appellatus esset, hanc sibi Populoque Romano gratiam referret ut in colloquium venire invitatius gravaretur neque de communi re dicendum sibi et cognoscendum putaret, haec esse quae ac eo postularet : primum, ne quam hominum multitudinem amplius trans Rhenum in Galliam transuceret : deinde obsides quos haberet ab Aeduis redderet, Sequanisque permitteret ut quos illi haberent voluntate ejus reddere illis liceret ; neve Aeduos injuria lacessaret neve his sociisve eorum bellum inferret : siid ita fecisset, sibi Populoque Romano perpetuam gratiam atque amicitiam cum eo futurum : si non imperaret, sese, quoniam Marco Messala Marco Pisone Consulibus Senatus censuisset, uti, quicumque Galliam provinciam obtineret, quod commodo reipublicae facere posset, Aedos ceterosque amicos Populi Romani defenderet, se Aeduorum iniurias non neglecturum.

XXXVI.—Ad haec Ariovistus respondit : Jus esse belli ut qui vicissent iiis quos vicissent quemadmodum vel lent imperarent : item Populom Romanum victis non ad alterius prae scriptum sed ad suum arbitrium imperare consuisset. Si ipse Populo Romano non prae scriberet quemadmodum suo jure uteretur, non oportere sese a Populo Romano in suo jure impedi. Aedus sibi, quoniam belli fortunam tentassent et armis congressit ac superati essent, stipendiarios esse factos. Magnam Caesarem iniuriam facere qui suo adventu vestigalia sibi deteriora faceret. Aedus si obsides redditurum non esse, neque his neque eorum sociis injuria bellum illaturum, si in eo manerent quod convenisset, stipendiuque quotidnus pen derent : si id non fecissent, longe iiis fracturn nomen Populi Romani abfuturum. Quod sibi Caesar denuntiaret se Aeduorum iniurias non neglecturum, neminem secum sine sua pernicie contendisse. Qum vellet congrederetur ; intellecturum quid invicti Germani, exercitatissimi in armis, qui inter annos quatuordecim tectum non subissent, virtute possent.

XXXVII.—Haec eodem tempore Caesari mandata referebantur et legati ab Aeduis et a Treviris veniebant : Aedui questum quod Harudes qui nuper in Galliam transportatii essent fines eorum popularentur ; sese ne obsidibus quidem datis pacem Ariovisti redi mere potuisse : Treviri autem, pagos centum Suevorum ad ripas
Rheni consedisse qui Rhenum transire conarentur; iis praeesse Nasuam et Cimerium fratres. Quibus rebus Caesar vehementer commotus maturandum sibi existimavit, ne, si nova manus Suevorum cum veteribus copiis Ariovisti sese conjunxisset, minus facile resisti posset. Itaque re frumentaria quam celerrime potuit comparata magnis itineribus ad Ariovistum contendit.

XXXVIII.—Quum tridui viam processisset, nuntiatum est ei Ariovistum cum suis omnibus copiis ad occupandum Vesontionem, quod est oppidum maximum Sequanorum, contendere triduique viam a suis finibus profecisse. Itaque re frumentaria quam celerrime potuit comparat magnis itineribus ad Ariovistum contendit. Nuntiatum est ei Ariovistum cum suis omnibus copiis ad occupandum Vesontionem, quod est oppidum maximum Sequanorum, contendere triduique viam a suis finibus profecisse. Itaque re frumentaria quam celerrime potuit comparat magnis itineribus ad Ariovistum contendit.

XXXIX.—Dum paucos dies ad Vesontionem rei frumentariae commeachusque causa moratur, ex percunctatione nostrorum vocibusque Gallorum ac mercatorum, qui ingenti magnitudine corporum Germanos, incredibili virtute atque exercitatione in armis esse praedicabant, saepenunentum sese cum his congressos ne vultum quidem atque acem oculorum ferre posuisse, tantus subito timor omnem exercitum occupavit ut non mediocriter omnium mentes animosque perturbaret. Hic primum ortus est a tribunis militum, praefectis reliquisque, qui ex urbe amicitiae causa Caesarem sequuntur non magnum in re militari usum habebant: quorum alii, alia causa illata, quam sibi ad profisciscendum necessariam esse diceret petebat ut ejus voluntate discedere liceret: nonnulli pudore adducti ut timoris suspicacionem vitae remanebant. Hi neque vultum fingere neque interdum lacrimas tenere poterant: abdit in tabernaculis aut suum fatum querebant, aut cum familiaribus suis commune periculum miserabantur. Vulgo totis castris testamenta obsignabantur. Horum vocibus ac timore paulatim etiam ii qui
magnum in castris usum habeant, milites centurionesque, quique
equitatu praecrant, perturbabantur. Qui se ex his minus timidos ex-
stimari volebant, non se hostem vereri sed angustias itineris et
magnitudinem silvarum quae intercederent inter ipsos atque Ario-
vistum, aut rem frumentariam ut satis commode supportari posset
timere dicebant. Nonnulli etiam Caesari renuntiabant, quam
castra moveri ac signa ferri jussisset, non fore dicto audientes
milites nec propter timorem signa laturos.

XL.—Haec quom animadvertisset, convocato consilio omnium
que ordinum ad id consilium adhibitis centurionibus vehementer
eos incusavit; Primum, quod aut quam in partem aut quo con-
silio ducerentur sibi quaerendum aut cogitandum putarent. Ario-
vistum se consule cupidissime Populi Romani amicitiam appetisse;
cur hunc tam temere quisquam ab officio discessurum judicaret?
Sibi quidem persuaderi cognitis suis postulatis atque aequitate
conditionum perspecta eum neque suam neque Populi Romani
gratiam repudiatur. Quod si furore atque amemia impetu
belum, usque, quid tandem vererentur? aut de sua virtute
aut de ipsius diligentia desperarent? Factum ejus hostis pericu
patrum nostrorum memoria, quum Cimbris et Teutonis a Caio
Mario pulsis non minorem laudem exercitus quam ipse imperator
meritus videbat: factum etiam nuper in Italia servili tumultu,
quos tamen aliquid usus ac disciplina quam a nobis accepisset
sublevarent. Ex quo judicari posset quantum haberet in se boni
constantia; propterea quod quos aliquando inermes sine causa
timissent, hos postea armatos ac victores superassent. Denique
hos esse eosdem quibuscum saepenumero Helvetii congressi non
solum in suis sed etiam in illorum finibus plerumque superarint, qui
samen pares esse nostro exercitu non potuerint. Si quos adversum
proelium et fuga Gallorum commoveret, hos si quaererent reiperire
posse diuturnitate belli defatigatis Gallis Arievistum, quum multos
menses castris se ac paludibus tenuisset neque sui potestatem fecis-
set, desperantes jam de pugna et dispersos subito adortum magis
ratione et consilio quam virtute vicisse. Cui rationi contra homi-
nes barbaros atque imperitos locum fuisset, haec ne ipsum quidem
esperare nostros exercitus capi posse. Qui suum timorem in rei
frumentariae simulacionem angustiasque itinerem conferrent facere
arroganter, quum aut de officio imperatoris desperare aut praescr-
bere viderentur. Haec sibi esse curae; frumentum Sequanos, Leucos, Lingonas subministrare, jamque esse in agris frumenta matura: de itinere ipsos brevi tempore judicaturos. Quod non fore dicto audientes milites neque signa laturi dicantur, nihil se ea re commoveri: scire enim quibuscumque exercitus dicto audiens non fuerit, aut male rega fortunam defuisset, aut aliquo facinore comperto avaritiam esse convictam. Suam innocentiam perpetuam vita, felicitatem Helvetiorum bello esse spectant. Itaque se quod in longiore diem collaturos fuisset praesentaturum et proxima nocte de quarta vigilia castra moturos, ut quam primum intelligere posset, utrum apud eos pudor atque officium in timor valeret. Quod si praeterea nemo sequatur, tamen se cum sola decima legione iturum de qua non dubitaret; sibique eam praetoriam cohortem futuram. Huic legioni Caesar et indulserat praecipue et propter virtutem confidebat maxime.

XLII.—Hac oratione habita mirum in modum conversae sunt omnium mentes summaque alacritas et cupiditas belli gerendi innata est; princepsque decima legio per tribunos militum ei gratias egit quod de se optimum judgment fecisset, sequese esse ad bellum gerendum parassimam confirmavit. Deinde reliquae legiones cum tribunis militum et primorum ordinum centurionibus egerunt ut Caesar satisfacerent: se neque unquam dubitasse neque timuisse, neque de summa belli suum judgment sed imperatoris esse existimasse. Eorum satisfactione accepta, et itinere exquisito per Divitiacum, quod ex aliiis ei maximam fidem habebat, ut millium amplius quinquaginta circuitu locis apertis exercitum duceret, de quarta vigilia, ut dixerat, prefectus est. Septimo die, quem iter non intermitteret, ab exploratoribus certior factus est Ariovisti copias a nostris millibus passuum quatuor et viginti abesse.

XLII.—Cognito Caesaris adventu Ariovistus legatos ad eum mittit: Quod antea de colloquio postulasset id per se fieri licere quoniam propius accessisset: seque id sine periculo facere posse existimare. Non respuit conditionem Caesar: jamque eum ad sanitatem reverteri arbitrabatur quem id, quod antea petenti densegasset ultrro polliceretur; magnamque in spem veniebat pro suis tantis Populique Romani in eum beneficiis, cognitis suis postulatis, fore uti pertinacia desisteret. Dies colloquio dictus est, ex eo die
XLIV.—Ariovistus ad postulata Caesaris paucis respondit, de suis virtutibus multa praecidavit: Transisse Rhenum se non sua sponte, sed rogatum et arcessitum a Gallis; non sine magna spe magniisque praemia domum propinquosque reliquisses: sedes habere in Gallia ab ipsis concessas, obsides ipsorum voluntate datos; stipendium capere jure belli quod victores victis imponere consuerint. Non sese Gallis, sed Gallos sibi bellum intulisse; omnes Galliae civitates ad se oppugnandum venisse ac contra se castra habuisse; eas omnes copias a se uno proelio pulsas ac superaturas esse. Si iterum experiri velint, se iterum paratum esse decertare; si pace uti velint, iniquum esse de stipendio recusare, quod sua voluntate ad id tempus pependerint. Amicitiam Populi Romani sibi ornamento et praeda, non detrimento esse opertere, idque se ca spe petisse. Si per Populum Romanum stipendium remittatur et deditici subtrahantur, non minus libenter sese recusaturum Populi Romani amicitiam quam appetierit. Quod multitudinem Germanorum in Galliam transducat, id se sui muniendi, non Galliae impugnandae causa facere; ejus rei testimonio esse quod nisi rogatus non vinerit, et quod bellum non intulerit sed defenderit. Se prius in Galliam venisse quam Populum Romanum. Nunc quam ante hoc tempus exercitum Populi Romani Galliae provinciae fines egressum. Quid sibi vellet cur in suas possessiones veniret? Provinciam suam hanc esse Galliam, sicut illam nostram. Ut ipsi concedi non oporteret, si in nostris fines impetum faceret, sic item nos esse iniquos qui in suo jure se interpellaremus. Quod fratres a Senatu Aeduos appellatos diceret, non se tam barbarum neque tam imperitum esse rerum ut non sciret neque bello Allobrogum proximo Aeduos Romanis auxilium tulisse, neque ipsos in his consentiendum, quas Aedui secum et cum Sequanis habuissent, auxilio Populi Romani usus esse. Debere se suspicari simulata Caesarem amicitia, quod exercitum in Gallia habeat, sui opprimendi causa habere. Qui nisi decessat atque exercitum deducat ex his regionibus, sese illum non pro amico, sed pro hoste habiturum: quod si eum interfecerit, multis sese nobilium principibusque Populi Romani gratum esse facturum; id se ab ipsis per eorum nuntios compertum habere, quorum omnium gratiam atque amicitiam ejus morte redimere posset. Quod si decessisset, et liberam possessionem Galliae sibi tradidisset, magno se illum praemio remuneratum, et
XLV. — Multa ab Caesare in eam sententiam dicta sunt quare negotio desistere non posset, Et neque suam neque Populi Romani consuetudinem pati uti optime meritis socios desereret, neque se judicare Galliam potius esse Ariovistis quam Populi Romani. Bello superatos esse Arvernos et Rutenos ab Q. Fabio Maximo, quibus Populus Romanus ignovisset neque in provinciam redigisset neque stipendium imposuisset. Quod si antiquissimum quoque tempus spectari oporteret, Populi Romani justissimum esse in Gallia imperium: si judicium Senatus observari oporteret, liberam debere esse Galliam quam bello victam usi legibus uti voluisset.

XLVI. — Dum haec in colloquio geruntur, Caesari nuntiatum est equites Ariovisti propius tumulum accedere et ad nostros adequare, lapides telaque in nostros conjicere. Caesar loquendi finem facit, seque ad suos receptum suisque imperavit ne quod omnino telum in hostes rejicerent. Nam etsi sine ullo periculo legionis defectae cum equitatu proelium fore videbat, tamen committendum non putabat ut pulsis hostibus dici posset eos ab se per fidem in colloquio circumvenit. Posteaquam in vulgus militum elatum est, qua arrogantia in colloquio Ariovistus usus omni Gallia Romanis interdixisset, impetumque in nostros ejus equites fecissent, eaque res colloquium ut diremisset, multo major alacritas studiumque pugnandi majus exercitui injectum est.

XLVII. — Biduo post Ariovistus ad Caesarem legatos mittit: Velle se de his rebus quae inter eos agi coeptae neque perfectae essent agere cum eo: uti aut iterum colloquio diem constitueret, aut si id minus vellet ex suis aliquem ad se mitteret. Colloquendi Caesari causa visa non est, et eo magis quod pridie ejus diei Germani retineri non poterant quin in nostros tela conjicerent. Legatum ex suis sese magnos cum periculo ad eum missurum et hominibus feris objecturum existimabat. Commodissimum visum est Caium Valerium Procillum, Caii Valerii Caburi filium, summa virtute et humanitate adolescentem, cujus pater a Caio Valerio Flacco civitate donatus erat, et propter fidem et propter linguas Gallicae scientiam, qua multa jam Ariovistus longinquus consuetudine uteba-

XLVIII.—Eodem die castra promovit et millibus passuum sex a Caesaris castris sub monte consedit. Postridie ejus dies praeter castra Caesaris suas copias transduxit et millibus passuum duobus ultra eum castra fecit, eo consilio ut frumentum commeatuque, qui ex Sequanis et Aeduis supportaretur, Caesarem intercluderet. Ex eo die dies continuo quinque Caesar pro castris suas copias produxit et aciem instructam habuit, ut si vellet Ariovistus proelio contendere, ei potestas non deesset. Ariovistus his omnibus diebus exercitum in castris continuavit, equestri proelio quotidie contendit. Genus hoc erat pugna quo se Germani exercuerant. Equitum millia erant sex, totidem numero pedes velocissimi ac fortissimi, quos ex omni copia singuli singulos suae salutis causa delegerant. Cum his in proelii versabantur, ad hos se equites recipiebant: si qui graviore vulnere accepto equo deciderat, circumstiebant: si quos erat longius prodeundum aut celerius recipiendum, tanta erat horum exercitacione celeritas ut jubis equorum sublevati cursum daeaequarent.

L.—Proximo die instituto suo Caesar e castris utrisque copias suas eduxit paulumque a majoribus castris progressus aciem instruxit, hostibusque pugnandi potestatem fecit. Ubi ne tum quidem eos prodire intellexit, circiter meridiem exercitum in castra reduxit. Tum demum Ariovistus partem suarum copiarum quae castra minora opugnaret misit. Acrier utrimque usque ad vesperum pugnatum est. Solis occasu suas copias Ariovistus multis et illatis et acceptis vulneribus in castra reduxit. Quum ex captivis quaereret Caesar quam ob rem Ariovistus proelio non decertaret, hanc repellit causam, quod apud Germanos ea consuetudo esset, ut matres familae corum sortibus et vaticinationibus declararent, utrum proelium committi ex usu esset necne; eas ita dicere; Non esse fas Germanos superare, si ante novam lunam proelio contendissent.

LI.—Postridie ejus diei Caesar praeidio utrisque castris quod satis esse visum est reliquit; omnes alarios in conspectu hostium pro castris minoribus constituit, quo minus multitudine militum legionariorum pro hostium numero valebat, ut ad speciem alarum uteretur. Ipse tripli instructa acie usque ad castra hostium accessit. Tum demum necessario Germani suas copias castris eduxerunt generatimque constituerunt paribusque intervallis Harudes, Marcomanos, Triboccos, Vangiones, Nemetes, Sedusios, Suevos, omnemque aciem suam rhedis et carris circumdederunt, ne qua spes in fuga relinqueretur. Eo mulieres imposuerunt, quae in proelium profiscientes milites passis manibus fientes implorabant ne se in servitutem Romanis traderent.

LII.—Caesar singulis legionibus singulos legatos et quaestorem praefecit, uti eos testes suae quisque virtutis haberet. Ipse a dextro cornu, quod eam partem minime firmam hostium esse animadverterat, proelium commisit. Ita nostri acriter in hostes signo dato impetum fecerunt, itaque hosts repente celeriterque procurerunt ut spatium pila in hostes conjiciendi non daretur. Rejectis pilis comminus gladiis pugnatum est. At Germani celeriter ex consuetudine sua phalange faciea impetus gladiatorum excepuerunt. Perpeti sunt complures nostri milites qui in phalangas insilirent et scuta manibus revellerent et desuper vulnerarent. Quum hostium acies a sinistro cornu pulsa atque in fugam conversa esset, a dextro cornu vehementer multitudine suorum nostram aciem premebant.
Id quum animadvertisset Publius Crassus adolescens, qui equitatu praecerat, quod expeditior erat quam hi qui inter aciem versabantur tertiam aciem laborantibus nostris subsidio misit.

LIII.—Ita proelium restitutum est, atque omnes hostes terga verterunt neque prius fugere destiterunt quam ad flumen Rhenum millia passuum ex eo loco circiter quinquaginta pervenerint. Ibi perpauci aut viribus confisi transnatare contenderunt, aut lintribus inventis sibi salutem rependerunt. In his fuit Ariovistus qui navigulam deligatam ad ripam nactus ea profugi: reliquos omnes sequuntur equites nostri interfecerunt. Duae fuerunt Ariovisti uxores, una Sueva natione quam ab domo secum eduxerat; altera Norica, regis Voctionis soror, quam in Gallia duxerat a fratre missam; utraeque in ea fuga perierunt. Duae filiae harum, altera occisa, altera capta est. Caius Valerius Procillus, quem a custodibus in fuga trinis catenis vinctus trahebat, in ipsum Caesarem hostes equitatu persequenterm incidit. Quae quidem res Caesari non minorem quam ipsa victoria voluptatem attulit, quod hominem honestissimum provinciae Galliae, suum familiaris et hospitem, erup tum et manibus hostium sibi restitutum videbat, neque ejus calamitate de tanta voluptate et gratulatione quicquam fortuna deminuerat. Is se praesente de se ter sortibus consultum dicebat, utrum igni statim necaretur an in aliud tempus reservaretur: sortium beneficio se esse incolu men. Item Marcus Mettius repertus et ad eum reductus est.

LIV.—Hoc proelio trans Rhenum nuntiato, Suevi, qui ad ripas Rheni venerant, domum reverti coeperunt: quos ubi ii qui proximi Rhenum incolunt perterritos insequi miracle ex his numerum oc cidentur. Caesar, una aestival duobus maximis bellis confectis, maturius paulo quam tempus anni postulabat in hiberna in Sequanos exercitum deduxit: hibernis Labienum praeposuit: ipse in citeriorem Galliam ad conventus agendos profectus est.
DE BELLO GALlico, LIB. II.

LIBER SECUNDO.

I.—Quum esset Caesar in citeriore Gallia in hibernis, ita uti supra demonstravimus, crebri ad eum rumores afferebantur, litterisque item Labieni certior fiebat omnes Belgas, quam tertiam esse Galliae partem dixeramus, contra Populum Romanum conjurare obsidesque inter se dare: / conjurandi has esse causas: quod vererentur ne omni pacata Gallia ad eos exercitus noster adduceretur; deinde, quod ab nonnullis Gallis solicitarentur, partim qui, ut Germanos diutius in Gallia versari noluerant, ita Populi Romanis exercitum hiemare atque inveterascere in Gallia moleste ferebant, partim qui mobilitate et levitate animi novis imperii studebant; ab nonnullis etiam, quod in Gallia potioribus atque his, qui ad conducendo hominum facultates habebant, vulgo regna occupabantur, qui minus facile eam rem in imperio nostro consequi poterant.

II.—His nuntiis litterisque commotus Caesar duas legiones in citeriore Gallia novas conscripsit, et inita aestate in interiorem Galliam qui deduceret Quintum Pedum legatum misit. Ipse quum primum pabuli copia esse inciperet ad exercitum venit: dat negotium Senonibus reliquisque Gallis, qui finiti Belgis erant, uti ea quae apud eos gerantur cognoscant seque de his rebus certiorum faciant. Hi constanter omnes nuntiaverunt manus coexi exercitum in unum locum conducire. Tum vero dubitandum non existimavit quin ad eos proficisceretur. Renturmentaria comparata castra movet diebusque circiter quindecim ad fines Belgarum pervenit.

III.—Eo quum de improviso celeriusque omnino opinione venisset, Remi, qui proximi Galliae ex Belgis sunt, ad eum legatos Iccium et Andocumborium primos civitatis miserunt qui dicerent. Se suaque omnia in fidem aequae in potestatem Populi Romanum permittere: neque se cum Belgis reliquis consensisse neque contra Populum Romanum omnino conjurasse, peratosque esse et obsides dare—
et imperata facere et oppidis recipere et frumento ceterisque rebus
juvare reliquis omnes Belgas in armis esse, Germanosque qui eis
Rhenum incolant sese cum his conjuxissent, tantumque esse eorum
omnium furorem ut ne Suessiones quidem, fratries consanguineosque
suos, qui eodem jure eisdem legibus utantur, unum imperium
unumque magistratum cum ipsis habeant, deterrere potuerint quin
cum his consentirent.

IV.—Quum ab his quæreret quae civitates quantaeque in
armis essent et quid in bello possent, sic reperiebat: plerosque
Belgas esse ortos ab Germanis Rhenumque antiquitus transductos
propter loci fertilitatem ibi consedisse, Gallosque qui ea loca inco-
erent expulisse, solosque esse qui patrum nostriorum memoria
omni Gallia vexata Teutonos Cimbrosque intra fines suos ingredi
prohibuerint. Qua ex re fieri uti eorum rerum magni
sibi auctoritate magnosque spiritus in re militari sumerent. De
numero eorum omnia se habere explorata Remi dicebant, prop-
terea quod propinquitatibus affinitatibusque conjuncti quantam
quisque multituidinem in communi Belgarum concilio ad id bellum
policitus sit cognoverint. Plurimum inter eos Bellovacos et vir-
tute et auctoritate et hominum numero valere: hos posse conficere
armata millia centum, policitos ex eo numero electa millia sexa-
ginta, totiusque belli imperium sibi postulare. Suessiones suos
esse finitimos; latissimos feracissimosque agros possidere. Apud
eos suisse regem nostra etiam memoria Divitiacum, totius Galliae
potentissimum, qui quam magnae partis harum regionum, tum etiam
Britanniae imperium obtinerit; nunc esse regem Galbam: ad
hunc propter justitiam prudentiamque totius bellii summam
omnium voluntate deferri; oppida habere numero duodecim, polli-
ceri millia armata quinquaginta: totidem Nervios, qui maxime feri
inter ipsos habeantur longissimeque absint: quindecim millia Atre-
bates; Ambianos decem millia, Morinos viginti quinque millia,
Menapios novem millia, Caletos decem millia, Velocasses et
Veronanduos totidem, Aduatucos viginti novem millia; Condrus-
sos, Eburones, Caeraesos, Paemonos, qui uno nomine Germani
appellantur, arbitarsi ad quadranginta millia.

V.—Caesar Remos cohortatus liberaliterque oratione prose-
quatus orantem senatum ad se convenire principumque liberos
obsides ad se adduci jussit. Quae omnia ab his diligentius ad
diem facta sunt. Ipsa Divitiaem-Aeduium magno opere cohor-
tus docet quanto opere reipublicae communiisque salutis interi-
tus manus hostium distineri, ne cum tanta multitudo uno tempore
configeret sit. Id fieri posse si suas copias Aedui in fines Bello-
vacorum introductoriet et eorum agros populari coeperint. His
mandatis eum ab se dimitit. Postquam omnes Belgarum copias
in unum locum coactas ad se venire vidit, neque jam longe abese
ab his quos miserat exploratoribus et ab Remis cognovit, flumen
Axonam, quod est in extremis Remorum finibus, exercitum tran-
sducere maturavit atque ibi castra posuit. Quae res et latus unum
castrorum ripis fluminis muniebat et post eum quae essent tuta ab
hostibus reddebat, et commentus ab Remis relinquisset civitatis
ut sine periculo ad eum portari possent efficiebat. In eo flumine
pons erat. Ibi praesidium comit et in altra parte fluminis Quin-
tum Titurnum Sabiniiae legaturum cum sex cohortibus relinquuit.
Castra in altitudinem pedum duodecim vallo fossaque duodeviginti pedum
munire jube.  

VI.—Ab his castris oppidum Remorum nomine Bibrae abarat
milia passuum octo. Id ex itinere magnus impetus Belgae oppug-
nare coeperunt. Aegrus eo die sustinentur est. Gallorum eadem
atque Belgarum oppugnatio est haec. Ubi circumjecta multitudo
hominum totis moenibus, undique lapides in murum jaci copti
sunt, murusque defensoribus nudatus est, testudine facta portas
succedunt murumque subrunt. Quod tum facile fiebat. Nam
quum tanta multitudo lapides ac tela concurrerent, in muro consis-
tendi pestas erat nulli. Quum finem oppugnandi nov fecisset,
Ictius Remus, summa nobilitate et gratia inter suos, qui tum op-
pido praeerat, unus ex his qui legati de pace ad Caesarem venerant,
nuntios ad eum mittit; Nisi subsidium sibi submittatur, sese diutius
sustinere non posse.  

VII.—Eo de media nocte Caesar isdem ducibus usus qui nuntiab
Ictius venerant, Numidas et Cretas sagittarios et funditores
Baleares subsidio oppidanis mittit; quorum adventu et Remis cum
spe defensionis studium propugnandi accessit, et hostibus eadem
de causa spes potuendi oppidi discessit. Itaque paulisper apud
oppidum morati agrosque Remorum depopulati omnibus vicis ade-
ficiisque quos adire potuerant incensis, ad castra Caesaris omnibus copiis contingebant et ab millibus passuum minus duobus castra posuerunt; quae castra, ut fumo atque ignibus significabatur, amplius millibus passuum octo in latitudinem patebant.

VIII.—Caesar primo et propter multitudinem hostium et propter eximiam opinionem virtutis proelio supersebare statuit; quotidie tamen equestribus proeliiis quid hostis virtute posset et quid nostri auderent solicitationibus periclitabant. Ubi nostros non esse inferioriores intellecit, loco pro castris ad aciem instruendam naturam opportuno atque idoneo, quod is collis, ubi castra posita erant, paululum ex planicie editus et latitudinem patebant. "

"ut, si quo opus esset, subsidio ducis possent, reliquis sex legiones pro castris in acie cons. ituit. Hostes item suas copias ex castris eductas instruxerant.

IX.—Palus erat non magna inter nostrum atque hostium exercitu. Hanc si nostri transirent hostes exspectabant; nostri autem, si ab illis initium transeundi fieret, ut impeditos aggeredentur parati in armis erant. Interim proelio equestri inter duas acies contendebatur. Ubi neutri transeundi initium faciunt, secundire equitum proelio nostris, Caesar suas in castra reduxit. Hostes protinus ex eo loco ad flumen Axonam contenderunt, quod esse post nostra castra demonstratum est. Ibi vadis repertis partem suarum copiarum transducere conati sunt, eo consilio ut, si possent, castellum cui praerat Quintus Titurius legatus expugnarent pontemque interscinderent; si minus potuissent, agros Remorum popularentur, qui magnis nobis usui ad bellum gerendum erant, commeatuque nostros prohiberent.

X.—Caesar certior factus ab Titurio omnem equitatum et levis armaturae Numidas, funditores sagittariosque pontem transducit
DE BELLO GALlico. LII. II.

atque ad eos contendit. Acriter in eo loco pugnatum est. Hostes impeditos nostri in flumine assisi magnus eorum numerum occiderunt. Per eorum corpora reliquos audacissime transire conantes multitudine telorum repulerunt; primos qui transierant equitatu circumventos interfecerunt. Hostes, ubi et de expugnando oppido et de flumine transeundo spem se sefelliisse intellexerunt neque nostros in locum iniquorem progregi pugnandi causa viderunt, atque ipsos res frumentaria defecer coepit, concilio convocato constituerunt optimum esse domum suam quemque reverti, ut quorum in fines primum Romani exercitum introixissent, ad eos defendendos undique convenirent, et potius in suis quam in alienis finibus decertarent et domesticis copiis rei frumentariae uterarent. Ad eam sententiam cum reliquis causis haec quoque ratio eos deduxit, quod Divitiacum atque Aedus sinibus Bellovacorum appropinquare cognoverant. His persuaderi ut diutius morarente neque suis auxilium ferrent non poterat.

XI.—Ea re constituta secunda vigilia magni cum strepitu ac tumultu castris egressi nullo certo ordine neque impero, quam sibi quisque primum itineris locum peteret et domum pervenire properaret, fecerunt ut consimilis fugae profectio videretur. Hac re statim Caesar per speculatores cognita, insidias veritus, quod qua de causa discederent nondum perspexerat, exercitum equitatumque castris continuit. Prima luce confirmata re ab exploratoribus omnem equitatum qui novissimum agmen moraretur praemisit. His Quintum Pedium et Lucium Aurunculum Cottam legatos praecedit. Titum Labienum legatum cum legionibus tribus subsequi jussit. Hi novissimos adorti et multa millia passuum prosequi quantam multitudinem eorum fugientium considerent, quum ab extreme agmine ad quos ventum erat considerent fortiterque impetum nostrorum militum sustinerent prioresque, quod abesse a periculo viderentur, neque ella necessitate neque imperio continerentur, exaudito clamore perturbatis ordinibus aliaeque in fuga sibi praeiunterat, neque umrum poneusinum erat, sequi in castra, ut erat imperatur, receperunt.

XII.—Postridie ejus die Caesar, priusquam se hostes ex terram ac fuga recipient, in fines Suessionum, qui proximi Remis erant,
exercitum duxit et magno itinere concocto ad oppidum Noviodunum contendit. Id ex itinere oppugnare conatus, quod vacuum ab defensoribus esse audiebat, propter latitudinem fossae murique altitudinem paucis defendentibus expugnare non potuit. Castris munitis vineas agere quaeque ad oppugnandum usui erant comparare coepit. Interim omnis ex fuga Suessionum multitudine in oppidum proxima nocte convenit. Celeriter vineis ad oppidum actis, aggere jacto turribusque constitutis, magnitudine operum, quae neque viderant ante Galli neque audierant, et celeritate Romanorum permoti legatos ad Caesarem de ditione mittunt, et petentibus Remis ut conservarentur impetrant.

XIII.—Caesar obsidibus acceptis primis civitatis atque ipsius Galbae regis duobus filiis, armisque omnibus ex oppido traditis, in ditionem Suessiones acceptit exercitumque in Bellovacos duxit. Qui quum se suaque omnia in oppidum Bratuspantium contulissent, atque ab eo oppido Caesar cum exercitu centi millia passuum quinque abesset, omnes maiores natu ex oppido egressi manus ad Caesarem tendere et voce significare coeperunt: sese in ejus fidem ac potestate venire neque contra Populum Romanum armis contenderent. Item, quum ad oppidum accessisset castraque ibi poneret, pueri mulieresque ex muro passis manibus suo more pacem ab Romanis petierunt.

XIV.—Pro his Divitiacus, nam post discersum Belgarum dimissis Aeduorum copis ad eum reverterat, facit verba: Bellovacos omni tempore in fide atque amicitia civitatis Aeduarum fuisse, impulsos a suis principibus qui dicerent Aeduos a Caesare in servitu tem redactos omnes indignates contumeliasque pretereret, et ab Aeduis defcissesse et Populo Romano bellum incississe. Qui hujus consilii principes fuissent, quod intelligerent quantum calamitatem civitati intulissent, in Britanniam profugisse. Petere non solum Bellovacos sed etiam pro his Aeduos ut sua clementia ac mansuetudine in eos utatur. Quod si fecerit, Aeduorum auctoritatem apud omnès Belgas amplificatum; quorum auxilliis atque opibus, si qua bella inciderint, sustentare consuerint.

XV.—Caesar honoris Divitiaci atque Aeduarum causa sese eos in fideem recepturum et conservaturum dixit: quod erat civitas
magna inter Belgas auctoritate atque hominum multitudine praestabat, sexcentos obsides poposcit. His traditis omnibusque armis ex oppido-collatis, ab eo loco in fines Ambianorum perveni; qui se suaque omnia sine mora dediderunt. Eorum fines Nervii attingebant: quorum de natura moribusque Caesar quum quaeraret, sic reperiebat: Nullum aditum esse ad eos mercatoribus: nihil pati vini; reliquarumque rerum ad luxuriam pertinentium inferri, quod his rebus relavescontents animos et remittit virtutem existimarent: esse homines feros magnaeque virtutis; incipitare atque incusare reliquis Belgis qui se Populo Romano dedissent patriarcham virtutem proiecissent: confirmare sese neque legatos missuros neque ullam conditionem pacis accepturos.

XVI. — Quum per eorum fines triduum iter fecisset, inveniebat ex captivis Sabin flumen ab castris suis non amplius millia passuum decem abesse: trans id flumen omnes Nervios consedisse adventumque ibi Romanorum exceptare cum Atebatibus et Vermanduis finitimis suis, nam his ut riusque persuaserant ut eamdem belli fortunam experientur: expectari etiam ab his Aduatucorum copias atque in inimico: mulieres quique laeticatem ad pugnam inutiles viderentur in eum locum concesisse, quo propem paludes exercitu aditus non esset.

XVII. His rebus cognitis exploratores centurionesque praemitterit qui locum idoneum castris deligat. Quumque ex deditissimis Belgis reliquisque Gallis complures Caesaris sequi non una iter facerent, quidam ex his, ut postea ex captivis cognitum est, eorum dierum consuetudine itineris nostri exercitus specta, noce ad Nervios pervenerunt atque iis demonstrarunt inter singulas legiones impedimentorum magnum numerum intercedere, neque esse quidquam negotii, quum prima legio in castra venisset, reliquaque legiones magnum spatium abessent, hanc sub sacrinis adoriri: qua pulsa impedimentisque direptis futurum ut reliqua contra consistere non auderent. Adjurabant etiam eorum consilium qui rem deferebant, quod Nervii antiquissimis, quem equitatum nihil possum—neque enim ad hoc tempus ei rei student, sed quicquid possunt, pedestribus valent copiis, quo facili finitimorum equitatum, si praedandi causa ad eos venisset, impediret, teneris arborebus incisis atque inflexis crebris in latitudinem ramis et rubis sentibusque interjectis,
effecerant ut instar muri hae sepes munimenta praeberebant, quo non modo intrari, sed ne perspici quidem posset. Hic rebus quis iter agminis nostri impediretur, non omittendum sibi consilium Nervii existimaverunt.

XVIII.—Locis naturae erat haec, quem locum nostri castris delegaverant. Collis ab summo aequaliter declivis ad flumen Sabim, quod supra nominavimus, vergebant. Ab eo flumen pari acclivitate collis nascebat adversus huic et contrarius passus circiter ducentos, infimus apertos, ab superiore parte silvestris ut non facile introrsus perspici posset. Inter eas silvas hostes in occulto sese continebant: in aperto loco secundum flumen paucae stationes equitum videbantur. Fluminis erat altitudo pedum circiter trinum.

XIX.—Caesar equitatu praemisso subsecuatur omnibus copis: sed ratio ordoque agminis alter se habebat ac Belgae ad Nervios detulerant. Nam quod ad hostes appropinquabat, consuetudine sua Caesar sex legiones expeditas ducebat: post eas totius exercitus impedimenta colocarant: inde duae legiones quae proxime contingebant totum agmen claudebant praesidioque impedimentis erant. Equites nostri cum funditoribus sagittariisque flumen transgressi cum hostium equitatu proelium commiserunt. Quam se illi identidem in silvas ad suos recipuerant ac rursus ex silva in nostros impetum facerent, neque nostri longius quam ad flumen porrecta ac loca aperta pertiniebant cedentes ineque ade- rent, interim legiones sex, quae primae venerabant, opere dimenso castra munire coeperunt. Ubi prima impedimenta nostri exercitus ab his qui in silvis additi latebant visa sunt, quod tempus inter eos committendi proeli convenerat; ita, ut intra silvas aciem ordinasse constituerant atque ipsi sese confirmaverant, subito omnibus copiis provolaverunt impetumque in nostros equites fecerunt. His facile pulsia ac protrubatis incredibili celeritate ad flumen decurserunt, ut paene uno tempore et ad silvas et in flumine et jam in manibus nostri hostes viderentur. Eadem autem celeritate adverso colle ad nostra castra atque eos qui in operi occupati erant con- tenderunt.

XX.—Caesari omnia uno tempore erant agenda: vexillum proponendum, quod erat insigne quum ad arma concurretur oporteret.
signum tuba dandum, ab opere revocandi milites, qui paulo longius aggeris petendi causa processerant arcessendi, acies instructa, milites cohortandi, signum dandum. Quarum rerum magnam partem temporis brevitas et successus et incursus hostium impeditabant. His difficultatibus duae res erant subsidio, scientia atque usus militum, quod superioribus proelii exercitati, quid sibi oportere non minus comode ipsi sibi præscribere quam ab aliis doceri poterant, et quod ab opere singulisque legionibus singulos legatos Caesar discedere, nisi munitis castris vetuerat. Hi propter pro- 

XXI.—Caesar necessariis rebus imperatis ad cohortandos milites quam in partem fors obtulit decucurrit et ad legionem decimam devenit. Milites non longiore oratione cohortatus quam uti suae pristinae virtutis memoriae retinerent ne perfurbarantur animo hostiumque imperium fortiter sustinerent, quod in longius hostes aberrant quem quo telum adici possent, proelii committendi signum dedit. Atque in alteram partem item cohortandis causa profectus pugnantibus occurrerit. Temporis tanta est exiguitas hostiumque tam paratus ad dimicandum animus, ut non modo ad insigne ac- 

XXII.—Instructo exercitu magis ut loci natura dejectusque collis et necessitas temporis quam ut rei militaris ratio atque ordo postulabat, quum diversis locis legiones aliae alia in parte hostibus resisterent, sepibusque densissimis, ut ante demonstravimus, inter- 

XXIII.—Legionis nonae et decimae milites, ut in sinistra parte 

acie constiterant, pilis emissis cursu ac lassitudine examinatos vulneribusque confectos Atrebates—nam his ea pars obverterat—

CELERITER EX LOCO SUPERIORE IN FLUMEN COMPULERUNT ET TRANSIRE CO-
nantes insequuti gladiis magnam partem eorum impeditam interfecerunt. Ipsı transire flumen non dubitaverunt, et in locum iniquum progressi rursus regressos ac resistentes hostes redintegrato proelio in fugam dederunt. Item alia in parte diversae duae legiones, undecima et octava, profligatis Veromanduis, quibuscum erant congressi, ex loco superiore in ipsis fluminis ripis proeliabantur. At tum totis fere a fronte et ab sinistra parte nudatis castris, quom in dextro cornu legio duodecima et non magno ab ea intervallo septima constisset, omnes Nervii collectissimo agmine duce Boduognato qui summam imperii tenebat, ad eum locum contenterunt: quorum pars aperto latere legiones circumvenire, pars summum castrorum locum petere coepit.

XXIV.—Eodem tempore equites nostri levisque armaturae pedites, quibus cum ipsis una fuerant, quos primo hostium impetu pulsos dixeram, quos se in castra reciperent, adversis hostibus occurrebant ac rursus aliam in partem fugam petebant: et calones, qui ab decumana porta ac summo jugo collis nostros victores flumen transire conspexerant, praedantibus causa egressi, quorum respexissent et hostes in nostris castris versari vidissent, praebiles fugae sese mandabant. Sımul eorum qui cum impedimentis veniebant clamor fremitusque oriebatur, aliique aliam in partem perterrit interfabant. Quibus omnibus rebus permotis, quorum inter Gallos viruitis opinio est singularis, qui auxillii causa ab civitate missi ad Caesarem venerant, quum multitudine hostium castra nostra collexerit, legiones premi et paene circumventas teneri, calones, equites, funditores, Numidas, diversos dissipatosque, in omnes partes fugere vidisset, desperatis nostris rebus domum contenterunt: Romanos pulsos superatosque, castris impedimentisque eorum hostibus potitos civitati renunciaverunt.

XXV.—Caesar ab decimae legioni cohortatione ad dextrum cornu profectus, ubi sua signa signisque in unum locum collatis duodecimae legioniis confertos miliites sibi ipsos ad pugnam esse impendimento vidit, quattae cohortis omnibus centurionibus occisis, signiferisque interfecit, signo amissis, reliquarum cohortium omnibus fere centurionibus aut vulneratis aut occisis, in his primipilo Publio Sextio Baculo, fortissimo viro, multis gravibusque vulneribus confecto ut jam se sustinere non posset; reliquis esse tardiores, et
nonnullos ab novissimis deserunt proelio excedere ac tela vitare, hostes neque a fronte ex inferiore loco subeuntes intermittere et ab utroque latere instare, et rem esse in angusto vidit, neque ullum esse subsidium quod submitti posset, scuto ab novissimis uni militi detracto, quod ipso eo sine scuto venerat, in primam accipi processit centurionibusque nominatim appellatis reliquis cohortatus militis signa inferre et manipulos laxare jussit, quo facilius gladiis uti possent. Cujus adventu spe illata militibus ac redintegrato animo, quum pro se quisque in conspectu imperatoris et jam in extremis suis rebus operam navare cuperet, paulum hostium impe tus tardatus est.

XXVI.—Caesar quum septimam legionem, quae juxta constiterat, item urgeri ab hoste vidisset, tribunos militum monuit ut paulatim sese legiones conjungere et conversa signa in hostes inferrent. Quo facto, quum alius alii subsidium ferret, neque timent ne aversi ab hoste circumvenirentur, audaci resistere ac fortius pugnare coepissent. Interim milites legiunum duarum, quae in novissimo agmine praedicto impeditis fuerant, proelio nuntiato, cursu incitato, in summum colle ab hostibus conscipiebantur. Et Titus Labienus castris hostium potitus et ex loco superiore quae res in nostris castris gerentur conscipiat decimam legiunem subsidio nostris misit. Quia quum ex equitum et calonum fugax, quia in loco res esset, quoque in percuto et castra et legiones et imperator versaretur, cognovissent, nihil ad celeritatem sibi reliqui fecerunt.

XXVII.—Horum adventu tanta rerum commutatio facta est ut nostri, etiam qui vulneribus confecti procula resistent, scutis innixi proelium redintegrare, tum calones perterritos hostes conscipiat etiam inermes armatis occurrerent, equites vero, ut turpitudinem fugae virtute delerent, omnibus in locis pugnare se legionarii militibus praeferrent. At hostes etiam in extrema spe salutis tantam virtutem praestiterunt ut, quum primi eorum cecidissent, proximis jacentibus insisterent atque ex eorum corporibus pugnarent: his dejectis et coaeervatis cadaveribus, qui superessent ut ex tumultu tela in nostros conjicerent et pilae intercepta remitterent: ut non nequiam tantae virtutis homines judicari deberet, a usus esse transire latissimum flumen, ascendere alissimas ripas, subire iniquissimum locum; quae facilis ex difficillimiis animi magnitudo redegerat.
XXVIII.—Hoc proelio facto et prope internectionem gente ac nomine Nerviorum redacto majores natu, quos una cum pueris mulieribusque in aestuaria ac paludes collectos dixeramus, hac pugna nuntiata, quum victoribus nihil impeditum, victis nihil tutum arbitrarentur, omnium qui supererant consensu legatos ad Caesarem miserunt sequi ei dediderunt, et in commemoranda civitatis calamitate ex sexcentis ad tres senatores, ex hominum millibus sexaginta vix ad quingentos qui arma ferre possent sese redactos esse dixerunt. Quos Caeser, ut in miseros ac supplices usus misericordia videretur, dilligentissime conservavit suisque finibus atque oppidis uti jussit, et finitimis imperavit ut ab injuria et maleficio se suosque prohiberent.

XXIX.—Aduatuci, de quibus supra scripsimus, quum omnibus copis auxilio Nerviis venirent, hac pugna nuntiata ex itinere domum revertentur; cunctis oppidis castellisque desertis sua omnia in unum oppidum egregie nature munitum contulerunt. Quod quum ex omnibus in circum partibus altissimas rupes despectusque haberet, una ex parte leniter acclivos aditus in latitudinem non amplius ducentorum pedum relinquebatur: quem locum duplici altissimo muro munierant, tum magni ponderis saxa et praecutae trabes in muro collocarant. Ipsi erant ex Cimbris Teutonisque progenati, qui, quum iter in provinciam nostram atque Italiam facerent, iis impedimentis, quae secum agere ac portare non poterant, citra flumen Rhenum depositis custodiam ex suis ac praesidio sex millia hominum reliquerunt. Hi post eorum obitum multos annos a finitimis exagitati, quum alias bellum inferrent, alias illatum defendent, consensu eorum omnium pace facta hunc sibi domicilio locum delegerunt.

XXX.—Ac primo adventu exercitus nostri crebras ex oppido excursiones faciebant parvulisque proelii cum nostris contendebant; postea vallo pedum duodecim in circuitu quindecim millium crebrisque castellis circummuniti oppido sese continebant. Ubi vineis actis aggere extructo turrim procul constitui viderunt, primum irridere ex muro atque increpitare vocibus, quod tanta machinatio ab tanto spatio institueretur: Quibusnam manibus aut quibus viribus praesertim homines tantulae staturae, nam plerumque hominibus Gallis prae magnitudine corporum suorum brevitas nostra contemptui est, tanti oneris turrim in muro sese collocare consideret?
XXXI.—Ubi vero moveri et appropinquare moenibus viderunt, nova atque inusitata specie commoti legatos ad Caesarem de pace miserunt, qui ad hunc modum loquuti: Non se existimare Romanos sine ope divina bellum gerere, qui tantae altitudinis machinationes tanta celeritate promovere et ex peregrinate pugnare possent, se suaque omnia eorum potestati permettere dixerunt. Unum petere ac deprecari: si forte pro sua clementia ac mansuetudine, quam ipse ab illis audirent, statuisset Aduatucos esse conservandos, ne se armis despoliaret: sibi omnes fere finitimos esse inimicos ac suae virtuti invidere, a quibus se defendere traditis armis non possent. Sibi praestare, si in eum casum deducerentur, quamvis fortunam a Populo Romano pati quam ab his per cruciatum interici inter quos dominari consuessent.

XXXII.—Ad haec Caesar respondit: Se magis consuetudine sua quam merito eorum civilitatem conservaturum, si prius quam murum aries attigisset se dediderissent: sed ditionis nullum esse conditionem nisi armis traditis: si quod in Nerviis fecisset factum finitimisque imperaturum, ne quam dedititiis Populi Romani iuriam inferrent. Re nuntiata ad suos, quae imperarentur facere dixerunt. Armorum magna multitudine de muro in fossam quae erat ante oppidum jacta sic ut prope summam muri aggerisque altitudinem acervi armorum adequarent, et tamen circiter parte tertia, ut postea perspectum est, celata atque in oppido retenta, portis patefactis eo die pace sunt usi.

XXXIII.—Sub vesperum Caesar portas claudi militisque ex oppido exire jussit ne quam noctu oppidani ab militibus iuriam acciperent. Illi ante inito, ut intellectum est, consilio, quod ditione facta nostros praesidia deducturos aut denique indigentius servatuors crediderant, partim cum his quae retinuerant et celeverat armis, partim scutis ex cortice factis aut viminibus intexitis, quae subito, ut temporis exiguitas postulabat, pellibus induxerant, tertia vigilia, qua minime arduus ad nostras munitiones ascensus videbatur, omnibus copiis repentino ex oppido eruptionem fecerunt. Celeriter, ut ante Caesar imperarat, ignibus significatione facta ex proximis castellis eo concursum est, pugnatumque ab hostibus ita acriter ut a viris fortibus in extrema spe salutis iniquo loco contra eos qui ex vallo turribusque tela jacerent pugnare debuit, quam in
una virtute omnis spes salutis consistaret. Occisis ad hominum millibus quatuor reliqui in oppidum rejecti sunt. Postridie ejus diei refractis portis, quum jam defenderet nemo, atque intromissis militibus nostris sectionem ejus oppidi universam Caesar vendidit. Ab his quiemerant caput numerus ad eum relatus est millium quinquaginta trium.

XXXIV.—Eodem tempore a Publio Crasso, quem cum legione una miserat ad Venetos, Unellos, Osismios, Curiosolitas, Sesuvios, Aulercos, Rhedones, quae sunt maritimae civitates Oceanumque attingunt, certior factus est, omnes eas civitates in ditionem potestatemque Populi Romani esse redactas.

XXXV.—His rebus gestis omni Gallia pacata tanta hujus belli ad barbaros opinio perlata est uti ab his nationibus quae trans Rhenum incolent mitterentur legati ad Caesarem, qui se obsides daturas, imperata facturas pollicerentur; quas legationes Caesar, quod in Italiam Illyricumque properabat, inita proxima aestate ad se reverti jussit. Ipse in Carnutes, Andes, Turonesque, quae civitates propinquae his locis erant ubi bellum gesserat, legionibus in hiberna deductis, in Italian profectus est: ob easque res ex litteris Caesaris dies quindecim supplicatio decreta est, quod ante id tempus accidit nulli.
NOTES.
### ABBREVIATIONS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Abbreviation</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>a. or act.</td>
<td>active</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>abl.</td>
<td>ablative</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>acc.</td>
<td>accusative</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>adv.</td>
<td>adverb</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>comm. gen.</td>
<td>common gender</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>conj.</td>
<td>conjunction</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cp.</td>
<td>compare</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dat.</td>
<td>dative</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>def. defect.</td>
<td>defective</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dem. demonstr.</td>
<td>demonstrative</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dep.</td>
<td>deponent</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>disyll.</td>
<td>disyllabic</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>etym.</td>
<td>etymology</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>f.</td>
<td>feminine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fr.</td>
<td>from</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>freq.</td>
<td>frequentative</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fut.</td>
<td>future</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gen.</td>
<td>genitive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gr.</td>
<td>Greek</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Imperf.</td>
<td>imperfect</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ind or indec.</td>
<td>indicative</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>indecl.</td>
<td>indeclinable</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>inf. or infin.</td>
<td>infinitive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>interj.</td>
<td>interjection</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>interrog.</td>
<td>interrogative</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>irr. or irreg.</td>
<td>irregular</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>m.</td>
<td>masculine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n. or neut.</td>
<td>neutral</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nom.</td>
<td>nominative</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>num.</td>
<td>numeral</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>obsol.</td>
<td>obsolete</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ord.</td>
<td>ordinal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>p. or part.</td>
<td>participle</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pass.</td>
<td>passive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>perf.</td>
<td>perfect</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pers.</td>
<td>personal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pluperf.</td>
<td>pluperfect</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>plur.</td>
<td>plural</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pos.</td>
<td>positive degree</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>poss.</td>
<td>possessive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>prep.</td>
<td>preposition</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pres.</td>
<td>present</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>prob.</td>
<td>probably</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pron.</td>
<td>pronoun</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rel.</td>
<td>relative</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sans.</td>
<td>Sanskrit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>semi-dep.</td>
<td>semi-deponent</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sing.</td>
<td>singular</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>subj.</td>
<td>subjunctive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sup.</td>
<td>suppositive; supine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>v. a.</td>
<td>verb active</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>v. dep.</td>
<td>verb deponent</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>v. n.</td>
<td>verb neutral</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>voc.</td>
<td>vocative</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Where the etymology is not given, the word is of very uncertain or unknown origin.
NOTES.

N. B.—The grammatical references are to the sections of Harkness’s Latin Grammar (Standard Edition, 1881), and to Allen and Greenough’s Latin Grammar.

CHAPTER I.

Gallia—tres: “Gaul, as a whole, is divided into three parts.” Gallia omnis is opposed to one of the parts of Gaul inhabited by the Galli, or Celtae. In this passage Caesar refers to Gallia Transalpina, but does not include the Provincia (modern Provence). According to Zeuss, Gallia means “the land of the warriors” ; derived from galla, a Celtic word signifying “a battle;” hence galat, “a warrior.” According to others, Celtae and Galli are different forms of the same word and are both probably of Celtic origin. Max Müller says (Science of Language, Vol. I, p. 225, note 22) the word Keltos may have meant in the ancient language of Gaul, elevated, upright, proud, like the Latin celsus and excelsus. Hence Celtae may possible be simply “highlanders.” For the interchange of k (or c) & g: cp.: κύπερνως, gubernator: knee, γονγυ, genu.—divisa is here virtually a predicative adjective expressing the result of the action: H. 550, N. 2; A. & G. 291, b. According to Caesar, the Belgae occupied from Seine and Meuse to the Rhine, the Aquitani from the Pyrenees to the Garonne, and the Gauls proper inhabited the rest of the country with the exception of the Roman province (Provincia, modern Provence) in the south. Under Augustus Gallia Transalpina was divided into Gallia Narbonensis, Aquitania, Gallia Lugdunensis, Gallia Belgica. [See Ancient Atlas.]

unam: scil. partem; so with alteram, tertiam understand partem.

qui: i.e. (iī incolum) tertiam (partem) qui, appellantur.

lingua: H. 420; A. & G. 248. The Aquitanians spoke the Basque or Iberian language, which is still spoken on both sides of the Pyrenees. According to Tacitus (Germ. 28) the Belgae regarded themselves Germans rather than Gauls. Still from the names of places belonging to the Belgae we may infer that their language was strongly marked by Gallic words.—diversit; conjugate.

Carunna—Matrona—Sequana: give modern names. Explain the number of dividit: H. 463 II. 3; A. & G. 205, b.—Distinguish in meaning matrona, Matrona.

propter quod = propter ea quod: “on account of this, that, &c.,” i.e., “because,” the ea being an antecedent of the clause introduced by quod.

cultus—humanitate: the former refers to the external marks of civilization as dress, food, furniture, &c.; the latter suggests learning, culture, refinement of manners.
**NOTES.**

*provinciae*, i.e., the Roman province in Southern Gaul. The word still lives in the modern Provence.

*minimé*—*saepe*—*rarissime*: "very seldom."

*mercatores*: often mentioned by Caesar. The traders were mainly from Massilia (*Marseille*) and were probably Greeks and Italians who followed the Roman camp. The Helvetii and Belgae lay out of their route.

*quam*: pertinent: "which tend to weaken their courage;" for the const. of the gerundive: see H. 544, 2, Note 2; A. & G. 300 a.

*proximique*—*Germaniae*: "and they are next the Germans;" for the const. of *proximus*: H. 391, I. II. 2.; A. & G. 234, a. c.

*quibuscum*: H. 187, 2; A. & G. 104 e.

*quoque*: as well as the Belgae, "the Helvetii also."


*finibus*: distinguish in meaning *finis* and *fines*: H. 132; A. & G., 79. c. The indic. *prohibent*, because *cum* is purely temporal.

*eorum*, *eos*, refer to the Germans.

*eorum = horum omnium*: referring to the *hi omnes* above: "one division of their country, which, it is said, the Gauls occupy." The reference is to the people of Central Gaul.

*initium*—*capit*: "begins at;" Note that Caesar uses the apposition before or after its noun *flumine* *Rhodano*, *Garonna* *flumine*, though in Greek we say ὀ θνέαν ροδόντα, ἔρωτα καταγόμε, though in Greek

*vergit*—*septentriones*: "it slopes towards the north;" that is, all the rivers of *Gallia* proper, as the *Loire*, *Allier*, &c., run in a northerly direction.—*septentriones*: the word is used in the singular and in the plural. The two constellations, the *Greater* and *Lesser Bear* were called by the name *triones*. The Greeks called the Greater Bear *αὐτάρκης* (*Bear*) and *αὐτάς* (*Wain*). This latter constellation consists of *seven* stars, four of which form a quadrangle, and the other three lie in a right line attached to the quadrangle. A line drawn through the two extreme stars of the quadrangle passes through the north polar star, which is in the constellation of the Lesser Bear. The word *trio = trio*: cp. Sans. *tara*, "stars," properly "strewers of light;" cp. Eng. *star*; Germ., *stern*; Lat. *stella* (= *stera-ulra*), all from the root *stare* (cp. *sternio*): "to scatter." Varro (L. L. 7. 73) derives the word from *septem* "seven," *trio = bos* "an ox," so that according to him the words signify the "seven ploughing oxen."

*extremis*: compare this adj.

*ad*: "at" or "near."

*ocassum = septentriones*: the Belgic rivers, the *Sambre*, *Scheldt*, &c., run N.E., those of Aquitania, the *Garonne*, *Adour*, N.W.

**CHAPTER II.**

*dilissimus*: compare this word.

*Orgetorix*: Thierry says the word signifies, "king of a hundred mountains." Zeuss derives it from *org*, "to slay;" hence "the slayer."
M. — *consulibus*: "in the consulship of M. Messala and M. Piso?" H. 431, 4; A. & G. 255, a. The Romans marked the year by the names of the consuls in office, as the Athenians did by the name of the chief archon (δρέαν ἐπώνυμος). These were consuls B.C. 61, while Caesar was occupying the Province of Spain.

*regni cupiditate*: "with the desire for supreme power?" H. 416, IV., 7; A. & G. 245, b.

*conjuraciones*: "a league:" here not necessarily used in a bad sense; cp. *συνομολογεῖ*.


*ut — exirent*: object clause of *persuasit*. The subject of *exirent* is *civae*, implied in *civitas*.


*praestarent*: why is this subj.? H. 517, 524; A. & G. 326, 336.

*Galliae — potiri*: what cases may *potiri* govern? H. 410, V. 3; 420: A. & G. 223, a; 249.


*loci natura*: "by their natural situation;" "by the character of the country."

*locus Lemanno*: the Maritime and Coetian Alps separated the Roman provinces from the Helvetii as far as Geneva; from this point to Vienna, the boundary of the Roman province took a south-west direction.

*his — possent*: literally, "for these reasons it happened that they had wandered less widely, and less easily were they able to carry on war against their neighbours, i.e., than they wished.

*qua de causa*: "for this reason." Others read *qua ex parte*: "in this respect."

*pro — patebant*: "moreover, considering the extent of the population and their renown for war and for bravery, they thought they had (too) limited territories, which extended in length two hundred and fifty miles, in breadth one hundred and eighty miles." — *gloria — clu-eria*: root *clu*, "to hear;" hence, "renown." — *auguster*: the positive for the comparative; cp. Xen. Mem. 3, 13, 3: ἀναφέρεται, ἄριστα λοβοθαυματί, ἀκριβώς. The distance from the point where the Jura reaches the Rhone at Fort L'Ecluse, near Geneva, to Bregenz, on Lake Constance, where the Rhine begins to have a northern course, is 180 English miles; and the distance from Fort L'Ecluse to the junction of the Aar and the Rhine, is about 160 English miles. — *millia*: H. 379; A. & G. 257. The Roman mile (*milla passus*, pl. *milia passuum*) = 854 English feet; the *passus*, originally a double pace = 5 Roman pedes = 4 feet 10½ inches, by English measurement.

**CHAPTER III.**

*constituerunt — comparare, coemere, facere*: when does *constituo* take an inf., and when *ut* with the subjunctive? H. 498, 1, Note; A. & G. 271, a.

Translate into Latin: *The father resolved to remain at home*; *The father resolved that the son should remain at home.*
pertinent: Caesar is giving the thoughts of the Helvetii rather than his own: H. 528, 1; A. & G. 341, a.

carrum: many of the words signifying a carriage were of Gallic origin: cp. rheda, petorritum, carrus, essedum. The carrus was a four-wheeled car.

quam maximum = tam magnum quam maximum: "as large as possible": H. 170, 2, 2); A. & G. 93, b.

semenes—facere: "to sow the greatest possible breadth of corn."

ut—suppeteret: "that they might have supplies of corn for the journey": H. 497, II.; A. & G. 317.

ad—dixerunt: "they thought that a space of two years would be sufficient for them to carry out these plans."—conficiendas: H. 544, I.; A. & G. 296.

in—confirmat: "by a formal enactment they appoint their setting out for the third year." in—annum: predetermination of future time is expressed by in with acc. Translate: He called together the senate on the third day; He called together the senate for the third day.

persuadet: historical present: H. 467, III., 1; A. & G. 276, d.

regnum—obtinuerat: "had held sovereign power."

amicus: not unfrequently the senate of Rome conferred the title amicus on a foreign chief or ruler for the purpose of gaining his influence.

occuparet: imperfect subjunctive after the historical present persuadet; so also conaretur: H. 495, II.; A. & G. 287, e.

obtinuerat: give the force of the imperfect: H. 496, II.; A. & G. 115, 2, b.

dare in matrimonium, said of a father; ducere in matrimonium, ducere uxorem, said of a husband; nubere viro, said of a woman.

perfæcile—possent: indirect discourse depending on probat: "he shows that it was a very easy matter (lit., very easily to be done) to carry out their plans, because he himself was likely to obtain the sovereign rule of his own state."—factu: H. 547, 1; A. & G. 393, R. For oblaturus esset: H. 496, II., 2; A. & G. 129, 1.

non—possent: "that there was no doubt that the Helvetii possessed the greatest power of all Gaul;" possum is here used absolutely, "to be powerful," not prolatively, "to be able to do a thing."—plurimum: neut. acc. used adverbially; strictly the cog. acc.: H. 394, 1, 3: 371, II (2); A. & G. 148, d; 249, a.

se—confirmat: "he assures them that he would gain for them the sovereign power by his influence and his army." Explain the cases of copia and illis.


e—spereant: "and if they can seize the royal power they expect by means of three noster powerful and strong nations to be able to gain the sway of all (t.)—regno occupato: conditional = si regnum occupavissent: H. 431, 2); A. & G. 255—tres populos: Helvetii, Sequani, Aedui—

Gallia: H. 410, V. 3; A. & G. 249, a.
NOTES.

CHAPTER IV.

ca res: "this design;" res is a general word, often used by Caesar in the sense of "occurrence," "exploit," "movement," "design," "conspiracy," etc.

per indicium—per indices: "by informers;" so servitium = servi: so also conjuratio = conjurati.

moribus suis: "according to their custom;" abl. of manner; op. more majorum, more Romano, ea lege, mea sententia: H. 419, III., note 2; A. & G. 248 Remark.

ex vinculis: give the force of ex. With causam dicere, compare causam agere, causam habere.

damnationem—cremaretur: "it behooved that the punishment that he should be burnt by fire should be visited upon him, in case he was condemned."—Damnationem = si damnatus esset; H. 549, 2; A. & G. 292—ut cremaretur in apposition with poenam: H. 501, III.; A. & G. 332, f.

Burning at the stake for treason was a common punishment among the Gauls.—ignis: perhaps a locative; "in the fire;" so novi—processit: "he went by sea."


familia: in a Roman sense this word included the slaves (servi), dependants (clientes), and debtors (obserarii) reduced to a condition of slavery. The word signifies the body of the familia (= fac-muli) from facio, "to do," or slaves as opposed to liberi, or "freemen," who constituted the family as now understood.

ad: adverbially; "about." What other adverb is thus used with numerals?

clientes: "dependants;" root CLU, "to hear;" hence "to obey;" cp. audito = pareo.

per eos—erupit: "by their aid he escaped pleading his own case;" he so overawed the judges that they did not dare to try him.

jus—exsequi: "to maintain its right," i.e. its right to punish traitors.

cremaretur—cogerent: explain these subjunctives: H. 521, II., 2; A. & G. 325.

neque—conscivit: "and suspicion is not wanting that he was privy to his own death," i.e., that he committed suicide; a euphemism: H. 504, 3 (2); A. & G. 319, d. The negative of the dependent clause arises from the negative character of the main clause.—suspicio = suspicio: the lengthening of the i probably arises from contraction. Distinguish suspicio and suspicso. Parse conscivit.

CHAPTER V.

nihilo minus: for the const. see H. 423; A. & G. 250.

ut—esseant: an objective clause in apposition with id quod—constituent: H. 501, 2; A. & G. 329, 2; "to leave their territories."
NOTES.

opidia sua: "walled towns;" vicos, "villages," groups of houses in the open country. The root vic may be seen in Fowco, vicos, vicinus; English -wick in such names as Ipswich, Hawick.

incendunt—comburunt: accendere, to light from without; incendere, to light from within; comburere, to burn down with a burning heat, as causative of ardere; cremare, to consume with bright flames, as the causative of flagrare.

ut is used for quo, because so many words intervene between it and the comparative: H. 497, II., 2; A. & G. 317, b.

domum: acc. of limit of motion. The idea of motion is implied by reddidit: reddidere; H. 380, II., 2; A. & G. 258, b. d.

ad—subeunda: "to undergo all dangers:" H. 544, 2, Note 2; A & G. 296.

esseo: explain this tense: H. 495; A. & G. 287, e.

trium—juvent: "they order each one to take with him from home ground provisions which will last for three months."—trium mensium; gen. of description. The word mensis: Greek, μήν: Sans., māsa, month; māsa, moon; German, mond, all point to a root MA, "to measure," the moon being considered by the ancients the measurer of time.—domo: H. 412, II.; A. & G. 258, a.

ut—profisciscuntur: lit. "that adopting the same plan they may set out along with them after setting fire to their towns and villages."—oppidis existit: H. 431; A. & G. 255. Why is not oppidis the abl. of motion from a place? H. 412, I.; A. & G. 258.

Noreiam oppugnaram: the Boii were expelled from Italy 161 B.C. by the victories of Scipio Africanus. They then occupied the modern Styria. Distinguish in meaning expugno, oppugno.

Boios receptos—adsciscunt = Boios ad se recipiunt et (Boios) socios ad- 

asciscunt: "they join to themselves the Boii and unite them as allies:" H. 549, 5; A. & G. 292. Give the parts of adscisco.

CHAPTER VI.

itineribus: not to be translated. The repetition of the antecedent with the relative is frequent in Caesar when exactness is required. Caesar says there were two roads and only two by which they could get out of their own land.


possent: potential subjunctive: "routes (of such a character that) by 

them they (the Helvetii) could go out:" H. 503, 1; A. & G. 320.

unum—alterum, scil., iter, in partitive apposition with itinerum: H. 364; A. & G. 184. The first of these journeys was along the right bank of the Rhone. The narrowest part of this route is at Pas de l'Ecluse, about 18 English miles below Geneva.

vix qua singuli = qua vix singuli: hyperbaton; note the emphasis 

caused by the inversion: "where waggons scarcely in single file could 

pass." For the mood of ducentur; see possent above.
alterum: the other journey would be along the road leading to Vienna (Vienne), and Lugdunum (Lyon), by way of Chambéry. They would thus easily reach the Provence.


nuper—erant: "were recently reduced to submission." They were defeated by C. Pomptinus, 61 B.C.

nonnullis locis: "in several places": H. 425, II., 2; A. & G. 254, a. Distinguish in meaning nonnulli, nulli non; nonnullum, nullum non; nonnullus, nullus non; nonnulla, nulla non; loci, loca. For const. of vado: H. 420; A. & G. 248. At present the Rhone is fordable in only two places, a few miles below Geneva.

transitum—transire potest.

extremum: cp. ἐκάραν: "a border town." Compare this adjective.

proximum finibus: give the different constructions of prope: H. 391, I., II., 2; A. & G. 234, a.


bono animo: "kindly disposed:" H. 419, II.; A. & G. 251. For viderentur see H. 524; A. & G. 336.

vel—coacturos, scil., existimabant: "or they thought they would compel them by force." Decline vis.

suos, referring to the Allobroges; eos to the Helvetii.

paterentur: subjunctive for two reasons: H. 498, II.; 524; A. & G. 331, a; 336.

qua die: see note above on itineribus. The feminine here expresses the day as a fixed period, a day fixed by authority. Is dies is simply "the day," "the natural day," "the time."

convenient: H. 497, 1; A. & G. 317.

ante diem quintum Kalendas Apriles: ante really governs Kalendas Apriles, quintum diem being attracted from the ablative by the position of ante. The whole should be quintum die ante Kalendas Apriles, i.e., "five days before the first of April," or March 28th. For the computation of time: H. 642-644; A. & G. 376. Derive Kalendae, Nonæ, Idus.

CHAPTER VII.

nuntiation—esset: for the mood, see H. 521, II., 2; A. & G. 325.


ab urbem—Romam: "the city," by way of distinction: cp. a urbe, applied to Athens.

quam—itineribus: for quam; H. 170, 2, (2); A. & G. 93, b. Caesar must have crossed the Alps, though he does not mention the fact. He travelled with great rapidity, sometimes according to Suetonius (Caesar, 57) at the rate of 100 Roman miles a day.

Galliam citeriorem: distinguish Gallia citerior, Gallia ulterior.

ad Genavam: is ad necessary? H. 380, II. 1 (f); A. & G. 258, f, R.
Genavam, derived from the Celtic word *gena*, "mouth," because the lake there presses into the river's narrow course. Plutarch states that Caesar made the journey from Rome to Geneva in eight days.

*provinceae toli*: H. 385, 1; A. & G. 227. Distinguish the meanings and constructions of *impero*.

*legio una*: probably the tenth.

*certiores sunt*: "were informed," lit., "were made more certain."

*legationis=legatorum*: the abstract is here put for the concrete.


*sibi—animo*: "that their intention was;" literally, "that it was to them in mind." *Sibi=Helvetia*.

*memoria tenebat*: "he remembered;" for *memoria*, see H. 420; A. & G. 248.

*occisum, scil., esse*: so also with *pulsum, missum, concedendum, temperaturos*.

*sub jugum*: two spears were set up and a third placed over the top; this was the "yoke" under which conquered soldiers were made to pass, as a token of submission. The defeat here referred to took place 107 B.C. *concedendum*: "that this request ought to be granted."

*neque—existimabat*: "and he did not think that people of an unfriendly disposition, when once a permission of making a journey through the province was given them, would refrain from committing wrong and violence."—*neque=et non.—animo*: H. 419, I.; A. & G. 251.—*data faculata=si faculatas data esset*: H. 549, 2; A. & G. 292.

*spatium*: here = *tempus*.

*convenient*: for the mood, H. 519, II. 2; A. & G. 328.

*diem=tempus*.

*si quid—revertentur*: "if they wished anything, he told them to return about the Ides of April."—*quid*: when is *quis* used for *aliquis?* H. 455, 1; A. & G. 105, d.—*vellent*: for mood see H. 524; A. & G. 336, 337.—*ad*, here = "about." Translate from *si—revertentur* into direct narrative.

**CHAPTER VIII.**

*legione, militibus*: an instrument, rather than agent, because the legion was looked up as a kind of warlike instrument: H. 420; A. & G. 248.

*qui—influit*: as a matter of fact, the Rhone flows into the lake at the upper end and out at the lower.

*decem novem=undeviginti*.


*murum fossamque*: the probabilities are that Caesar fortified merely places which were without any natural defence. The wall and ditch would be hardly more than three miles long.
NOTES.

praedidum disponit: "here and there (dis) he places garrisons." According to Napoleon III., these lines consisted of a series of redoubts (castella) defending the left bank of the river, and connected together by a palisaded entrenchment cut into the bank itself.

quo facilius: when is quo used for ut? H. 497, I. 2; A. & G. 317, b.
se invito: "without his leave," "against his will:" H. 431, 4; A. & G. 255, a.
conarantur: because communis is in effect a past tense: H. 495, II.; A. & G. 287, e.
vinit: distinguish in meaning vinit, vinit.
reverterunt: from reverter: the tenses derived from the present are passive in form, those from the perfect, active. Generally reverter, "to return" before; redire, "to return" after, accomplishing one's journey.

iter: "the right of way."
prohibitum = se prohibitum esse.
navibus — factis: "by joining boats and forming several rafts:" H. 431, 2 (2); A. & G. 255.
alii: we should have expected alii before navibus, to balance alii before vadis; "some . . others." The use of the latter alii shows that most of the Helvetii attempted to cross in the way first mentioned.

si — conati: "in the hope that they by their attempts were able to force a passage:" H. 511, Note 3; A. & G. 307, f.

operis — destiterunt: "they gave up this attempt, being repelled by the strength of the work, the massing of the soldiers, and the darts." — conatus here refers to the rapid massing of the forces on a particular point. — conatus: H. 414; A. & G. 243.

CHAPTER IX.

relinquebatur — via: "the only way that remained was through the Sequani." The only way left was that by the north bank of the Rhone.

qua poterat: "by which they were unable to pass on account of the narrow defiles, in case the Sequani were unwilling"—qua: either adverbial or abl. of relative pro.—Sequani invitae = si Sequani invitae essent.—augustias; what words in Latin are used in pl. only? The Pas de l'Ecluse is referred to, where a few men could prevent a passage.

sua sponte: "by their own influence:" H. 420; A. & G. 248. Decline sponte. Donaldson supposes the word sponte, a collateral form of pondus, and that its meanings were "by their own influence," (as here), and "of their own accord."

ut intercederunt: "that by his intercession they might obtain their request." — in deprecatore: H. 431, 4; A. & G. 255 a.

Dumnorix — poterat: "Dumnorix had the greatest influence among the Sequani by reason of popularity and liberality." — gratia: H. 420; A. &
CHAPTER X.

remunisitatur: "word is brought back." The subject is really the subsequent inf. clause. There is implied in re—the fact that Caesar had sent out men to enquire.

Helvetiis—animoi: "that the Helveti intend;" cp. in animo versari, volvere.

qua civitas = et ea civitas: H. 453.

id, referring to facere iter. The principal verb of the indirect discourse is futurum (esse), the subject of which is the clause ut—haberet: H. 501, 1, 1; A. & G. 319, 332, a.

futurum (esse): the periphrasis with futurum esse, or fore with ut and the subjunctive for the future inf. indicates that a certain result will follow from causes unspecified. Hence the meaning is, "if this thing were to take place, he knew that it would be fraught with great danger to the province in its having men famed for war, enemies of the Roman people, bordering upon places open and very fruitful in corn."—locis: H. 391, 1; A. & G. 234 a.

et munitioni—praeficit: "he appointed T. Labienus lieutenant over that line of defence which he had built." For the dative, H. 386; A. & G. 228. T. Labienus was one of the best officers of Caesar's army. He was tribunus plebis in 63 B.C. On Caesar's invasion of Italy 49 B.C., he deserted his old commander and fought on the side of Pompey.

in Italiano: is the preposition necessary? Translate: he went home; he went to the house of Caesar; he went to Rome; he went to Italy; he went to Rome, a great city of Italy. Italy proper extended to the Rubicon. Then Caesar included Gallia Cisalpina.

magnis itineribus: "by forced marches." The regular day's march (iter jussui) was from six to seven hours long and usually began at sunrise. The distance ordinarily traversed was from fifteen to twenty English miles. On forced marches (itinerarum magna) of eight to twelve hours, a much greater distance was covered.
NOTES.

73

duasque—conscriptis: the two legions he levied in Cisalpine Gaul were the 11th and 12th; the three drawn from winter quarters at Aquileia were the 7th, 8th, 9th. The 10th was at Geneva. So Caesar had in all six legions. What was the number of men in a legion? Give the divisions of a Roman legion.

in—Galliam = in Galliam Transalpinam.

ibid—**Alpibus. Caesar's route lay by way of Turin, Mt. Genève, to Briançon and Embrun. The most direct route would have been by Mt. Cenis (Alpes Cottiae), which road, however, did not begin to be used till the days of Augustus.

locis—occupatis: "the heights having been previously seized:" H. 431; A. & G. 255.

compluribus—pulsis: the order is his pulsis compluribus proelii.

ab Ocelo—in fines: when is a preposition permissible before the name of a town? H. 412, II. 3; A. & G. 259, f.

citi eris provinciae=Galliae Cisalpinae.

CHAPTER XI.

jam—transduxerant: "had already led."

angustias: decline this word.

populabantur: note the change of tense. Bring this out in translating. The imperfect shows that the action was still going on.

quom—possent: "since they were not able to defend themselves and their property from them," i.e., from the Helvetii. Account for the mood in possent.

rogatum: supine; what are the uses of the supines in -um and -us? In how many ways may you express, he sent men to ask for help?

ita debuerint: "that at all times they had so deserved of the Roman people, that their fields ought not to be ravaged almost in sight of our army, their children led into slavery, their towns besieged." Put this into oratio recta.

Aedui Ambarri: the Aedui around the Arar (Saône). The prefix ambh is Celtic for ἀμφι in Greek. The main body of the nation were on the east of the Middle Loire. Bibracte (Autum), the great Druidical capital, and Noviodunum (Névers) were in their domains. We frequently find the generic name as Aedui with the specific name as Ambarri: cp. Ligures Salyses, Dalmatae Scordisci: οῖς καρπὸς; χόρος ραβρός.

necessarii—consanguines: the former denotes those who are bound by a permanent connection whether of an official kind as cliens, patronus, or of a private nature, as amicus, familiaris. With necessarii, cp. avexandos: consanguinei denota a relation derived from a common origin; cp. avyeris.

Caesarem—prohibere: "inform Caesar that their lands having been ravaged they now could hardly keep off from their towns a force of the enemy."—depopulatis: the most common passive deponent participles are: abominatus, amplexus, confessus, detestatus, dimensus, exsecratus, medi-
sibi—reliqui: "that to them nothing was now left except the soil of their land." Distinguish solum, solum; reliqui, reliqui. What case is reliqui? H. 397, 1; A. & G. 216, a, 1.

Caesar—pervirent: "Caesar resolved, after all the resources of his allies had been destroyed, not to wait till the Helvetii reached the territories of the Santoni."—exspectandum sibi: H. 388; A. & G. 232.—pervirent: for mood: H. 519, II., 2; A. & G. 328.

CHAPTER XII.

famen est Arar: "there is a river (called) Arar." The word Arar is said to be from the Celtic aras, "gentle;" cp. ἀράτις. The word Garonne, from the Celtic garu, "rough," "impetuous." The modern name of the Arar, Saône, is probably from the Celtic sogham; Lat. seqna, "slow." For a part of the course, at least, the Arar formed the boundaries between the territories of the Aedui and Sequani.

incribili—leniisse: "with such incredible smoothness:" H. 419, III.; A. & G. 248. As compared with the Rhone, Po, Adige and Tiber, rivers well known to Caesar, the Saône would appear very sluggish. He had not yet seen the rivers of Britain, notably the Thames.

fluent: dependent question, therefore, the subjunctive: H. 529, 1; A. & G. 334.


ratibus—transibant: "attempted to cross by joining rafts and boats."

For ratibus—junctis: H. 431, 2, (2); A. & G. 255.—transibant: conative imperfect. Where the Helvetii crossed the Saône is not known, probably a few miles north of its junction with the Rhone.

copiærum: "of the forces." What words have a different meaning in the singular and the plural? H. 132; A. & G. 79, c.

partes—famen: explain these cases: H. 376; A. & G. 239, b.

de vigilia: with the Romans the civil day began at midnight and ended at midnight as with us; the natural day began with the twilight and ended at dark. The day and night were divided into twelve hours each, the length of each hour depending on the season. The night was also for military purposes divided into four watches (vigiliae), of three hours each. The expression de tertia vigilia means, "in the course of the third watch," implying that the third watch had already begun. What would tertia vigilia mean? H. 429; A. & G. 256.

aggressus: what prepositions prefixed to intransitive verbs of motion may make them transitive? H. 372; A. & G. 228, a.

concidit: distinguish this in meaning from concidit.

in—abliderunt: "they concealed themselves by fleeing into the neighboring woods." What would in proximis silvis abdiderunt mean?

pagus: properly a country district of enclosed or cultivated land; root PAG, "to bind together;" cp. πᾶσανας, "a peg;" πᾶσανας, "to fix;" paciscor, pas, panjo. With pagus: cp. ἐξεμοί (from ἐξ, "to bind"); English town, A.S. tun, from tyman (tie), "to enclose." The word pagus
still lives in the French pays, which is often used in the same sense; cp. 
Pays de Vaud.

Tigurinus: the modern Zurich (called Turicens by the Romans, and 
Turegium and Turicum in the middle ages) was in this district.

domo exisset: "H. 521, II., 2; A. & G. 325.

memoria: "within the recollection:" H. 429; A. & G. 256.

L. Cassium: in the year 107 B.C. the Tigurini passed into the 
territory of the Allobroges under the command of Divico. C. Cassius Longinus 
who marched against them was slain and his army was ignominiously forced to 
pass under the yoke. In this battle fell L. Piso, a lieutenant of Cassius, and 
grandfather of Caesar's father-in-law, L. Calpurnius Piso.

ita—persolvit: "therefore, whether by chance or design on the 
part of the immortal Gods, that part of the Helvetic state which had 
inflicted signal defeat on the Roman people was the first to pay the 
penalty."—
casu: H. 416; A. & G. 245. —populo: H. 396; A. & G. 228. —princeps: 
H. 443, N. 1; A. & G. 191.

quod-interfererant: construe quod Tigurini, eodem proelio quo Cas-
sium (interferent), interfecerant Lucium Pisonem, legatum amicis Lucii 
Pisonis, exi (i.e. Caesar's) socii. Lucius Calpurnius Piso, consul B.C. 
58, was the father of Caesar's second wife, Calpurnia, familiar to all the 
readers of Shakespere's "Julius Caesar."—proelio: H. 429; A. & G. 256.

CHAPTER XIII.

hoc proelio facto—post hoc proelium: "after the battle was fought:"
H. 431; A. & G. 255.

reliquas—curat: "he has a bridge built over the Arar that he may 
overtake the remaining forces of the Helvetii." Note the emphasis of the 
words of this clause is heightened by inversion.—posset because curat is a 
historic present: H. 495, II.; A. & G. 287, e.—in: note the idiom.—pontem 
faciendum curat; literally, "he takes care of a bridge, as in the 
way of making." The gerundive was originally active (if derived from an active 
verb); cp. agitandum est (Plautus, Tr. 569), "I have got to stand guard.

The active force is still retained in secundum. Then the idea of necessity 
was developed through that of futurity; e.g. consilium delendae urbis would 
mean, "a plan of a city being destroyed" (i.e. in the process of 
destruction), then "about to be destroyed," then "to be destroyed," then "of 
destroying a city:" H. 544, note 2; A. & G. 294, b.

quum-intelligerent: "when they knew that he in one day had accom-
plished this (namely) the crossing of the river, a thing which they them-

selfs with the greatest difficulty had taken twenty days to accomplish."—
quum intelligerent: for the mood: H. 521, II., 2; A. & G. 325. —id object 
of fecisse and explained by ut—transirent; H. 501, 2; A. & G. 329, 
2.—diebus viginti: explain the case: H. 424, A. & G. 256.—illum, i.e. 
Caesarem: cp. text voc.

cujus legationis—quorum legatorum. See Note 10, Chapter VII.

bello Cassiano: "in the war against Cassius:" H. 395, N. 2; A. & G.
190. Since the defeat of Cassius took place 107 B.C. and Caesar was 
in command 58 B.C., Divico must have been a very old man.
NOTES.

cum—Caesare: cum aliquo agere: "to have any dealings or transactions with a person;" cum populo agere: "to bring a matter before the people," for their vote or opinion.

si—pacem: indirect discourse (oratio obliqua); turn this to direct discourse (oratio recta): H. 527, II.; A. & G. 337. The direct form is given in A. & G. 339.

sin—perseveraret: "if, on the other hand, he (i.e. Caesar) shall continue to harass (them) by war;" after persequi, scil., cos.


pristinae virtutis: "their former valor." Distinguish priscus, denoting "former," as worthy of honour, said of an age sacred and primitive = ἀρχαῖος; pristinus, generally of a time that is past = παλαιός; antiquus, opposed to novus, belonging to an age that previously existed = παλαιός; vetus, that which has lasted for a long time, opposed to recentis = καινός.

quod—asset: "as to the fact that he had suddenly attacked one canton."—quod is here a causal conjunction: H. 516, II., 2 N.; A. & G. 333, a.—improviso: note the emphatic position.—pugna, i.e., pugna Tigurinum.

ne—niterentur: "he should not on account of that circumstance either justly claim anything because of his own valour or despire them; that they had been instructed by their fathers and ancestors rather to trust to their valour, than to trust to artifices or ambuscades."—suae, i.e. Caesaris. —magnopere: compare this adverbial expression. —ipsos: referring to the Helvetii.—majoribus, scil., natu: compare this.—note the zeugma in contenderent.

quare—proderet: "wherefore let him not so act, that the place on which they had taken their stand should bear its name or hand down a tradition from an overthrow of the Roman people and the destruction of their army," Explain fully what the mood form would be in direct narrative.

CHAPTER XIV.

his, scil. legatis: "to these envoys."

eo—teneret: "he had the less reason for hesitating (what to do on this occasion), because he remembered (literally, retained in memory) those circumstances which the Helvetii had related."—eo is ablative of that to which the clause quod—teneret refers.—dubitationis: for the genitive: H. 397, 3; A. & G. 216, a, 3.—dari: H. 523, I.; A. & G. 336.

atque—accidisset: "and he was more indignant (at this), because (quo minus, the less) these things had not happened through any fault (literally desert) of the Roman people."—eo—quo: H. 417, 2; A. & G. 250, R.—With graviter ferre; cp. καλέσσει φέρειν.—merito: an ablative H. 416; A. & G. 245.
NOTES.

qui—cavere: "if they had been conscious to themselves of any wrong doing, it would not be a difficult matter to be on their guard."—qui, i.e. populus Romanus.—injuriae: for the genitive: H. 399, i, 2; A. & G. 218, a.—sibi conscii esse: cp. furo amuimt;—cavere: distinguish cavere aliquem, cavere aliqui: H. 385, II., i.

eo—putaret: "but (he said) that the Roman people were misled by this, because they were not aware that anything had been done by them on account of which they should fear, nor did they think that they ought to be feared without a reason."—eo deceptum: i.e., populum Romanum eo deceptum.—commissum, scil. aliquid.

quod injuriam: "now if he were willing to forget their former insult, could he also lay aside the remembrance of their late wrongs?"—quod, properly an adverbial acc. referring to the thought of the preceding sentence; literally, "as to which:" H. 378, 2; 453, 6; A. & G. 240, a.

These wrongs are specified in the clause beginning with quod: H. 540, IV.; 363, 5; A. & G., 399, 3.

eo invito: "though he (i.e., Caesar) was unwilling:" H. 431, 4; A. & G. 255, a.


quod—pertinere: "as to their boasting in such insolent terms of their victory, and as to their wondering that they had so long done wrong without suffering for it, (the two things) had both one meaning:" i.e., pointed in the same direction.—quod: the two clauses beginning with quod stand as the subject of pertinere: H. 516, II., 2; A. & G. 333, a. —sua: i.e.: Helvetii. The victory is the one referred to above in which the Romans under Cassius were defeated.

consuesse—concudere: "for the immortal gods are accustomed, in order that men whom they intend to punish for their crimes may be more severely pained by a change in circumstances, sometimes to grant to these a more prosperous fortune and a longer exemption from punishments."—conduesse: a perfect present; cp. odi, novi, coepi, memini.—quo: when is quo used for ut? H. 497, II., 2; A. & G. 317, b.

quum—facturum: "since these things are so, still, if hostages are given to him by these so that he may know that they would do these things which they promise, and if they make amends to the Aedui (and) likewise to the Allobroges for the wrongs which they have inflicted on them and their allies, (he declares) that he will make peace with them." Observe the tenses in subjunctive in oblique narrative are those used in the indicative of direct narrative.—Aeduis: sc. satisfacient: H. 385, I.; A. & G. 227, e.—ipsius=Ae
dius.

ita—testem: "that the Helvetii had received an established custom from their ancestors, that they were accustomed to receive, not to give hostages."


CHAPTER XV.

movent: scil. Helvetii.

coactum habebat: H. 388, i N.; A. & G. 292, c.
NOTES.

qui videant = ut ei videant: ei referring to equites implied in equitatus: H. 497, 1; A. & G. 317.

faciant: subj. of indirect question: H. 529, 1; A. & G. 334.

novissimum agmen, so. Helvetorum. Caesar often used novissimum agmen for extremum agmen.


de nostri, scil. militibus—nostrorum militum: H. 397, 3, N., 3; A. & G. 216, c.


audacius—coeperunt: “they began more boldly to make a stand, and sometimes to provoke to battle our troops on their rear.”—With audacius, scil. solito: “more boldly than usual.”—subsistere, scil. gradum.—nunquam et (asyneton): “(and) sometimes even;” the et expressed is not the conjunction, but the adverb = etiam. For the case of agmine: H. 425, II., 2; A. & G. 259, f: for that of proelio: H. 420; A. & G. 248.

suoe, scil., milites.

ac—inhibere: “and was content for the moment to keep the enemy from plundering, from foraging and from ravaging.”—in praesentia = in praesenti tempore: “for the moment,” “for the time being.” For the case of rapinis: H. 414, 1; A. & G. 243, a.

ita correlative with ut.


non—interesset: “not more than a space of five or six miles (each day) was distant”; for the abl. millibus: H. 379, N. 2; A. & G. 257, b; for the distributive: H. 172, 3; A. & G. 95. Distinguish bina castra, duo castra; binae aedes, duae aedes; bini horti, duo horti.

CHAPTER XVI.

interim: “meanwhile,” denoting merely a short duration; interea, meaning a period more extended; quotidie, said of daily repetition; in dies, of daily increase or diminution.

Aeduos frumentum: for the two accusatives: H. 374; A. & G. 239, c.

quod—pollicit: “which they had promised in the name of the state.” The subjunctive here is the subjunctive of oblique narrative: H. 524; A. & G. 336, or it may be equivalent to quum id pollicit esset.

flagitare: the historical infinitive, “kept asking,” “asked again and again”: H. 536, 1; A. & G. 275.

nam—suppetebat: “for on account of the frosts, because Gaul is situated beneath the north, as has been mentioned above, not only was the corn not ripe in the fields, but not even was there a sufficiently large abundance of fodder at hand.” Explain the difference in meaning between frigus and frigora: H. 130, 2; A. & G. 75, c.—septentrionibus: see Note 0.1

Chapter I.—ante, see Note on Chapter I.—frumenta, why plural? This
A.

fully,

they

A.

picked

them,

urgent

though

quartet,

t.e.,

memberof

state

taco,

distinguish

bretus,

and

the

This

bushel

before

“cltTr

Chapter

was

by

ttre4)

turned

he

after

ot

these

climate

statement shows that a remarkable change must have taken place in the climate of France since the days of the Roman occupation of that country. Caesar waited till after the 24th March at Geneva. He crossed the Alps, levied two legions, and mustered three more at Aquileia. In carrying out these plans, he must have spent at least two months. The date of his arrival at Lugdunum must have been as late as June 6th. The Helvetii after this occupied twenty days in crossing the Seine, so that on the 26th of June the spring had not much more than begun.

eo—notebat: “besides, he was unable to make use of the corn which he had brought up the river Arar in vessels, for the following reasons (proptererea), because the Helvetii, from whom he was unwilling to depart, had turned aside their line of march from the Arar.”—eo frumento governed by uti. What verbs govern the ablative? H. 421.1; A. & G. 249.—

subvesterat: “had brought up,” from a lower place to a higher.—


diem—duce-re: “they (the Aedui) kept putting off (Caesar) from day to day; they kept saying that corn was being collected, was on the road, was ready for delivery.”—diem—Aedui: fully, Aedui ducere (historical inf. =ducebant) Caesarem ex die in diem; so dicere—dicebant: H. 536.1; A. & G. 275. We have a climax in conferri, comportari, adesse.

se duci: “that he was being put off too long.”—diius; A. & G. 93 a.

et—oporeret: “and that the day was at hand on which he had to measure out corn to the soldiers.”—lie: not translated (See Note on itineribus. Chapter VI.).—metiri: not necessarily a passive deponent; scil. eum before metiri. Grain to the extent of two pecks (modii), about half a bushel of our measure was served out to the army every fifteen days. This the soldier kept in a sack, and when he required flour he ground up the grain by means of hand-mills (molae manuales).

convocatis—poiestatem: “after collecting together the chiefs of these, of whom he had a large number in his camp, (and) amongst these Divitiacus and Liscus who held the highest office, which officer the Aedui called Vergobretus, and is elected annually, and has the power of life and death over his own people.”—convocatis—principibus: H. 431; A. & G. 255.—copiam: distinguish copia and copiae in meaning; also castrum and castra.—Divitiaco et Liscu, scil., convocatis. Why is magistratui in the dative? H. 386; A. & G. 228.—Vergobretum: said to be from the Celtic Feargo-breith, “a man for judging”; or Guerg-breath, “strong in judgment.” Caesar (8.33) states that the person holding this office could not leave the state during his term of office, and that no one could be elected, if a living member of the family had held the post. The Celtic adj. guerg may be connected with the Aryan root KUR, “powerful;” cp. quercus, the oak, i.e., the strong tree; Quirites, “the powerful” as holding the franchise; quiris, κήρος, κήρος, κοπανευ.

gravier—sublevetur: “he severely reprimands them (saying), that though grain corn could neither be bought nor obtained from the fields in so urgent a crisis, the enemy being so near at hand, he was not assisted by them.”—posset; scil., frumentum.—tempore—hostibus; abl. absol: H. 431; A. & G. 255.

praesertim—queritur: “especially does he complain with still greater
vehemence of his being left unaided (by them) since he mainly (ex magna parte) influenced by their entreaties had undertaken the war." — magnae ex parte, literally "in a great measure." Give the forms of precibus. For mucho : H. 423; A. & G. 250.

CHAPTER XVII.

quod—proponit: "states publicly (that) which he had left unmentioned." —quod, referring to id understood, object of proponit. The rest of the chapter is in oblique narration: H. 524; A. & G. 336. Turn this chapter into direct narrative.

eius—magistratus: "there are some whose influence with the common people is very great, who in their private capacity have more influence than the magistrates themselves." —plurimum, plus (see Note on plurimum, Chapter III). —privatius, others read private. The influence of the chieftain was paramount in all Celtic communities, from the days of Caesar till comparatively late times. In Britain we find the same state of matters as here depicted, till the end of the 17th Century.

hos—perferre: "these by their seditious and disloyal speeches deterred the people from supplying the corn which they had engaged to supply; if now they were unable to hold the supremacy of Gaul, they had better endure the government of the Gauls than that of the Romans." —ne conferrant; the plural of the verb arises by a sense construction from the plural implied in multitudinis: for mood: H. 498, II.; A. & G. 331, e. With perferre, scil., malle. Another reading is praferre, instead of perferre; the meaning then is: "if they were unable then to hold the supremacy of Gaul, they thought the rule of the Gauls better than that of the Romans."

nego—erepturi: "nor ought they to doubt that, if the Romans defeated the Helvetii, they (the Romans) would deprive the Aedui, as well as the rest of Gaul, of their liberty." What meaning and construction has dubitare in an affirmative sentence? What in a negative? H. 504-3 (2); A. & G. 332, g.—Aeduis, H. 388, 2; 385, II., 2; A. & G. 229, b.—erepturi sint: more emphatic than eripiant: H. 501, II., 2; A. & G., 319, d.

queaque—gerantur: "and whatever is done in the camp."

a se = ab Lisco.

quin—tacuisse: "moreover, in that compelled by necessity, he has told this matter to Caesar, he knew at what risk he did this and for this reason he had been silent as long as he could be." —quod: H. 516, II., 2, N; A. & G. 333, a.—id refers to the clause, quod—enuntiavit.

CHAPTER XVIII.

Caesar—sentiebat: "Caesar felt by this speech of Lisco that Dumnonix, the brother of Divitiacus, was meant:" literally, "was pointed at." sed—retinet: "but since he (i.e. Caesar) was unwilling that these matters should be discussed, when many were present, he quietly dismisses the meeting, (and) detains Lisco." —quod nobilet. When does quod take the indic., and when the subj.? H. 516, I., II.; A. & G., 333; 341.—pluri-
bus praeentibus; abl. absolute: H. 431.4; A. & G. 255, a. Give the present indic. of praeestum.—concilium; the usual distinction between consilium, and concilium, that the former means “advice,” “plan,” while the latter means “an assemblage,” does not always hold good, though the distinction holds here. Concilium: con. = cum. root cafl, in calare, cp. Gk. kaiistv, “to call together;” consilium: con. root sel; cp. solium; “a throne;” “to sit together;” root sed; for interchange of d and l; cp. oácro, lacrma; lingua=lingua.—dimittit, retin. What figure? H 467, III.; A. & G. 276, d.

quaeit—dierit: “he (i.e. Caesar) inquires from him in private about those things which he (i.e. Liscus) had mentioned in the meeting.” Distinguish in meaning rogo, quero, introtero.

eadem—quaerit: “he makes inquiries about the same things from others in secret.”

esse vera: scil. hoc.

ipsum—novarum: “that Dumnorix was the very man, of the greatest boldness, of great influence among the common people on account of his liberty, eager for a change of government.”—ipsum; ipse has often this meaning. Translate tripinta dies erant ipsi, quum has dabam litteras. summa audacia, scil., virum: for the case of audacia gratia: H. 419, II.; A. & G. 251.

complures—memo: “that he (i.e., Dumnorix) had farmed for many years the revenues arising from the harbours and all the other taxes of the Aedui at a low rate, because, when he was bidding, no one dared to bid against him.”—annos: H. 379, A. & G. 256.—portoria. The different kinds of taxes were: (1) tributum, which was (a) either a tax so much a head (in capita); (b) or a tax according to the valuation of the estate (ex censu); (c) or extraordinary, exacted in cases of necessity (temerarium); (2) portorium, money paid at the port for goods imported or exported, the collectors of this tax were called portiores; (3) decumae, tithes, or a tenth part of corn and a fifth of other fruits, which were exacted from all those who tilled the public lands (ager publicus) either in Italy or outside of it; (4) scriptura was a tax paid from the public pastures or woods. Vectigal was a general term applied to anything brought into the treasury (veho, vectus).—parvo preto: H 422, A. & G 252.—redempta habere—redemisse: H. 388.1. N; A. & G. 292 c. The revenues were farmed out, that is, the privilege of collecting them was sold at auction to the highest bidder who collected them through agents (publicani). The persons who farmed these guaranteed the state a certain sum and pocketed the remainder—illo licente: H. 431; A. & G. 255. The verb liceor (middle deponent) is from the same root as lingue; first meant “to get a thing left to oneself,” hence “to bid for it.” The intransitive liceo has the meaning, “to be let,” i.e., “sold” at a given price.

his—comparasse: “by this means he had both increased the wealth of his own family and had obtained great means to carry out his liberty”—auxisse: distinguish augere, transitive, and crescere, intransitive. largiendum: H. 542, III. N. 2; A. & G. 300.—comparasse, scil., cum.

suo—alere: “at his own expense he always maintained.”—sumptu; H. 420; A. & G. 245.
neque—posse: "and not only at home, but also among the neighbouring states did he exercise a powerful influence"—neque = et non.—domi: H. 426.2; A. & G. 258. d.

atque—collocasse: "and for the sake of (maintaining) this influence, he had given in marriage his mother to a man among the Bituriges there the: ..ost noble and most powerful, (while) he himself had a wife from the Helvetii, (and) had given in marriage a (half) sister on his mother's side, and his own near relations to be married among the other states."—causa: H. 416, foot note 2; A. & G. 245 c. Biturigibus: the Bituriges were a Celtic people separated from the Aedui by the Loire. Their chief town was Bouryes.—collocasse, scil., nuptum; for construction of nuptum: H. 546.1; A. & G. 302.—ipsum: Dumnorix, who had married the daughter of Orgetorix (see Chap. vi.).—sororem ex matre, scil., partam.

favere—affinitatem: "that he was friendly and well disposed to the Helvetii on account of that relationship."—Helvetii: for the case: H. 385.1: A. & G. 227. The full phrase is: cupere omnia Helvetiorum causid, or cupere omnia quae Helvetii cuperent.

odisse—restitutus: "that he further hated Caesar on his own account, and the Romans, because with their approval his power had been curtailed, and his brother Divitiacus had been restored to the old place of influence and of power (held by him i.e. Dumnorix)."—quo nomine: H. 416; A. & G. 245.—diminuta, scil., sit. Divitiacus was a Druid of great influence and high position. We may infer that he was a man of refinement He had spent some time at Rome, B.C. 63, trying to get the aid of the Romans against Arioavors.

si—venire: "if anything adverse should happen the Romans, he had the greatest hope of obtaining the sovereign power by the help of the Helvetii." Distinguish accidit, evenit; said of favourable or unfavourable things, the former applied to things that are unexpected, that take us by surprise, the latter, to things that are expected and foreseen; contigit, obvenit, obtingit, applies to things that are fortunate, the first referring to the favours of fortune, the other two to things that fall to one's lot.—si quid accidat: euphemism, a mild way of saying anything ill-omened; cp. et vi réboev for el bâwouev

imperio—desperare: "so long as the empire of the Romans lasted, he despairs only of (obtaining) sovereign power, but even of (retaining) that influence which he had."—for imperio: H. 416 or 429; A. & G. 245, or 256.

reperiebat—equitibus: "Caesar found out further in the course of his enquiries in regard to the unsuccessful cavalry skirmish which had taken place (that) a beginning of the flight in it (i.e. in the battle) had been commenced by Dumnorix and his cavalry." Distinguish reperire, said of things found out with difficulty, after a search; inventire, of things accidentally discovered.—quad is attracted into the case of the relative clause, while its proper place in the antecedent clause is taken by fugae.—ejus, either (1) a prominent adjective, "of that flight," or (2) referring to proelium.

NOTES.

CHAPTER XIX.

**quidem cognitis:** "after these things were found out"; H. 431; A. & G. 255.

**quaeum acciderent:** "when the most undoubted facts were added to these grounds of suspicion." Distinguish in meaning suspicio, suspicio.

**quod traduxisset:** "the fact that he had led"; for the mood: H. 516 II.; 528, I.; A. & G. 341, d. The subjunctive implies that the fact is well-known to the reader.

**quod curisset:** "the fact that he had taken pains to procure an exchange of hostages."

**non modo ipsis:** "not only without his (Caesar's) own orders, and those of the state (of the Aedui), but even without the knowledge of the latter." Decline *infessu.* 

**a magistratu,** i.e., by the Vergobret, Liscus.

**causa:** depending on satis, which is used as a noun: H. 397, 4; A. & G. 216, 4. What other adverbs are similarly used?

**quare jubet:** "why either he himself (i.e. Caesar) should punish him or order the state to punish (him)." — animadverteret, a mild way of speaking. With an acc. only animadvertet, means, "to see," or "observe." With acc. with in, "to punish." For mood: H. 524, 529. I.; A. & G. 334.

**his rebus:** "to all these considerations"; H. 385, I.; A. & G. 227.

**his cognoverat:** "the one objection that was in the way of all these considerations was the fact that he knew that the good will of his brother Divitiacus towards the Roman people was very great; that his affection towards himself was very great; that his loyalty, his regard for right, his self-control, was pre-eminent." Divitiacus, though belonging to the Druids, was one of the most Romanized of all the Gauls. Coming to Rome, B.C. 63, when the Senate was engaged in crushing the conspiracy of Catiline, he was detained for some time, frequented the best society and enjoyed the friendship of Cicero, who consulted him, as a Druid, on the subject of the treatise, De Divinatione. His name is said to be derived from the Celtic *dui,* "a god."

**nam veletur:** "for he was afraid that by punishing him (literally by the punishment of him i.e. Dumnorix) he would wound the feelings of Divitiacus." Explain the use of *ut* and *ne* after verbs of "fearing": H. 498, III.; A. & G. 331, f.

**prior quam conaretur:** "before he made any attempt." For the mood: H. 520, II.; A. & G. 327. Explain the use of *prior quam,* with the indicative and with the subjunctive.

**quotidianis remotis:** "dissuising the ordinary interpreters"; H. 431; A. & G. 255.

**ei habebat:** "in whom he had unbounded confidence in all things."

**simul dixit:** "at the same time he reminds him of those things which had been said in the council of the Gauls in his (Caesar's) presence about Dumnorix, and he points out what each one individually had said about"
him (i.e. Dumnorix) before him (Caesar)."—dicta sunt: H. 529, 1; A. & G. 334; so also dixerit. Distinguish quisque and uterque.

petit—jubeant: "he asks and advises that without wounding his (Divitiacus's) feelings, either that he (i.e. Caesar) should decide (the matter) regarding him, after the cause had been heard, or that he should order the state to do so." Cognoscere causam, is "to hear a cause."—civitatem, scil., Aedorum.

CHAPTER XX.

ne statuant: "that he would not come to any decision too severe against his brother."—quid; when is quis used for aliquis? II. 455.—gravius: H. 444, I; A. & G. 93, a. What mood would this statement be in direct narration? From ne to averterentur we have oblique narrative. Change this to direct: H. 523, III.; A. & G. 339.

se scire: scil., dixit.

plus doloris: for partitive genitive: H. 397, 3; A. & G. 216, a, 3.

propterea quod—crevisset: "because, at a time when he (Divitiacus) himself had very great influence at home and throughout the rest of Gaul, (while) he (Dumnorix) had very little on account of his youth, he (Dumnorix) had grown (in influence and power) through his (Divitiacus's) means," gratia: H. 416; A. & G. 245.—plurimum, minimum; strictly speaking, cognate accusatives: H. 304, 1; 371, II., (2); A. & G. 148, d; 240 a With crevisset, scil., opibus ac nervis; opes, refers to resources of any kind; nervi, to power, strength, originally physical, then political.

quibus—uteretur: "wherefore he (Divitiacus) would employ these resources and this power not only to lessen his (Dumnorix's) influence, but almost to his own destruction." With uteretur, scil., propterea quod. For mood: H. 524; A. & G. 336.

quod—factum: "but if any punishment too severe should befall him (Dumnorix) at the hands of Caesar, while he (Divitiacus) held such a degree of friendship with him (Caesar), no one would think that this had not been caused without his (Divitiacus's) consent."—si quid accidisset: a euphemism; cp. el ti πάθος.—accideret; distinguish in meaning contempt, accidit, eventit, obrenit: see Chapter XVIII.

qua ex re—averteretur: "wherefore, (he said) the result would be, that the eyes of all Gaul would be withdrawn from him."—Totius Galliae omnium Gallorum. What figure?

petetur: for the mood: H 521, II., 2; A. & G. 325.

faciat: note the omission of ut after orat: H. 499, 2; A. & G. 331, f. R.

tanti—condonet: "he points out that his (Divitiacus's) influence with him (Caesar) was of such weight, that he (Caesar) would not remit the wrongs done to the state or his (Caesar's) own personal annoyance in return for his (Divitiacus's) good will and in accordance with his prayers."—tanti: H. 404, 405; A. & G. 215, c; 252, a.—condoner, means originally "to remit some debt (acc.) in consideration for something" (dat.) Here it means, to remit a merited punishment, not to the guilty person, but reasonably to another, for the benefit of the guilty.
A. H. A for distinguish why reperio, distinguish as H. A. DistinRuish A. A. invenio, A. A. dependent literally find H. for distinguish * * otre), ** A. A. see or out of imtu and matters ferently consul before,” as Chapter get other and short miiif., A. mountam. velUnt eqm comperit paaaibua prima teneretur: why subjunctive? H. 521, II. 2; A. & G. 325, 323. passibus: for ablative: H. 417; A. & G. 247. What was the length of a Roman passus? See Note at the end of Chapter ii. comperito: distinguish comperio, I find out by inquiry; reperio, I find out by search something concealed; invenio, I come upon a thing suddenly or unexpectedly without any effort. equo-admisso: abl. abs., “with his horse at full speed.” vellent: dependent clause in oblique narration: H. 524; A. & G. 336.
NOTES.

Gallicis insignibus: the devices on their shields and helmets. Here Gallicis = Helvetii.

dicit—subdicit—instruit: note the force of the presents.
ut: give the different uses of ut: see Vocabulary.
committeret: H. 498, 1; A. & G. 331, a.
visae essent: H. 529, II.; A. & G. 342.
multo—die: "at length when the day was far advanced;" abl. absolute.
per exploratores: distinguish this and ab exploratoribus: H. 415, 1, IV.
pro viso: "as (something) seen." Considius in the dim light of the morning had supposed the detachment of Labienus on the height a Gallic force.
millia: H. 379; A. & G. 257.

CHAPTER XXIII.

postridie: posteri die, cotidie are locatives merged in a dative; cp. in old Latin, die quinti, die crastini. Others take posteri die as ablative and compare postea and antea.—diei is a pleonasm: for the case, see H. 398, 5: A. & G. 214, g.
quod—supererat: "because two days in all remained." When does quod take the indicative, and when the subjunctive? H. 516; A. & G. 321.—biduum, the quantity of the i is accounted for by the fact that biduum = bidivum, the second i is omitted, the first i is long by position.
quum—oporiteret: "within which it was necessary that he should measure out corn to the army." —quum marks the time at the end of which the corn had to be given out; and the time is determined by biduum: H 521, II., A. & G. 320, 323.
amplius—octodecim: millibus is ablative of measure, not governed by amplius: H. 417, 2; A. & G. 247 c. For the length of a Roman passus, see at the end of Chapter II. What other word may be used for octodecim?
rei—existimavit: "he thought it necessary to provide for a supply of corn." What cases may providere have? H. 385, 1, II.; A. & G. 228.
decuriosis: the cavalry of a Roman legion was divided into 10 turmae, each turma numbering generally 30; each of these turmae was divided into three decuriae, each decuria numbering 10 The commander of a decuria was called decurio.
quod—existimarent: for the mood: H. 516, II.; A. & G. 341, d.—eo: on this account: H. 416; A. & G. 245, K.
pridie: traces of a locative in e are found; as cotidie, hodie,
quod—confiderent: "because they trusted that they could not be prevented from obtaining a supply of corn."—re: H. 414, i; A. & G., 243.
Conjugate confiderere. What verbs are semi-deponent?

CHAPTER XXIV.

id—advertit: the usual construction with animum advertere "to notice," is ad aliquam rem. The two accusatives with advertere, animum and a pronoun id, hoc, illud, though common in Sallust and Caesar is unusual in other classic Latin writers. Cicero used the form animadvertere which Caesar also sometimes uses. Animum is governed by the verb, and id, by the prep. ad: H. 376; A. & G. 239, b. See also Note, C. xix.

subducit: "he leads up close"; cp. subeguor.

gui sustineret: "to keep in check": for the subjunctive: H. 497, i; A. & G. 317. The battle was fought to the west of Bibracte.

interim—medio: "meanwhile, half way up the hill"; interim, implying a short duration; interea, "meanwhile" signifying a longer period occupied.—triplicem aciem: a legion in Caesar's time numbered 6,000 men, and consisted of 10 cohorts. Four of these cohorts formed the first line; then three behind the first four; then three behind the first three. Each cohort is supposed to have been separated from the other by an interval equal to the length of the cohort.

legionum—veteranarum: for the genitive: H. 396 V.; A. & G. 215. The regular time of service for foot soldiers was twenty years; for cavalrymen, ten. They were then discharged (emeriti), or they re-enlisted and served not with the other soldiers, but under their own flag. They were then called veterani, vexillarii, subsignani, or evocati.

ita—collocaret: "in such a way that he posted above himself on the top of the ridge the two legions which he had lately enrolled in further Gaul, and all the auxiliary troops."—supra se; Caesar was with the four legions.—summo: H. 440, 1. 2; A. & G. 193—quae; see Note on duasque conscribi.—Chapter x. Distinguish auxilium and auxilia in meaning. Here auxilia were troops that were not Italian.

hominibus—compleri: "to be manned."

interea: see note on interim, above.

sarcinae, the individual baggage of a Roman soldier consisted of provisions for fifteen days (cibaria), utensils (utensilia), a saw (serra), a basket (focus) a hook (falce), a thong (lorum), a chain (catena), a pot, and stakes (valli); the whole amounting to sixty pounds in weight: impedimenti, the general baggage of the legion.

confertissimae—acie: this ablative seems to be adverbial of manner after successerunt: "after repulsing our cavalry, and forming their phalanx, they advanced in very close order to our van."—acie: H. 419, III.; A. & G. 248.—phalange, any compact body of men went by the name of phalana. The Helvetii probably locked their shields together. The Helvetian was quite distinct from the Macedonian phalana.
CHAPTER XXV.

suo, scil., quo remoto: this probably means that Caesar and all his staff officers dismounted to encourage the soldiers of the legion. There is no reason, however, to suppose that the cavalry dismounted. Plutarch mentions that Caesar, in sending his horse away, gave orders that it should be brought back for the pursuit, after the enemy were routed.

aequato—periculo: "the danger of all being made equal"; abl. abs.: H. 431; A. & G. 255.

proelium commissi: "he commenced the battle." cp. μάχην συνάττειν with proelium committere.

ea dijecta, scil., phalange: "when that close band was dislodged." abl. abs.: H. 231; A. & G. 255.

gladius destitutus: "with drawn swords."

Gallic—impedimentum: "it was a great hindrance to the Gauls in the way of their fighting;" for the two datives: H. 390.1; A. & G. 233.1.

quod—colligatis: "that when several of their shields were pierced and pinned together by one blow of the javelins, they were neither able to pull out (the javelin), nor, in consequence of their left hand being hampered in its movement, to fight with sufficient advantage, since the iron point (of the javelin) had been bent (in the shield)." Decline plus.

sodium—colligatis: for the abl abs., H. 431; A. & G 255. Distinguish sodium, the oblong shield, about four feet long and two and a half broad, made of wood, pinned together with little plates of iron, and the whole covered with bull’s hide, from clipeus, a round shield of inferior size, and generally of metal.—se inflexisset: H. 517; A. & G. 326.—sinistra. The shield was carried on the left arm.—quod poterant. When does quod take indicative and when the subjunctive? H 516, I., II., A. & G. 321, 341. d.

multi—pugnari: "so that many, after tossing their arms to and fro, chose to drop their shields and fight unprotected."—bruchio factato, i.e., in endeavouring to pull out the javelin —nudo: exposed to the missiles of the enemy.

vulnibus—cooperunt: "spent with wounds they began both to retreat, and, because the mountain was about a mile distant, to withdraw to it." Milts here a noun depending on circiter: H 178, 379; A. & G. 94, e. N ; 257.

capto—claudabant: "when the mountain had been reached, and when our men were following close behind, the Boii and Tulingi, who, amounting to nearly fifteen thousand men, closed the enemies line of march." With capere montem; cp. portus capere.—millibus. H. 420, A. & G. 248.—agmen claudabant, i.e., were bringing up the rear.

novissimae—erant: "were a defence to the rear;" for the two datives. H. 390; A. & G. 233.—in itinere, "on the march."—latere aperto; "on the unexposed flank;" probably the right side, as the soldiers carried their shields on the left.

Romani—exit sperat: "the Romans changed their front and advanced in two divisions; the first and second line in such a way that they opposed
(the Helvetii) conquered and dislodged; the third line (in such a way) that they kept in check (the Boii and Tulingi) coming up."

Conversa sigla: distinguish sigla inferre, convertere, effere, referre, inferre, a sigla discedere, collatis signis confugere, signis infra secutae sunt

The idea here is that the first and second line of cohorts stood their ground to oppose the men dislodged (summotis); the third changed their position so as to meet the enemy who attacked their flank. The cohorts now presented two fronts to the enemy.

**CHAPTER XXVI.**

ancipit—pugnatum: "in a two-fold engagement, long and fiercely the conflict continued."

anceps, because the Romans were fighting in both parts. Derive anceps—pugnatum est: H. 301; A. & G. 146 c.—possent, scil. Helvetii, Boii, Tulingi.

alteri—contulerunt: "some retreated to the mountain as they did in the beginning of the battle; others fell back in order to the baggage and their waggons"; alteri, the Helvetii; alteri, the Boii and Tulingi. Distinguish alter and alius.

quum—potuit: "though the battle lasted from the seventh hour (of the day) to evening; no one was able to see the back of a foe."—quum: H. 515, III.; A. & G. 326.—septima hora: one o'clock. The day from sunrise to sunset was divided by the Romans into twelve parts of equal length—aversum hostem. Caesar often praises the valour of the enemies of the Romans.

ad—pugnatum: "to a late hour of the night, too, the battle continued at the baggage."

propterea—conjicicabant: "because they had placed the waggons as a rampart against (our men), and (thus) from a vantage ground kept throwing their javelins against our men (who were) coming up."—propterea quod: see Note, Chapter i.—e—superiore. The average length of the cast of a javelin was twenty-five yards. It would gain great impetus from even so small an elevation as the height of the carts.

nonnulli: distinguish this from nulli non. So also distinguish nonnunquam, nunquam non; nonmusquam, musquam non.

matoras—subjiciebant: "kept hurling their spears and light javelins from beneath." i.e. from underneath and through the spokes of the wheels.——matora (Livy uses the form materis) a Gallic spear, derived from Celtic medrydd, "to aim at a mark"; tragula, a light javelin thrown by means of a leather thong.——quum—esse: "after fighting a long time," literally, "when the battle has been fought for a long time;" for subjunctive: H. 521, II., 2; A. & G. 323.

poti sunt: what cases does potior govern? H. 410, V., 3; 421: A. G. 223, a; 249.—tota nocte: H. 379, 1; A. & G. 256, b.

nullam—intermissa: "during no part of the night their march being interrupted." For accusative: H. 379; A. & G. 256. This must mean the night after the battle.

triduum—morati: "having delayed for the space of three days;" with
triduum, scil., spatium. The fact that the Romans delayed so long after the battle shows that it must have cost them dearly.

ne—juvarent: "(telling them) not to aid them with corn or with any other thing." For the subjunctive: H. 523, III.; A. & G. 339. What would the mood be in direct discourse?

qui—habiturum: "and if they (i.e. Lingones) should aid them (i.e. the Helvetii), (he said) that he would regard them in the same light as (he regarded) the Helvetii." The relative refers to Lingones, and is the subject and (eoa) the object of juvissent, i.e. eoae is omitted.—quo, scil., habetur.

CHAPTER XXVII.

qui—paruerunt: "and when these met him on his march and threw themselves at his feet, and addressing him in the manner of suppliants in tears begged for peace, and when he ordered them to await his arrival in the same place in which they were, they obeyed." Distinguish eum convenit; ei convenit.—qui refers to ambassadors; eoae, to the main body of the Helvetii, by a rather loose construction.—essent: why subjunctive? H. 529, II.; A. & G. 342.

obsides—poposcit: "he demanded (from them) hostages, arms and (such) fugitive slaves as had fled for protection to him."—servos qui=(tales) servos qui: H. 503, i.; A. & G. 341, d.

dum—conferuntur: "while these were being hunted up and collected." Explain the uses of dum: H. 519; A. & G. 276, e.—ea, neut. pl., referring to obsides; arma, servii: H. 445, 3, N. 1; 439, 2, N.; A. & G. 195, 181, b.—nunc intermissa: the hostages, arms and slaves were not all collected in one day; a night elapsed, and at the beginning of this night, those six thousand mentioned escaped to avoid surrender.

pagi: see Note, Chapter XII.—Verbigenus: this canton at home dwelt north of the pagus Tagvinus, and occupied the modern district of northern Switzerland.

perterriti: explain the gender of this word: H. 438, 6; A. & G. 187, d.—ne; explain the use of ut and ne after verbs of fearing: H. 498, III. N. 1; A. & G. 311, f.

quod—existimavere: "because, though the number of those surrendering was so great, they thought that either their flight could be kept secret or would be altogether unnoticed."—quod—existimavere: for subjunctive: H. 516, II.; A. & G. 341, d.—in multitudine: this would be regularly expressed by the abl. absol. of the present part. of esse, if such a present part. existed.—dedictiorum: according to Caesar dedicti are those who have taken up arms against the Roman people, and, being vanquished, have surrendered (se deductiunt).

CHAPTER XXVIII.

restitit: "found this out"; reestio is to find out a thing concealed, or contrary to expectation.

quorum: the relative precedes the antecedent his.

his—imperavit: "he ordered those to hunt after them and bring them
back, if they wished to be held guiltless."—conquerent: H. 498, 1; A. & G. 331, a.

abii: “in his sight,” i.e. in the sight of Caesar: H. 384, 4, N. 3; A. & G. 235. —reductos—habuit: “he regarded those brought back in the light of enemies,” a euphemistic way of saying that they would all be put to the sword.

unde—e quibus.

reverti: see Note, Chapter VIII.


tolerarent: H. 503, 1; A. & G. 320, a. —facerent: “furnish.”—incendenter: why indicative?

quod noluit: the indicative as indicating the speaker’s reason: H. 516; A. & G. 333.

ne—esse: “lest on account of the fertility of the land, the Germans who dwell across the Rhine, should cross from their own territory into that of the Helvetii, and become neighbours to the Province of Gaul and to the Allobroges.”—transient: H. 497 II.; A. & G. 317. Caesar here alludes to the great western plain of Switzerland. The Helvetii had been reduced to about one-third of what they were before. There was a large amount of land unoccupied, and it is reasonable to suppose that the Germans settled in Helvetia in great numbers.

Boii:—concessit: “(Caesar) yielded this request at the instigation of the Aedui, that they (i.e. the Aedui) should allow the Boii to settle in their territories, because they (i.e. the Boii) were noted for their pre-eminent valour.”—Aeduis petentibus: abl. abs. H. 419, III.; A. & G. 255. The phrase ut—callocreant, depends on the ablative absolute: Aeduis—petentibus.—quiabus—dis: quias—eos: H. 453; A. & G. 180, f. —postea: after the rebellion of Vercingetorix, told in Book VII.—atque: “as.” H. 554.1.2, IV.; A. & G. 156, a.

CHAPTER XXIX.

tabulae—sumunt: “lists were found.” Distinguish reperio, “to find,” after search has been made; invenio, to suddenly “come on” a thing without searching for it.

literae—confectae: “written in Greek characters.” No Gallic alphabet is known. The Gafls probably learned the mode of writing from the Greeks of Massilia, a colony established by the Phocaean, B.C. 600. Strabo mentions that the Gallic contracts were made out in Greek.—quibus in tabulis: for the repetition of the relative, see Note, Chapter vi.: H. 445. S.; A. & G. 200, a.

ratio—est: “a computation is made.” —qui: interrogative: H. 188, II. 1; A. & G. 104, a. —dono—exisset: H. 529.1; A. & G. 324; for the latter, see H. 503.1; A. & G. 320, a.

separatim: “in separate lists.”

quarum—summa: “the total of all these various lists was.”—capitum

Halvstorum = Helvstorum, by synecdoche. We still say “head” of cattle.
The sum total was 368,000; the number bearing arms 92,000; adding the
NOTES.

number of those who left for home, 11,000 to the 32,000 of the Boii who were spared, we find that 226,000 of the Helvetii perished in this four months' campaign.

**qui-possent**: H. 503.1; A. & G. 320 a.

**censu-habito**: "after the enumeration was held;" abl. abs.

CHAPTER XXX.

totius—Galliæ: "of almost all the whole of Gaul." By Gallia, the land of the Galli in a restricted sense is meant.

**gratulatun**: for the construction of the supine in-um: H. 546; A. & G. 302.

**intelligere**, scil., dixerunt: for oblique narrative: see H. 523, 524; A. & G. 336: "they said that they were aware that though he, (Caesar), in return for the former injuries done to the Roman people by the Helvetii, had inflicted punishment on the latter in war, this still had happened no less to the advantage of the land of Gaul than to that of the Roman people." Helvetiorum—Populi: the former is the subjunctive, the latter, the objective genitive.

**propterca—haberent**: "because, when their affairs were most prosperous, the Helvetii had left their homes with this design, (namely), to carry on war against all Gaul, to become possessed of absolute power, to choose for settlement from a great abundance (of places) such a place as they would consider the most favourable and the most fruitful, and to hold the remaining states in subjection to them."—eo explained by the compound clause introduced by uti, which is in apposition to it.—**imperio**: what two meanings and what two constructions has potior? See note, Chapter XXVI.

**petierunt—liceret**: "they asked that they would be permitted to appoint for a fixed day a meeting of all the Gauls, and to do this with the consent of Caesar."—sibi: why would et be wrong?—totius—Galliæ = omnium Gallorum.—volutate: they wished to show that there was nothing bad intended by their assembling.

**habere**: H. 523.1, N.; A. & G. 330. e. What is the usual difference between consilium and concilium? See note, Chapter XVIII.

**et—sanxerunt**: "and they agreed among themselves by an oath that no one except (those) to whom this duty was entrusted by their general consent should divulge (what had been done at the council)."—jurejurando: decline this word.—**mandatum esset**: plupl. subj. of indirect for fut. pref. of direct discourse: H. 524; A. & G. 336.

CHAPTER XXXI.

ad Caesarem: "to Caesar." Explain the force of ad.

**reverterunt**: conjugate the verb. See note, Chapter VIII.

**uti—liceret**: "that they would be allowed by themselves to treat with him with reference to the safety of themselves and of all."—secreto: derive the word.—liceret: H. 538.1 (2); A. & G. 270, a.
NOTES.

H. 146; A. & G. 524; A. & G. 332, e, and 336. The form is arcessus, not arcessus: *ar = ad, as in arvena = adventa; arvocatus = avocatus; and as we have capessus from capio, so we have cesso from root ci in ciere.

Galliae-duas: "throughout the whole of Gaul there were two parties;" here Gallia means Celtica.

Sese—projectent: "they all in tears threw themselves at the feet of Caesar."—Caesari = Caesarius.

Non-impetarent: "(they said) that they were as earnestly and as eagerly anxious for this, (namely), that those things which they said should not be told as they were, that they would obtain these things which they desired."—id. in apposition to the clause beginning with ne—enuntiarentur.

Galliae-duas: "throughout the whole of Gaul there were two parties;"

Hi—arcesserentur: "while they were eagerly striving for supremacy for many years among themselves, it had come to pass that the Germans were invited by the Arverni and the Sequani for pay (to aid them against the Aeduini)."—mercede: H. 422; A. & G. 252—arcesserentur: H. 498, II., N., 2, and 524; A. & G. 332, e, and 336. The form is arcessus, not arcessus: *ar = ad, as in arvena = adventa; arvocatus = avocatus; and as we have capessus from capio, so we have cesso from root ci in ciere.

Horum-plures: "at first about fifteen thousand of them had crossed the Rhine. After these savage and barbarous men had grown fond of the lands, and manner of living, and abundance of the Gauls, a greater number had been brought over." Decline milia.—transisse: what prepositions added to intransitive verbs of motion render these verbs transitive?

copias: is this form usual in the sense here given?—adamassent: note the intensive force of ad.

cum—amisisse: "with these the Aeduini and their dependants repeatedly had engaged in battle; being repulsed they had met with great loss; they had lost all their nobles, all their senators, all their cavalry."—clientes: dependants in the tributary states; root clu, "to hear," hence "to obey," cp. audire in phrase dicto audire.—calamitatem; perhaps from CAD, "to fall;" hence, calamitas = calamitati.

Qubus—potuisse: "by these battles and losses their power having been broken, though they held formerly, both by their own valour and by the kind and friendly relations with the Roman people, the greatest power in Gaul."—fractos, scil. se.—hospites, referring to the fact that friendship had existed between the Romans and the Aeduini as nations.

et—repetituros: "and by an oath he binds the people of the state that they would not demand the hostages they had given;" seesse, referring to gves, implied in civitatem. quo minus—sub.: "from being under:" H. 407, II., 2; A. & G. 317, b. In cases like the present, quo minus is more polite than quin.

Unum—daret: "that he was the only one of the whole state of the Aeduini, who could not be influenced to take the oath, or to give his children as hostages."—potuit, in direct discourse, the subjunctive would be used: H. 503, II., 1; A. & G. 320, b.—ut juraret: H. 498, II.; A. & G. 331, e.—Romam: H. 380, II.; A. & G. 258, b.—postulatam, used as a law term., "to claim," as a legal right.

Sed—accidisse: "but a worse fate had befallen the Sequani than the conquered Aeduini." Ario viatus, derived by some from aur, "an eagle," and viatus a Latinized form of first—horst, "a nest;" the word then means eyry: but see prop. names.

Paucis—ante: expresses this in various forms.
futurum—pellerentur: "the result would be within a few years, that all would be driven out of the land of Gaul;" the subject is the clause beginning with uti.—paucisannis: express this in another way: H. 429; A. & G. 256.

necne—comparandam: Caesar means that Gaul was superior to Germany both in fertility and in cultivation; "the soil of Gaul was too good to be compared with that of Germany."

ut—semel: "when once for all." Distinguish simul, "once," "at once," and semel which brings out the idea of completeness. Magetoedia, from maith, Celtic for Latin magnus, Greek μέγας; and brig or big, "a fell." It is not known where this place was.—exempla cruciatusque: hendiadys.

hominum: distinguish in meaning, homo and vir; iratus, iracundus.

nisi—experimentur: "unless, indeed, they could get some help from Caesar and the Roman people, all the Gauls would have to do what the Helvetii had done, (namely), to leave home, to seek out another place of abode, another habitation, apart from the Germans, to meet and endure whatever fortune might befall them."—auxilia: H. 397, 3; A. & G. 216, a. 3.—idem, subject of faciendum esse explained by the ut clause: H. 501, III.; A. & G. 332, f.

haec—sumat: "if these things were told Ariovistus, he (Divitiacus) had no doubt but that he (Ariovistus) would inflict the severest punishment on all the hostages that were in his hands."—dubitare, scil., se. Distinguish poenus dare, poenas sumere.

vel—victoria: described in Chapters xxiv.-xxvii.

CHAPTER XXXII.

magno—fletu: H. 419, II.; A. & G. 248, R.


sed—inueri: "but with sullen faces, with heads bowed down, they gazed on the ground." Distinguish tristis, "of sad countenance;" maenius, "sad at heart."


cum—possit: "when he repeatedly asked them and was not able to extort any reply at all."—quaereret: H. 521, II., 2; A. & G. 325.

hoc—queri: "on this account the lot of the Sequani was more wretched and sadder compared with (the lot) of the others, because not even alone in secret did they dare to lament."—hoc: abl. of difference or of cause.—prae, scil., fortuna.

propterem—daretur: "because to the others the opportunity of escape, at any rate, was granted."—reliquis, scil., Gallos.
NOTES.

CHAPTER XXXIII.

his—cognitiss: ablative absolute.

et—putaret: "and next to these things, (which he had heard), many considerations influenced him why he should conclude that this matter ought to be considered and undertaken by him."—putaret: H. 503, 1; A. & G. 320, a.

quod—videbat: the indicative, as giving Caesar's own reason.

quod—arbitrabatur: "and while the empire of the Roman people was so great, he thought this the basest thing to himself and the state." The preposition in is often used as a substitute for the ablative absolute, as the participle of sum does not exist.—quod = et id.

paulatin—videbat: "moreover, for the Germans to become accustomed to cross the Rhine, and for a great number of them to come into Gaul, he saw that this was fraught with danger to the Roman people." The first two clauses are subjects of esse understood.

sibi—temperaturos: give the different meanings and constructions of tempero.—ante, referring to the events of 101 B.C. and 102 B.C.

praesertim—dividere: "especially since the Rhine only separated the Sequani from our province."—dividere: H. 517; A. & G. 326.

ipse—sumerat: "moreover Ariovistus had put on such airs, (and) assumed so proud a bearing."—ferendus non: "unbearable."

CHAPTER XXXIV.

quamobrem—deligeret: "wherefore he (Caesar) resolved to send envoys to Ariovistus to ask him (Ariovistus) to name some spot midway between both in which they might hold a conference."—ut—mitteret: subject of placuit: H. 501, 1; A. & G. 332, 2.—qui postularent = ut eis postularet: H. 497, 1; A. & G. 317.—medium utriusque: H. 399, 1, 3, note 2; A. & G. 218, d. So we find mediis with genitive in Caesar: De Bell. Gall. 4, 19: medium fere regionum earum: "about the middle of that district."

velle—agere: "(stating) that he wished to discuss with him a question affecting the state and matters of the highest importance to both of them."

et legationis = eis legatis: the abstract noun is put here for the concrete: see note B. I., chapter VII.

si—inportere: "if he himself (Ariovistus) should want anything of Caesar, (he said) that he (Ariovistus) would come to him (Caesar): if he (Caesar) wanted anything of him (Ariovistus), he (Caesar) ought to come to him (Ariovistus)." This sentence well illustrates the exactness of the Latin demonstratives and reflexive, an exactness that we do not possess in English. The demonstratives eum, illt, illum, refer to Caesar: while the reflexives, ipse, se, se, to Ariovistus. The first quid is subject of opus esset, the second as well as se is governed by poscre to be supplied with velit: H. 374; A. & G. 239, c. What is the usual construction of opus est? H. 414, IV. N. 4; A. & G. 243, e.

praefera—pose: "besides, he neither dared to come into those parts of
Gaul which Caesar occupied without an army, nor could he muster an army in one place without a large commissariat and much trouble besides." There is implied here that Ariovistus was some distance from Caesar, probably between the Rhine and the Vosges. We have here read emolumento which sometimes means "gain," "profit," derived from grinding corn: (e, prep.; mola, "a mill," hence, "the corn" the miller gets for grinding wheat). It may also express the toil and trouble given in compensation for gain. Some recognizing the difficulty read emolimento for moliri "to toil." —audere: what are semi-deponent verbs? Give a list of them.—contrahere: often used in this sense: Caesar: De Bell. Gall. 5, 22: navis circiter octo-
ginta unus aris coercit contractuque.

sibi—esse: "moreover it seemed a strange thing to him, what business at all either Caesar or the Roman people had in his part of Gaul which he had won by conquest."—quid—negoti: partitive genitive: H. 397, 3; A. & G. 216, a. 1. Explain the subjunctives in the dependent clauses from si quid to end of the chapter: H. 524; A. & G. 341, a.

CHAPTER XXXV.

mandatis: "instruction"; mandatum is properly what one person instructs another to do for him gratuitously, and is technically what an agent does for another. Hence a message sent by messengers.

quoniam—postularet: "seeing that, though treated with such kindness by himself and the Roman people, since in his (Caesar's) consulship he had received the title of king and friend at the hands of the Senate, he was showing such gratitude to him and the Roman people that when invited to come to a conference he objected, and did not consider himself under obligation to discuss and investigate a matter of common interest, these are the demands which he made."—in suo consulatu: Caesar was consul 59 B.C.—rex—amicus: though the Romans professed friendship for Ariovistus after the battle of Magesobria, fearing possibly an alliance between him and the Helvetii, they still were constantly professing regard for the Aedui and championed their cause against Ariovistus.—gratiam referre: distinguish gratiam habere, "to feel thankful"; gratiam referre, "to return a kindness"; gratiam agere, "to express thanks in words"; gratiam facere, "to do a favor."

ne—transducere: "that he would not any more lead any body of men across the Rhine into Gaul."—quam=aliquam: note that quam = aliquis after si, nisi, num, ne, quo, quanto: H. 455, I.; A. & G. 105, d.

voluntate ejus: "with his consent": ejus refers to Ariovistus. Had sua voluntate been used, sua would have referred to Caesar.

injuria: "wrongfully." For the subjunctives transducere, reddere, permittere, lassere, inferre: H. 523, III.; A. & G. 339. What would the mood be in direct narration?

si—futurum: expressed in direct narration this would be si id iua faceris, mihi populoque Romano petu grata atque amicitia tecum erit. Give rules for change of pronouns when changing from indirect to direct narrative.
NOTES.

si—imperaret — non neglectum (esse) : in direct narrative this would be si non imperabo — non negligent.

censisset: censere, placere, were technical words applied to resolutions of the Senate.

Marco Messala Marco Pisonem consulibus: B.C. 61.

uti defendere: "that, whoever held Gaul as a province, should defend the Aedui and the other allies of the Roman people as far as he was able to do so in the interest of the state."—uti = ut — quod = quantum.


facere = defendere: facere, like do in English and piotko in Greek, is often used as a substitute for other verbs.

see: repeated because of the long clause, quod—defenderet, intervening between the subject and infinitive.

Aeduarum injurias: "wrongs done to the Aedui": objective genitive. What would the subjective genitive be in English?

CHAPTER XXXVI.

jus—imperaret: "the rule of war was that those who gained a victory should rule those whom they had conquered just as they wished." The tense of respondit affects that of vicissent. If respondit were present what would vicissent be?—vellent: subjunctive for what two reasons?

item—consuisset: "(and) that the Roman people, in particular, had been accustomed to rule the conquered, not according to the dictate of another, but according to their (the Roman people's) own wish."—victis: H. 441; A. & G. 188.

si—imperi: "if he did not give any order to the Roman people as to how they should exercise their rights, he ought not to be hampered by the Roman people in exercising his rights."—praebessem: note the force of the imperfect, implying from time to time.—suo—suo: the first refers to the Roman people, the second to Ariovistus.

Aeduarum—factos: "(that) the Aedui had been made to pay the war tax by him, since they had tried their fortunes in war, had met him in battle and been beaten."—armis congressi, scil. secum.—stipendiarios: subject to pay the stipendium, a fixed sum (estigal cernum), an amount payable whether there was a crop or not.

magnam—facere: note the emphatic position of magnam: H. 561, I.; A. & G.; 344, i.—qui, causae = quippe qui: "since he": H. 517; A. & G. 320, e.—Note that suo refers to Caesar: sibi to Ariovistus: H. 449; A. & G. 196.—deteriora: "less profitable": inferior, "worse," "inferior to" something good, a descending, just as melior is an ascending comparative of bonus: (e) for worse than something bad (malus).—injuria: "without a just cause": H. 419, III. N. 2; A. & G. 248, R.

si—penderent: "if they continued to adhere to the terms which they had agreed upon and if they continued to pay yearly the tax."—convenisset: not
from *convenio*, but from the impersonal *convenit.*—Distinguish *pendo* and *pendo* in meaning. The use of *pendo* points to the custom of money being paid originally by weight in uncoin'd metal: cp. Greek *tâlantron*: English, pound.

*longe*—absolutum: "that the title of brothers of the Roman people would be of little avail to them," literally, "would be a long way off for them." Some have here *his*; others *his*, which is perhaps the better reading, as including all those mentioned before. In *his* or *his* we have a dative: cp. Tibullus, 1, 5, 2: *at mihi nunc longe gloria abest*; Vergil's Aen. 12, 52: *longe illi dea mater erit.

*quod*—contendisse: "as far as Caesar's threat was concerned that he would not overlook the wrongs done to the Aedui (he, i.e. Ariovistus, would simply say) that no one had ever fought with him without bringing destruction upon himself."—*quod*: H. 516, II., 2, N.; A. & G. 333, a.—*sibi* refers to Ariovistus; *se*, to Caesar. So again we have confusion in *secum* referring to Ariovistus; *suum* to the person implied in *neminem*.

*quum*—possessum: "let him come on whenever he wished; he would find out what the Germans, hitherto invincible, well drilled in the use of arms, could do in valourous deeds, who, for the last fourteen years, had never been under a roof." What mood would *congresseret* be in direct narrative?—*intellecturum* scil. *dixit Caesarem esse.*—*inter annum quatuordecim* in what other way may this be expressed? In expressions of time *inter* expresses a *continuous* space, "all through the space of fourteen years," while *intra* limits the space, i.e. fixes a beginning and an end. An excellent exercise for the student will be to translate this chapter into direct narrative; see H. 522-531; A. & G. 336-342.

CHAPTER XXXVII.

*haec codem tempore*—et; the two events are expressed co-ordinately, literally, "this message at the same time was reported to Caesar and envoys from the Aedui and Treviri came." In English, we should make the former statement subordinate and say, "while this message was being reported to Caesar, envoys, &c."


*popularentur*; H. 516, II.; A. & G. 341, d.

*ne*—*datis*: "not even by the giving of hostages!" abl. abs.

*Treviri*, scil. *veniebant questum.*

*ne*—*minus facile resisti*: scil. *illi*: "(fearing) that if the new force of the Suevi should be added to the old forces of Ariovistus they would be irresistible." Before *ne* scil. *metuens.*—*resisti*: impersonal; scil. *illis*: "resistance could be made less easily!" H. 301, 1; A. & G. 146, c. There is here a *litotes*.

*magnis itineribus*: See note on B. I., chapter x.
CHAPTER XXXVIII.

tridui scil, spatii—trium dierum; H. 396, V. N. I; A. & G. 215, b.
triduum is a shortened form of tridivium: cp. bidivium—bidivium.

id—existimabat: “Caesar thought that he should take especial
care that this thing should not happen.” What is the antecedent of id? Com-
pare magno opere. Explain the case of sibi. Distinguish caveo te, caveo
tibi: H. 385, II., I; A. & G. 227, c.

idque—facultatem: “and this (town) was so strong naturally by the
character of the ground it occupied that it afforded an excellent means
for protracting the war.” The imperfect muniebatur denotes a permanent
ac mari claudiebatur.

Aldusadubis: properly the “river of the black rocks.” The Dubis at
Vesontio (the Doubs at Besançon) forms a sort of peninsula which is
occupied by a town, now called La Ville. It is said that many Roman
remains are at Besançon.

amplus pedum sexcentorum: for the descriptivgenitive: H. 396, V.;
A. & G. 215, b. Note that amplius, minus, majus have no influence on the
construction: H. 417, I, Note 2; A. & G. 247, c.: cp. the use of
Thasos, τῆδειν in Greek: ἀπελευθερών σταδίων ὥρα. As the actual
distance is 1,500 Roman feet, D’Anville proposes to read MD. instead of
DC. in MSS.

intermittiis: “breaks off”; “is interrupted.”

mons—altitudine: “a hill of great height fills up the space between”:
for the ablative of description: H. 419, II.; A. & G. 251.

radice: accusative after contingent.—hunc, scil, montem—ararem: H.
373; 373, I; A. & G. 239, a. Some remains of the wall and ancient
amphitheatre are still to be seen at Besançon.

CHAPTER XXXIX.

dum—moratur, scil, Caesar: H. 467, III., 4; A. & G. 276, e.
ex—nostrorum, scil. militum; “from enquiries made by our men”;
subjective genitive.

qui—praedebat: explain the ablatives in this clause: H. 419, II.; A.
& G. 251. What difference in meaning between the genitive and ablative
of characteristic? H. 419, III., 2; A. & G. 257, a. The Germans are
often spoken of by the Roman historians as men of large frame.

aciet oculorum: “their keen glance.” trace the different meanings of
aces to the signification of the root of the word.

timor: “panic.” a cowardly fear of present, as metus is a “well
grounded fear” of impending evil.

mentes animoseque: “their minds and spirits.”

tribunis militum: see Introduction, p. xv.—praefectis: these were not
the praefecti equitum, but the praefecti sociorum, who held the same
position among the auxiliary troops as the tribuni militum did among
the regular Roman soldiers. These probably were gentlemanly idlers or rela-
tives of Caesars creditors, or others whose favour he desired to court.
NOTES.

quorum—scelet: “of these, one alleging one cause, another another, which, they said, made it indispensable for them to depart, asked that it might be left them to quit their posts with his consent.” For the construction of alius alia causa illata: H. 459, I., 563; A. & G. 203, c., 344, g.—
discere: for mood: see H. 528, I.; A. & G. 341, d. With discedere, s.ae ordinibus.

nomnus: distinguish nonnulli, nulli non; nonmunquam, nunquam non; nonnmusquam, nusquam non.

vulsum fingere: “to put on a cheerful look,” i.e., to control their expression of fear. Note the use of imperfects throughout this passage. Explain fully their force.


cum join this with commune: “they kept mourning over the danger to which they as well as their friends were exposed.” Distinguish miseror, “to express pity” in words and governing the accusative: misereor, “to feel pity,” governing the ger.itive.

vulgo-obsignabantur: “all among the men throughout the whole camp willed were being sealed.”—vulgo does not refer to place like passim. Why is totis castris used without a preposition? H. 425, II., 2; A. & G. 258, i. testamenta: the will of a soldier just about to engage was said to be made in procinctu, when in camp, while he was girding himself or preparing for battle. In the presence of his fellow soldiers he named his heir (nuncupavit). The absignatio was the sealing of the will with the seal of witnesses. The description of Caesar has in it a touch of the ludicrous.

qui—dicebant: “those men of the latter class who wished themselves to be regarded as less timid (than the rest of the army) declared that they did not dread the enemy, but feared the narrowness of the roads and the extent of the forests which lay between them and Ariovistus, or else that the corn could not be supplied with sufficient readiness.”—qui i.e. praefecti milium et decuriones.—his=gui magnum in castris usum habeabant.—

rem frumentarium: this is antitopsis, a figure by which the subject of the subordinate clause is the object of the principal clause: cp. nosti Marcellum quam tardus sit=nosti quam tardus Marcellus sit. Cic.: so in English: “I know thee who thou art.” Luke 4, 34; “Conceal me what I am!” Shaks. Twelfth Night, i, 2; “Didst thou not mark the King, what words he spake;” Shaks. Rich. II., 5, 4.

ferri=inferr: explain the phrases, signa inferre, convertere, effere, referre, conferre, a signis discedere, signis collatiss configgere, signis infestis ire aut incedere.—jussisset: “he should give the order;” H. 525, 2; A. & G. 336.

dicto audientes: “obey his order;” H. 391, 1; A. & G. 234; a: cp. the Scriptural “Ye will not hearken unto me.”

CHAPTER XL.

omniaque—centurionibus: “and admitting the centurions of all ranks to the council.” Usually the council of war was composed of the imperator, leudi, tribuni militum and the six centurions of the first cohort of each legion. There was a regular system of promotion in each legion. As the
coHORTS ranked from one to ten, so the centurions had ranked from one to sixty. Caesar had six legions, so there would be at least 360 centurions, thirty-six tribunes, and these with the legati would swell the number to upwards of 400.

quod—putarent: "because they thought they had a right to enquire or consider either in what direction, or with what design they were being led."

—ducentur: subjunctive of dependent question; H. 529; A. & G. 334.

putarent: H. 516, II.; A. & G. 341, d.

our—julicaret: "why would anyone suppose that this one would so rashly fail in his loyalty." Distinguish quisquain, ulius; quivis, quilibet: H. 457, 458; A. & G. 202, c.

sibi—repudiaturum: "he (Caesar) at least was persuaded that after his (Caesar's) demands were known and the fairness of his terms were understood, he (Aravistus) would disregard neither his kindness nor that of the Roman people." —Sibi: H. 384, II., 5; A. & G. 230. Distinguish the use of sui, is, ill in oblique narrative.

quod—desperarent: "but if he, urged on by rage and frenzy, did attack them, what in the world were they afraid of, or why should they totally distrust their own valor or the accuracy of his arrangements?" furor, mental irritation, rage; amentia, unreasonableness; dementia, downright madness.

factum—videbatur: "a trial had been made of that enemy in the memory of our fathers, when by the defeat of the Cimbri and Teutones it was the opinion that the army gained no less renown than the general himself."

We have here the original meaning of periculum: cp. πείρα. The Teutones were defeated in the fourth consalship of Marius, 102 B.C. at Aquae Sextiae (now Aix) and the Cimbri, in the following year, at Vercellae (now Vercelli). He probably attributes the defeat as much to the bravery of the soldiers as to the skill of the commander to gain over the tribunes. —videbatur: in oblique narrative the only moods used are the infinitive and the subjunctive. In direct narrative the indicative would be used here, and is retained even in the indirect to express a fact which could not be brought out by the subjunctive.

factum etiam nuper: anaphora. —servili tumultu: "at the time of the insurrection among the slaves." This was the gladiatorial war, in which Spartacus resisted the Romans for three years, 73-71 B.C. As many of these gladiators and slaves were Germans, Caesar speaks of the Germans experiencing the power of the Roman arms. —tumultus is applied to an uprising in Gaul or Italy.

quos—subievent: "and though they were yet slaves, the skill and training which they had received from us considerably aided them."—quos: the antecedent is implied in servili = servorum: H. 445, b; A. & G. 199, b. Here quos tamen et quamvis cos: concessive clause. —aliquid. acc. specification: H. 378; A. & G. 240, c.

ex quo—constantia: "from this it might be inferred what an advantage there is in steadfast courage."—possit: potential subjunctive. —haberent: dependent question; H. 529; A. & G. 334.—boni: part. gen.: H. 397, 3; A. & G. 216, a.

superassent: "they would conquer." —inermes must not be taken
NOTES.

too literally. The gladiators were not absolutely without arms, though they were poorly equipped.

*Helvetii—qui—potuerint:* join these closely together; "the Helvetii, who were by no means a match for the soldiers of our army." Note that *quibusceum* depends on *congressi* while *superarint* is left without an object, but the accusative *eos* is easily supplied.

*si quos—vicisse:* "if the defeat (of the Gauls by the Germans) and the rout of the Gauls alarmed any, these would be able to find out, if they made enquiry, that Ariovistus, after the Gauls had been worn out by the length of the war, since for many months he had confined himself to his camp and the marshes, and had given them no chance of coming to an engagement with him, had suddenly attacked them already giving up all hope of battle and scattered, and had conquered them rather by his stratagem and cunning than by his valour."—*quos:* when is *quis* used for *aliquis?* H. 455, 1; A. & G. 105, d.—*castris—patutilibus:* ablative of place—*subito adorum:* in the battle of Magetobilia.

*qui—posse:* "not even he (Ariovistus) himself expected that our enemies could be entrapped by the same stratagem for the exercise of which an opportunity had been given among a barbarous and rude people."—

*rationem:* H. 445, 9; A. & G. 200, b. Ariovistus, as Caesar says, would undoubtedly know that he could not employ the same tactics against the Romans as he had against the Gauls.

*qui—viderentur:* "those who ascribed their fear to a pretended anxiety about the supply of corn and the narrowness of the road acted arrogantly, since they appeared to him either to distrust him, or to dictate to him his duties as commander"

*haec—cura:* i.e., he had not neglected to supply corn.

*quod—perspectum:* "as to the report that the soldiers would not obey his command nor advance to meet the foe, by this he was not at all influenced; for he knew that either in consequence of some mismanagement fortune had failed those commanders whose words of command an army would not obey, or else, that the charge of peculation had been clearly brought home to them by some flagrant instance."—*quod:* H. 516, II. 2, N.; A. & G. 333, a.—*laturi:* H. 536, 2; A. & G. 272, b.—*dicantur,* subj. *milites:* H. 534. I., N. 1, (2); A. & G. 330, l.—*nilhile*—*ne kilum,* "not a mark"; *ora*—*ne fulum:* "not a thread," i.e., "not at all": H. 378. 2; A. & G. 240, a: cp. the Greek use of *óðév* for *óu*.

*itaque—repræsentaturum:* "therefore he would do at once what he had intended to put off to a more distant day." *Repræsentare* is a legal term to ante-date: cp. *solutionem repræsentare,* "to pay a debt before it is due."

*decima legiones:* the legions were called first, second, etc., according to the order in which they were raised.

*praetoriam cohortem:* this body guard, *cohors praetoria,* originally was instituted by Scipio Africanus and consisted of 1,000. They were generally soldiers who had served with distinction, and they received special privileges in the way of extra pay and exemption from certain duties. Note that the commander was called *praetor,* i.e., *praetor—qui praet exercitui:* "the one who leads the army."
CHAPTER XLII.

innata est, scil. mentibus omnium.

ei gratias egit: "returned thanks to him:" distinguish gratias agere, gratias habere, gratias reddere: see note on gratiam referre, chapter xxxv.

quod—fecisset: "because he had formed a very high opinion of it:" for the subjunctive: H. 516, II. A. & G. 341, d.

reliquae—satisfacere: "the other legions as well as the tribunes of the soldiers and the centurions of the highest ranks agreed to make ample apology to Caesar."—primorum ordinum centuriones were the centurions of the first cohort of each of the other five legions.

se—existimavisse: scil. dixerunt: "they said that they never had any hesitation or fear, nor did they think that they, but their general should decide in regard to the general administration of the war."—summa is often used with a genitive: cp. summa rerum.—sumum and imperatoris are predicates after esse.

itineris—exquisito=repellerit iter esse tale exquisitum: "he found out that the journey after being reconnoitred was of such a character."—ex alii, scil. Gallis, or ex aliis ex ceteris omnibus, i.e., "more confidence in him than in all the others.

millium, scil. passum: note quinquaginta millium is a descriptive genitive: H. 396, V. A. & G. 215, 6. Could it be the ablative? H. 417, (1), N. 2; A. & G. 247, c. It is generally supposed that the circuitous road added fifty miles to the regular route. This distance is thought to be too much, hence there may be an error in the numbers. The Greek paraphrast gives 1250 stadia, or about 156 Roman miles, a still greater distance.

loca aperta: "through an open country:" literally, "in an open country:" local abl. i.e., free from the obstructions of woods and mountains. Caesar was marching N. E. from Vesontio.

duceret = ducere posset: "he was able to lead.

septimo—est: "after an unbroken march, on the seventh day he was informed by spies." The ablative absolute would be the more usual construction.

CHAPTER XLII.

quod—accessisset: "as to his (Caesar's) former demand regarding a conference, this might now take place so far as he (Ariovistus) was concerned, since he (Caesar) had come nearer (to him i.e., Ariovistus)." Note the force of per, in per se licet. Translate, so far as I am concerned, you may go.

arbitrabatur, scil. Caesar.

quum—polliceretur: "since he (now) offered, without being requested, what he formerly refused, to grant when he (Caesar) asked him."—petenti, scil. Caesar.—denu passet: subjunctive of oblique narration: H. 524; A. & G. 336.—polliceri: properly "to bid at a sale," hence "to make a proposal."
NOTES.

*magnumque—desisteret*: “and he (Caesar) began to entertain high hopes that, for his (Caesar’s) so great kindnesses and those of the Roman people to him (Ariovistus), the result would be that he (Ariovistus) would desist from his stubbornness.”—*in spem veniebat*/sperebat*: and hence the future inf. *fore.—desisteret*: H. 535, I., 3; A. & G. 330, 3.—*pertinacia*: H. 414; A. & G. 243.

colloquio: dative of purpose.

*ultimo citroque*: “hither and thither,” “to and fro,” lit., “to the further side and to this side,” with reference to the position of Caesar who is the narrator: cp. French *par ci par là, ça et là*. We have also the various forms of the expression, *ultimo ac citro, ultimo et citro, ultimo citro*.

*vereri, scil. dixit*: explain the use of *ne*, and *ut* after verbs of fearing: H. 498, III.; A. & G. 331, f.


*interposita—causa*.: “by allowing any excuse to intervene.” For the explanation of the abl. abs.: H. 431; A. & G. 255.

*Gallorum*: refers to the Gallic cavalry in the army of Caesar. These were taken mostly from the Aedui and their allies. Caesar did not trust much to their loyalty.

*omnibus—detractis*: “after all the horses had been taken away from the Gallic cavalry.”—Notice *equis detractis* is ablative absolute; *Gallis equibus*, dative: H. 385, II., 2; A. & G. 239.

*eo—in eos, scil. equo*.

*legionarios milites*: the regular troops of the legion, as distinguished from the *velites*, “the light-armed,” who acted merely as skirmishers.

*imponere*: when do verbs of *determining* and *deciding* take the infinitive, and when, *ut* or *ne* with the subjunctive? see H. 498, I. note

*ut—haberet*: “that he might have guards as devoted as possible if there was any need of their active services.”—*quid* is nominative: for the construction see H. 414, IV., note 3; A. & G. 243, e, R.

*non irrindicule*: “a humorous remark”: literally, “a remark without some humour.”

*quidam*: distinguish in meaning: *aliquis, quis, quispiam, quidam*: H. 455; 456; A. & G. 202, a, b.

*in—loco—habere*: “to regard as”: cp. Gk. expression: *εν άρδημω πνευ-ματα*.

*ad equum rescribere*: “he enrolled them among the cavalry.” Soldiers when enlisted had their names written (*scribere*) in tablets: *rescribere* means to make an entry which shall have the effect of changing what is written or done: here to enter the soldier in the roll of the knights in place of their present entry as foot soldiers.
NOTES.

CHAPTER XLIII.


ut erat dictum: "as had been agreed upon."

equis: ablative of means: "on horseback."—passibus: see above on spatio.

se: plural.—denos: note the force of the distributive: H. 174, 2; A. & G. 95, a-d. Translate: two huts, two camps; he gave the soldiers two spears, he gave the soldiers two spears apiece; he gave the man a pair of goblets, he gave the man two goblets.

ventum est: impersonal: "they had come thither." H. 301, I; A. & G. 146, c.

quad—esset: H. 528, 1; A. & G. 341, d. What the usual munera were we learn from Livy, 30, 15: a golden crown, a golden bowl, a curule chair, an ivory sceptre, an embroidered gown, a tunic ornamented with figures of palm branches.

quam rem: "this honour."

paucis contigisse: "had been the good luck of few:" distinguish in meaning, contigit, accidit, event.

et—officiis: "and (only) in return for distinguished services on the part of individuals."

illum—secutum, scil. docebat: "he (Caesar) informed him (Ariovistus) though he (Ariovistus) had no right to obtain them, and had no just ground for demanding them, by the kindness and liberality of himself (Caesar) and of the Senate, he (Ariovistus) had received those honours." The last clause would naturally imply that Ariovistus had sought for the honours obtained—probably an unjust insinuation on the part of Caesar.

docebat—intercederent: "he then proceeded to inform him how old and well grounded were the reasons for the alliance that existed between them and the Aedui."—Ipsis = Romaniis: H. 386; A. & G. 228.—intercederent for subjunctive of dependent question: H. 529; A. & G. 334. The Aedui were the first of the Gallic tribes that embraced the friendship of the Romans: cp. Tacit. Ann. 11, 25: Primi Aedui senatores in urbe jus adepti sunt. Datum id foederi antiquo, et quia soli Gallorum fraternitas nomen cum Populo Romano usurpant.

honorisca: compare this adjective: H. 164; A. & G. 89, c.

in eos—essent: "had been passed in their behalf": for subjunctive, see reference under intercederent.

ut—tenuisse: "how during all time (past time) the Aedui had held the sovereignty of Gaul."—ut = quomodo, hence the subjunctive tenuissent: H. 529; A. & G. 334. Explain the case of tempore: H. 429; A. & G. 256, b.


ut—esse: "that instead of wishing their allies and friends to lose anything of their standing, they (the Roman people) wished them to be still further increased in influence, dignity, and honor."—ut—velit: for the noun clause introduced by ut: H. 501, I, 2; A. & G. 331.—sui nihil: H. 441, 397, I; A. & G. 216, a.; 188.
quod—posset: "who could bear to have that, indeed, which they brought with them when they obtained the friendship of the Romans, taken away from them?" The order of the words is: quia posset pati id quod—attuisissent. Evi, for the dative: H. 385, II., 2; A. & G. 229. What mood would posset be in direct narrative? H. 436, II.; 523, II., 1, N.; A. & G. 268, 338, R.

postulavit—dederat: "he then made the same demands which he had instructed the ambassadors to make": for mandatis, see note Chapter XXXV.

inferret—redderet—pateretur: for the subjunctives, see H. 523, III.; A. & G. 339.

domum: H. 380, II., 2; A. & G. 258, b. What other words are construed like the names of towns?

at—pateretur: "at any rate he should not suffer any hereafter to cross the Rhine."—quos: H. 455, 1; A. & G. 105, d.

CHAPTER XLIV.

praedicavit: distinguish in meaning praedico, praedico.

transisse, scil., dixit: the direct form of this speech is in part given in H. 531.

rogatum—arcessitum: "but because he had been requested and sent for by the Gauls," i.e., by the Arverni and Sequani to aid them against the Aedui; see Chapter XXXI.: II. 549, I.; A. & G. 292.

sine—praemissis: a hemilitoies = sine spe magnorum praemiorum. H. 636, III., 2; A. & G. p. 298: or, as some translate: "not without high hopes and inducements."

obsides, like sedes governed by habere.

stipendium—consuerint: "(he said) that he exacted by the right of war tribute which the conquerors were wont to impose on the conquered."

esse: note the reflexive pronoun all through this passage referring to Ariovistus.

omnes civitates: a piece of boastful exaggeration, as only the Aedui and their allies had fought against Ariovistus.

ad se oppugnandum venisse: in what different ways may this be expressed?

ac contra: "and further." In Cicero ac was not used before a vowel, a guttural (c, g, q), or h. In these cases atque was used. Caesar, if the best MSS. are to be trusted, never uses ac before a vowel, or q, once before g, and thrice in this passage and in B. G. 3, 75, 78, before c.

decertare: "to fight it out to the death": for the force of de: cp. depugnare, deprocellor: so kara in Greek katapoloévo.

pepperentur: "had paid and are now paying": notice the force of perfect which here includes the present. Distinguish pendere, pendère; albere, albère; sèdere, sèdere; dicère, dicère.

suus: "their own," i.e., the Gauls. There is a very different story told in Chapters XXXI., XXXVII.

idque—petisse: "and that he aimed at the whole thing with this object": note the neuter id referring to the thought of the preceding clause = ut amicus esset, not to amicitiam alone.

per: explain the use of per with acc. of agent: H. 415, I. N. I.; A. & G. 246, b.

quod transducat: "in regard to his bringing over:" H. 516, II., 2, N.; A. & G. 333, a.

ejus—defenderit: "it was a proof of this statement that he had not come without being asked, and that he had not carried on an aggressive, but a defensive war."—testimonio: for the dative: H. 399, II., Note 2; A. & G. 233. Note that defendere in its primitive meaning is equivalent to propulsare "to ward off;" cp. Caesar, De Bello Civile, i, 7: concludant legiones, xiii., quae aderant, militibus...esse paratos esse imperatoris sui tribunorumque plebis injuriis defendere.

populum Romanum: populus Romanus [venisset] would have been more usual: H. 524, 1, 2; A. & G. 336, a, R.

quid—venire: "what did he (Caesar) mean that he should come into his (Ariovistus') possessions?" There is a confusion of pronouns here since sibi refers to Caesar; suos to Ariovistus. Often sibi, tibi are used with velle to mark more emphatically the subject of the verb: ethical dative: H. 389; A. & G. 236.—cur—quare.

hane—illam: i.e. this part of Gaul towards the Rhine, where they were standing; that part over there, away to the south.

ut—interpellaremus: "as it would not be right to give way to him, if he were making an attack against our territories, so likewise were we acting unjustly, in case that we molest him in the enjoyment of his rights." Supply esse after se. The regular construction after interpellam is quin, quominus, ne, or the infinitive as here.

quod—esse: "as to his (Caesar's) harping on the fact that the Aedui had been called brothers by a decree of the Senate, (i.e., Ariovistus, would inform him) that he was not so illiterate or so unskilled in political matters as not to know either that in the late war against the Allobroges the Aedui had brought aid to the Romans, or they (the Aedui), in these recent feuds which the Aedui had carried on with him and with the Sequani, had enjoyed the aid of the Roman people."—quod—diceret: H. 524, I.; A. & G. 336.—bello; B.C. 62: it followed immediately after the revelation of Catiline's conspiracy. See Introduction pp. xii., xiii.

debere—habere: "that he had a right to suspect that Caesar, having pretended friendship (for the Aedui), in that he now keeps an army in Gaul, keeps it there for the purpose of crushing him (Ariovistus)." Explain fully the number of sui opprimendi: H. 542, I., Note 1; A. & G. 298, a.

qui—et ille: the connective relative.

nobilis—gratus: what adjectives govern the dative? This is probably no idle boast on the part of Ariovistus. Caesar had many violent political enemies in Rome. Ariovistus was evidently well acquainted with the party politics at the Capital.
compertum habuisse: nearly the same as compierisse: H. 388, I. N.; A. & G. 292, c. I.

quorum—posset: "all of whose favour and friendship he (Ariovistus) could purchase by his (Caesar’s) death."—morte abl. of means: H. 420; A. & G. 248.

sine—consecturum: "he could carry out without any trouble and danger to him," i.e., Caesar. Explain the genitive ejus: H. 398, II; A. & G. 214.

CHAPTER XLV.


neque se judicare: "nor could he admit." For the genitive Ariovisti: H. 402; A. & G. 214, c.

Arvernos et Rutenos: this war occurred 121 B.C.: see Proper Names under Q. Fabius Maximus.

redegisset, scil. eos from preceding quibus: "whom the Roman people had pardoned, and had neither reduced to the form of a province nor imposed taxes on them." The word provincia had not the meaning "a conquered territory," but "an administration:" it is a corruption of providentia, being often corrupted into provintia in MSS.: cp. urbane provincia: "the administration of a city.

antiquissimum quodque tempus: literally, "each earliest period" of possession: i.e., priority of time: cp. Cicero: antiquissimae suae (epistola) respondebo: "I shall answer each of your former letters" in the order in which I have received them: H. 438, I.; A. & G. 93, c.

quam—voluiisset, scil. senatus: "since it (the senate) wishes that it, after being conquered in war, should enjoy its own laws."—quam—quippe eam, i.e., Galliam—suis: as referring to the subject of uti.

CHAPTER XLVI.

dum—geruntur: dum often takes the present indic. when the verb in the principal clause is in a marked past tense: H. 467, 4; A. & G. 276, e.

propius tumulum: prope, propius, proxime may take (1) accusative; (2) dative; (3) joined with ad, the accusative: H. 437, I.; A. & G. 234, e.

quod—omnino: "any (weapon) at all.

legionis: "to his legion:" for the subjective genitive: H. 396, III.; A. & G. 217.

commitendum: construe ita esse commitendum: "he did not think that he should act in such a way that any occasion ought to be given for the statement, that in case the enemy were repulsed, they had been ensnared, while the conference was being held, at the time when a pledge had
be given."—per fide: this is probably the meaning of per here: cp. per inducas. "at the time of a truce." Others take the meaning to be: contra fide, "in violation of his pledge," a force that per has in per fidus, perjurus, perjuro. The Greek paraphrase translates per fide by ὑπὸ λόγου.

in vulgus militum: for partitive genitive: H. 397; A. & G. 216. Decline vulgus. What other nouns of second declension are neuter?

qua—diremisset: "with what arrogance in the conference Ariovistus had forbidden the Romans the whole of Gaul, and (how) his (Ariovistus's) cavalry had made an attack against our men and how this circumstance had broken off the negotiations."—qua arrogantia usus: what verbs govern the ablative? H. 421 I.; A. & G. 249.—Gallia Romanis interdixisset: interdico may take (1) abl. of thing, dat. of person, as here; or, (2) acc. of thing, dat. of person. For Gallia, H. 414; A. & G. 243: Romanis; H. 386; A. & G. 228.—interdixisset: dep. question: H. 529, I.; A. & G. 334. So fercissent is governed ut=quo modo, understood as diremisset is governed by ut expressed.

CHAPTER XLVII.


qua—coeptae—essent: explain fully the passive voice. Translate: he begins to discuss these things: these things begin to be discussed.

uti constituerat, scil. egi cum Caesar: H. 498, I.; A. & G. 331, b.

suis—Caesaris.—se=Ariovistum.

causa.—est: "the reason did not seem sufficient."

eo magis: "and the more so for the following reasons." Compare magis.

pridie ejus diei: explain fully this phrase: see note on postridie, B. I. Chapter xxiii.


legatum—existimabat: "as to his (Caesar's) sending a commissioner from his own (Caesar's) men, and exposing him to these barbarians, this he thought would be a very dangerous course."

commodissimum visum est join this with ad eum mittere.


C. Valerium Proculum: It was usual for foreigners who received the right of citizenship (ius civitatis) to prefix the praenomen and nomen of their patron (patronus). Thus Caburus took the name of C. Valerius Caburus from C. Valerius Flaccus, who was governor of Gaul 83 B.C. These names descended to the children, as in this case to the son, C. Valerius Proculus.

qua—utebatur: "which Ariovistus now fluently spoke from his long practice." Multa refers to lingua, but multum would do as well.

et—esset: "and because in his case there was no temptation for the Germans to do wrong." For esset: H. 516, II.; A. & G. 341, d, R. M. Mettium, scil. commodissimum visum est ad eum mittere.

apud se: "at his quarters"
NOTES.


an: explain the omission of utrum: H. 353, 2, N. 4; A. & G. 211, b.

CHAPTER XLVIII.

millibus: the ablative expresses here degree of difference. The first camp of Ariovistus is supposed to have been located at the foot of the Vosges between the modern Soultz and Teldeich at the place where the present modern roads cross. His second camp was stationed directly south of this to a hill near Reiningen. Between these two positions was the plain occupied by the two camps of Caesar, a little to the east of Aspach.

postridie ejus diei: H. 398, 5; A. & G. 214, b. See note on postridie, B. I., Chapter XXIII.

terra fecit: so also castra locare, castra ponere, "to pitch a camp."

frumento: abl. of separation: H. 414, A. & G. 243. The plan of Ariovistus was to cut off Caesar's supplies so as to force him to fight.

qui—supportaretur: subjunctive by attraction: H. 529, II., 529, II., N. 1, 1; A. & G. 342.

ut—deesset: "so that, had Ariovistus wished to engage in battle, he might not lack an opportunity."

his omnibus diebus: "on every single one of these days:" H. 379, I. A. & G. 256, b.

castris: "within his camp:" H. 425, II., 1, 1; A. & G 258, f.

numero: H. 424; A & G. 253.

quos—delegaverant: "whom they had selected from the whole force each (horseman selecting) one (infantry soldier) for the sake of his own protection."

singulis: for the distributive: H. 174, 2, 1); 172, 3; A. & G. 95, 95, a.

With this statement cp. Tacit. Germ. c. 6.

versabatur: "they were associated." Note that his, hos, hi refer to the foot soldiers.

hi—concurrebant: "these, if any difficulty more serious (than usual) arose, used to rush to their aid." Note the force of the comparative: H. 444; A. & G. 93, a.

si—qui = si quis: when is quis used for aliquis? see B. I., Chap. xxxv.


si—adsequerent: "and if they had to advance to any place farther than usual or retreat with greater speed than ordinary, such was their agility from constant practice that supporting themselves by the manes of their horses they could keep up with the full gallop."—quo = et eo.—sublevati: reflexive force of perfect participle: H. 495; A. & G. 111, N. I.
NOTES.

CHAPTER XLIX.

eum = Ariovistum: so also se as referring to the subject of tenere.


ultra - locum: Caesar’s first camp was on the plain between the two positions taken by Ariovistus. His second camp was a short distance west of that occupied by the German.

acie - instructa: “after drawing up his line in triple order.” What the triplex acies was, see Introduction, page xiv.

castra munire: the Romans invariably fortified the camp with a rampart (valtum), on the outside of which stakes or palisades (valli) were firmly driven in, and with a ditch (fossa). They did so even if they rested for a single night. Hence castra munire has nearly the same meaning as castra locare, castra ponere.

hominum - expedita = sedecim millia hominum expeditorum.


nihil secius: “none the less”: H. 417, 2; A. & G. 250. - secius: also sequitus, derived from sequor: originally meaning “after,” hence “less.”

castra majora: the camp first pitched; the second was castra minora.

CHAPTER L.


potestatem fecit: “gave an opportunity.”

eos = Germanos. - prodire, scil. ad pugnam.

qua = ut ea: as in the previous chapter qua copiae.

proelio non decertaret: “did not decide the question in a general engagement.” - proelio: abl. of means. Note force of de in decertare: cp. deproelio, depugnare; see notes on decertare, B. I., Chapter XLIV. - see Chapter XLIX.

sortibus et vaticinationibus: “from lots and responses.” According to Tacitus (Germ. 10), the Germans lopped off a twig (virga) from a fruit-bearing tree and cut it up into small pieces (surculi). These were distinguished by certain marks and thrown on a white cloth. The person drawing the lot looked upward, uttered a prayer, and took each bit of wood three times and found a meaning according to the mark previously impressed. The vaticinatio was the prophetic response. According to Tacitus (Germ. 8), the Germans believed women to have something of a divine nature and an insight into futurity. Plutarch (Caesar 19), says: “The spirit of the Germans was still more blunted by the predictions of their wise women, who, observing the eddies in the rivers and drawing signs from the whirling and noise of the waters, foreboded the future and declared that the army ought not to fight before it was new moon.”

ex usu esset: “it was expedient.” For subjunctive: H. 353, N. 3; A. & G. 211. What would utrum - necne be in a direct question?

fas: “the will of heaven.”
ANTE NOVAM LUNAM: according to Tacitus (Germ. 11) the new and the full moon were lucky days. The Spartans similarly believed it unlucky to engage in battle at the waning of the moon, and so refused to aid the Athenians at Marathon (Herod. 6, 106).

CHAPTER LI.

Postridio ejus diei: see note B. I., Chapter XXIII.

Praedio — castris: the first is the dat. for which, the second the dat. to which: H. 390, II.; A. & G. 233.

Alaros: the allied troops (auxilia) formed the wings (alae) of the legion, and hence they were called alarii.

Quo — eteretur: "that he might use the auxiliaries for show, since he was weaker in the number of common soldiers, considering the forces of the enemy." — alaros: what verbs govern the ablative?

Castris: H. 425, II., 1. 1); A. & G. 258, f.

Generatim: "by tribes:" what is the force of the ending?

Paribus intervallis: H. 419, III.; A. & G. 248, R.

Rhedis: the rheda was a four-wheeled wagon with a strong leathern covering. In these the families of the Germans were carried, while the carri seem to have conveyed their baggage and provisions. For carri, see note on carri: B. I., Chapter II.

Eo: "on these:" in eas, i.e. in rhedas

Passis manibus: "with outstretched hands:" from pando. Another reading is passis crinibus: "with dishevelled hair." There is authority for both: cp. Caesar de Bell. Gall. 7, 48.

CHAPTER LII.

Caesar — praefecti. This probably means that Caesar appointed over each of the six legions a legatus, and a quaestor over the whole. The legatus had an eye on the common soldiers and subordinate officers, while the quaestor watched the legati. The duties of the quaestor were to pay out money to the troops and keep regular account of the same, and to provide supplies. He was likely also available for command in time of emergency.

A dextro cornu: "on the right wing:" literally, "from the side of the right wing." This was opposed to the left of the enemy occupied by the Harudes.

Ita limits acriter just as ita afterwards limits repente and velriter.

Spatium — conjiciendi: "time for hurling their darts against the enemy." Spatium often means "time" as well as "space."

Rejectis pilis: "throwing aside their darts": abl. abs.: H. 431; A. & G. 255.

Phalanx facta: the German phalanx resembled the Roman testudo, the men being in close array with their shields locked above their heads. As the Germans here fought by tribes, there would be as many phalanxes as tribes.
NOTES.

**complices nostri milités**: “many of our men”: decline fully complices.

Would it be correct to say complices nostrorum militum?

**qui—insilirent**: H. 503, I.; A. & G. 320, a.

**a sinistro cornu**: “on the left wing” of the Germans: see a dextra cornu above.

**P. Crassus adolescens**: “the young P. Crassus.” P. Crassus is here called by the epithet adolescens to distinguish him from his father, the triumvir. Both father and son lost their lives at the unfortunate field of Carrhae, in Mesopotamia, B.C. 53.

**quod—versabantur**: “because he was more disengaged than those who were occupied at the front.” It is probable that Crassus saw where help was most needed than those actually engaged in the battle.

**nositio subsidio**: for two datives: H. 390, II.; A. & G. 233.

**CHAPTER LIII.**

**ita—vererunt**: “by this means the battle was renewed and then the enemy were entirely put to flight.” For the simple terga vererunt we often have in fugam terga vererunt.

**prius—quam**: by tmesis for priusquam. Some MSS. read perveniret.

Why is the indicative correct here? H. 520; A. & G. 327.

**viribus**: H. 425, II., I, 1), N.; A. & G. 254, b. Decline this word. What verbs are semi-deponent?

**tranare contenlerunt; “managed to swim over.”

**ea**: “with it”; the abl. of accompaniment.

**salutem reppererunt**: “reached a place of safety.”

**reliquos omnes**: Plutarch states that 80,000 men were slaughtered in this battle. Ariovistus soon afterwards died, either through chagrin at his defeat, or of wounds received in the battle. The defeat and death of Ariovistus was a terrible blow to Germany: cp. Caesar: de Bell. Gall. 5, 29: magno esse Germanis dolori Ariovistī mortem. By the campaign of 58 B.C. the question was decided whether Rome or Germany should obtain possession of Gaul. Not till after the overthrow of the Western Empire did Gaul come under German rule.

**uxores**: it was not usual for the Germans to have more than one wife. He probably married his Noric wife for political reasons: cp. Tacit. Germ. 18: nam prope soli barbarorum singulis uxibus contenbe sunt, exceptis admodum paucis qui non libidine sed ob nobilitatem plurimis nuptiis ambiuntur.

**duxerat, scil. in matrimoniōm.**

**duae filiae harum, altera—altera**: that is the whole and part construction: cp. the Greek idiom οβροι μὴν ἄλλος ἄλλη λέγει.

**trinis catensis**: as catenas is generally used in the plural, we have the distributive for the ordinal numeral: cp. terna castra: H. 172, 3; A. & G. 95, b.

**in—incidit**: “casually met with.”
ereptum—restitutum: it is not usual to have two participles in the same clause without a connective: the former is adjectival to the latter: "restored to him saved from the hands of the enemy."

neque—diminuerat: "neither by the sufferings of such a man had fortune at all lessened the general pleasure and rejoicing:" literally: "taken away anything from."

ter: a sacred number among many nations.—consultum, scil. esse.

sortium: see note B.I., Chapter L. near the end.
ad eum i.e. ad Cæsarem.

CHAPTER LIV.

proximi—Rhenum: what three constructions may proximi have?
occiderunt: distinguish in derivation and meaning occido, occidō.
una aestate: "within a single summer." The defeat of the Helvetii took place at the end of June or in the beginning of July; that of Arioqvittus about Sept. 10th.
in Sequanos: "into the territory of the Sequani." This implies that he was previously out of it.
citeriorem Galliam: said with reference to the position of Rome.
ad conventus agendos. The Romans divided the conquered provinces into circuits to which they gave the name conventus or conventus juridici, though the administration of justice was only one, among the many duties of the governor. The circuit took its name from the chief town. Hence the word conventus had four meanings: (1) the assembly held; (2) territory from which the people assembled; (3) place where the assembly was held; (4) jurisdiction. At these circuits law suits were determined, petitions heard, taxes regulated, and everything transacted that tended to the general administration of the province.
BOOK II.

CHAPTER I.

esset: for subjunctive: H. 521, II., 2; A. & G. 323, 325. The date is 57 B.C., in the consulship of P. Cornelius Lentulus and Q. Metellus Nepos.

in hiberna: hibernis generally means the winter quarters of an army engaged in a war. Here in hibernis may mean, at the place where he was spending the winter.

ita ut: “just as.”

quam: agrees with the word in the predicate rather than with its regular antecedent: translate, however: “who, as we have said, form the third part of Gaul.”

conjurer: “had formed a league.” There is no necessity to take this word here in the sense of “to form a conspiracy”; cp. Greek συνομοσία, “a league.”

inter se dare: “were exchanging.”

quod vererentur: the subjunctive shows that the reasons were given on the authority of the Belgae: H. 516, II.; A. & G. 341, d.

Galititia—Gallia Celtica: the central part of Gaul is meant.

partim qui: “some of whom”; partim-partim refer to nonnullis Gallis, who are classed in two divisions. The word partim, though accusative in form, is used by Caesar and Cicero as a word of distribution without any respect to its case.

ut—ita: “as—so.”

inveterascere: “should become settled”: literally, “should grow old.”

molete ferebant = καλεπνο; ἔφερον: “they were annoyed.”

partim—studebant: “(while) others of whom in consequence of their instability and fickleness of disposition were aiming at a revolution.”—imperios: H. 385; A. & G. 227.

ab nonnullis etiam, scil. quod sollicitarentur: “thirdly because they were being instigated by a few, since in Gaul constantly there were opportunities to gain dominion seized by the more powerful and those who had wealth to hire men.” Note the different clauses in opposition to causes are introduced by primum, deinde, etiam.

imperio nostro: “under our sway”; abl. of time and cause: see note on imperio: B. I., Chapter xviii.
CHAPTER II.

nuntius literisque: H. 416, I. 2), N. 1; A. & G. 245, b.
duas legiones: the XIII. and XIV. Caesar now had eight legions, numbering from VII. to XIV. inclusive. The regular soldiers with the auxiliaries in Gaul would now number about 60,000 men.

in festa aestate: abl. absolute: H. 431; A. & G. 255. Join this to qui deducere.

interiorem Galliam: "into central Gaul": H. 440, 2, N. 1; A. & G. 193.

qui deducere, scil. eas: "to lead them." For qui = ut est: H. 497, 1; A. & G. 317.
quum—inciperet: the subjunctive is used because the abundance of fodder was the occasion of his coming: H. 521, II. 2; A. & G. 325, 323.
exercitum: probably now at Vesontio (Besançon).

gerantur: for the subjunctive: H. 529, II., 503, I; A. & G. 320, a, 342.
constanter: "uniformly," "unanimously."
tum—profectur: "then, indeed, he thought that he ought not to delay about setting out against them": the negative quin introduces the dependent clause because of the negative character of the main statement. This idiom is still preserved in French: je ne doute pas que vous n'eussiez raison: H. 500, II.; A. & G. 319, d. Note that non dubitare with infinitive denotes an act done without hesitation: cp. Caesar de Bell. Gall. 23: transire flumen non dubitaverunt, while non dubitare quin with subjunctive, denotes a resolution made without hesitation.

CHAPTER III.

eo = ad fines Belgarum.
de improviso: of the English colloquial phrase, "of a sudden": "unexpectedly."
celerius omni opinione: "more quickly than any one had expected": literally, "than every expectation": H. 417; A. & G. 247.
Remi: for the boundaries of these people, see Proper names.
proximo Galliae: for the dative: H. 391, 1; A. & G. 234, a. What other constructions may proximi have?
ex Belgis = inter Belgas.
qui—dicere: qui = ut eti, hence the subjunctive: H. 497, 1; A. & G. 317. In what other ways may this be expressed?
neque=et non: H. 554, I., 2; A. & G. 156 a.
omnino: note that omnino after negatives = "at all."

oppida: for the ablative: H. 425, 2, N. 2; A. & G. 258 f.

juvare, scil., eum, i.e., Caesarum.

cis Rhenum: Caesar is writing from the standpoint of the Roman Province: cp. Gallia Citerior, Gallia Cisalpina.

his = Belgis.—eorum omnium = Belgarum et Germanorum.

ne—quidem: the emphatic word comes between ne and quidem: H. 569, III., 2; A. & G. 151, e. Note that Suessiones is the object of detrèrere.

jure-legibus: for ablative: H. 421, I.; A. & G. 249. Jus is often used in the sense of political rights as here: cp. jus civitatis, jus Romanum: lex is properly an enactment made in the Roman comitia.


potuerint: governed by ut: H. 500, II., Note f; A. & G. 319. Note ut, expressing a consequence never takes pluperfect subjunctive: "that they had been unable."

quin—consentirent: "from uniting": would quominus be permissible here? H. 505, II.; A. & G. 319, c.

CHAPTER IV.

quum: H. 521, II., 2, A. & G. 325.

his: scil., legatis, mentioned in the beginning of the preceding chapter.


ortos a Germanis: it is probable that Caesar's statement here applies to those Belgae only near the German frontier. The main body of the people were of Gallic or Celtic origin. This is proved from the ancient Geographical names.


ibi: on the west bank of the river Rhine.

memoria: ablative of time within which: "within the memory of."

omnivexata: abl. abs.: H. 431, A. & G. 255: "when all Gaul was harrassed."

Teutones Cimbrosque: the Teutones and Cimbrí appeared first at Noreia, on the extreme N.E. of Italy, about 113 B.C. After devastating Northern Italy, defeating seven consular armies, both were defeated by Marius, the former at Aquae Sextiae (Aix) in Southern Gaul in 102 B.C., the latter at Campi Raudii near Vercellæ in Northern Italy in 101 B.C.

ingredi prohibuerint: for subjunctive: H. 503, II., 1; A. & G. 320, b. What constructions may verbs of hindering take? H. 505, II.; A. & G. 319, c, d.

suri: the subject of this verb is the following clause: uti—sumerent: H. 501, I., 2; A. & G. 319, 332, a.
memoria: for ablative: H. 416; A & G. 245.

omnia—habere: “that they had complete information.” Properly explorare is to find out a person by calling out his name.

propinquatibus affinitatibusque conjuncti: propinquitas, properly called cognatio, is “kinship,” the relationship that springs from common parents: affinitas is that derived from intermarriage. The affines of the wife are the cognati of the husband, i.e. the husband’s father, brothers, etc., while the affines of the husband are the cognati of the wife i.e. the wife’s father, brothers, etc.

quisque: “each representative.”

tollertis sit: subjunctive of dependent clause in oblique narrative: H. 529, I.; A. & G. 334


cunctare: “to muster”—armata millia centum = millia centum armatorum hominum.


Nervios: the names of peoples in the chapter show how persistently modern Geography preserves even in a corrupt form the memory of former days. The Bellovaci were settled near Beauvais; Suesiones, near Soissons; Ambiani, near Amiens; Caleti, near Calais; Atrabates, near Arras; Morini, near Boulogne; Velocasses had a capital Rotomagus, now Rouen; Veromandi were settled at Vermandois on the upper Oise; the Menapii on the lower Scheldt; the Aduatuci, on the upper Meuse; Condus, near Codros; Eburones and Caeroesi in the Ardennes region; the Paemani, in Marche la Famine.

Germani: the word is said to mean in Celtic, “hill-men,” “highlanders;” for other derivations see Proper Names.

CHAPTER V

liberaliterque — prosecutus: “having dismissed them with friendly words.”

prosequi verbis is a technical term, “to bid good bye” to a person going into exile.

senatum: Caesar applies a Roman term to the council of the Belgae. So also Caesar: de Bell. Gall. II. 28, he uses the word senatores.

diligenter ad diem: “punctually to a day.”

quanto — sit: “how important it is to the interests of the state and their common safety that the forces of the enemy be kept apart that they may not be compelled to fight at one time with so great a number.”


neque jam = et jam non.

flumen exercitum: H. 376; A. & G. 239, b.
extremis: reckoning from the Marne where Caesar entered the territory of the Remi.

qua res: "this position."


et reddebat: construe et reddebat (ca loca) quae essent post eum (esse) tuta ab hostibus. For mood of essent: H. 503, I; A. & G. 320, a.

 efficiebat ut: "made it possible that."


CHAPTER VI.

ex itinere magno: "while on a forced march"; cp. ex itinere: B.I., Chapter xxv. The expression shows there was no interruption of the march when the attack was made.

eo die: the ablative is sometimes used for periods of duration so short as to be equivalent to a point of time.

eadem aique: "just the same as": H. 451, 5; A. & G. 296, R. 1.

ubi—subrunt: "when they have placed a continuous line of men along all the fortifications and begun to shower stones from every side upon the wall and (when once) the wall has been cleared of its defenders, then they form a testudo, push on to the wall and proceed to pull it down."

murus: distinguish in meaning moenia, murus, paries, maceria—testudina: Caesar gives the tactics of the Belgae a Roman name. In forming a testudo, the Roman soldiers held their shields over their heads close to one another so that they form an unbroken defence against the missiles from above. It obtained its name from the appearance the shield had to a tortoise shell (testudo). Note that—que sometimes as here connects actions described as happening at some distance of time from one another.

multitudo—concusse: the plural verb expresses numerous separate and individual actions. Had the singular been used there would have been the idea of unity: H. 517; A. & G. 326.


secisset: H. 521, II., 2, A. & G. 325.


oppido: for dative: H. 386; A. & G. 228.

sibi—esse: Iccius.—

submitatur: what is the force of sub in composition here?

CHAPTER VII.

eo; i.e., to Bibracte.

de media nox: "soon after midnight": so de tertia vigilia is, "after the third watch was set": see B.I. chapter xii.

iisdem—venerant: "using as guides the same persons who had come as
NOTES.

messengers." For pronouns in apposition to nouns, compare note on his ducibus qui iter cogoverant: Caesar, B. I., Chapter xx.

Numedes, Cretes, Balares: those three nations supplied the light skirmishers to the Roman armies. For an account of them see Proper Names.

Join opposidamis with suisdio, not with mittit.

quorum—discessit: "and at the arrival of these the Remi were inspired with eagerness to ward off the attack, as well as with the hope of a successful defence, while, for the same reason, the enemy gave up all hope of becoming masters of the town."—advenitu ablative of time and cause—et Remi—iscessit: literally, "there was both added to the Remi": H. 386; A. & G. 228.—hostibus: for case: H. 385, II., 2; A. & G. 229.


morati, scil. hostes.

quos: account for the gender of the relative: H 445, 3 N. 1: 439, 2.
ab—posuerunt: this construction is best explained by hyperbaton (inversion in order of words), the regular construction being: posuerunt castra minus duobus passuum ab (castris Caesaris). The ablative of difference: H. 417; A. & G. 247.—minus, plus, amplius have no influence on the construction: see note on B. I., Chapter xxxviii.—millibus ablativo of measure: H. 417, I., N. 2; A. & G. 247, c.

CHAPTER VIII.

propter—vinditius: "on account of their fine reputation for valour."

proelio supersedere: "to delay the battle."—supersedeo means primarily, "to sit over" in the sense of a presiding judge. Cato R. R. 5, I.: villicus ilibus familias supersedet: then "to sit over" a thing in the sense of passing it over; hence, "to delay."—proelio: ablative of: H. 414, I.; A. & G. 243.

equestris proelis—periculatbatur: "he kept trying to find out by cavalry skirmishes what the enemy could do by their valour and what daring our men had."—proelis: ablative of means. H. 420; A. & G. 248.
posset—auderent: dependent question: H. 529, I.; A. & G. 334.—peri-
culatbatur—periculat faciebat: for imperfect: H. 461, II.; A. & G. 115. b. The original meaning of periculum is "a trial," "a test."

locu—idoneos: "the ground in front of the camp being naturally well adapted and suitable for drawing up his troops." The present participle of the verb esse being wanting we often find an adjective agreeing in predicate relation with a noun in abl. absolute: H. 431, 2, (3); A. & G. 255, b, N.


quod—reddibat: "because that hill on which the camp was pitched, rising a little from the plain, extended in width towards the enemy far enough to form an army in battle array, and on both sides it had steep
NOTES.

121

books and in front gently sloping upward it gradually resumed a level."


transversum fossam : "an intrenchment at right angles," to the direction of the hill.

ad — fossas : "at the end of the intrenchments:" H. 442, 2, N. 1 ; A. & G. 193.

— tormenta : (from root TORC, "to whirl") was the generic term under which were included balistae, onayri, scorpiones, catapulta.

quad — poterant : "because they were so strong in numbers.

multitudine : abl. of cause.

legionibus : the XIIIth and XIVth, which he had raised the previous summer in Gallia Cisalpina.

si quo opus esset : "if any where there was need." Explain the tense of the subjunctive.

subsidio : dat. of purpose : "as a reserve force."

suas — instruerant. — suae copias ex castris eduxerat et instruerant : H. 549, 5 ; A. & G. 292, R.

CHAPTER IX.

palus : distinguish in meaning palus, palus.

hanc — erant : "the enemy were waiting to see whether our soldiers would cross this (marsh); our men, on the other hand, were under arms waiting to attack them (the enemy) when stuck fast (in the marsh), if they (the enemy) should first begin to cross it." — hanc, seil. paludem.

transirent : H. 529, II ; A. & G. 334. f. — si — fieret : literally, "if a beginning of crossing (the marsh) should be made by them" : for the subjunctive : H. 529, II ; A. & G. 342.

proelio — contendebatur : "a cavalry battle was fought between the two lines." For the passive contendebatur : H. 301, I ; A. & G. 146, c.

secundio — nostris : "the cavalry battle being more fortunate than usual to our men." For abl. abs. : H. 431, 4 ; A. & G. 255, a.

eo consiliu : "with the object."

castellum : a redoubt which Titurius occupied with six legions on the south bank of the Axona (Aisne).

expugnarent : distinguish in meaning oppugno, expugno.

si — potuissent : the construction is : partem suarum copiarum transducere conati sunt eo consilio ut, si minus potuissent ponant expugnare et intersecundere. The tense in potuissent implies the condition after the attempt had been made.

nobis usus : H. 390, 1 ; A. & G. 233.

CHAPTER X.

equitatum—pontem: for the two accusatives: H. 376; A. & G. 239, d.
e loco: the battle is said to have taken place between the mouth of the
little stream Mielte, which flows through the marsh mentioned in Chapter
ix. into the Axona (Aisne), and the modern village of Pontavert.
imeditas: “hampered in their movements.”
circumventos interfecerunt—circumvenerunt et interfecerunt: H. 549.5;
A. & G., 292, R.
hostes: the main body of the Belgae who remained drawn up in battle
array, differing from the hostes impeditos mentioned before who were
simply a detachment.
oppido: Bibraxe: H. 544, 2; A. & G. 301.
spem se fessississe: literally, “that their hope had deceived them.”
neque=et non.
iniquiorem: “less favourable” for them than the original position where
the legions were drawn up.
constituerunt—esse—(ut) conveniunt: constituo takes either—(1) the
infinitive or (2) ut or ne with subjunctive, generally when the subject of the
main verb and dependent verb differ. Rarely do we find the construction
varied in the same clause as here.
domum: what words are construed like the names of towns? H. 380
II., 21); A. & G. 238, h.
convenit: in direct discourse this would be conveniamus, convenite.
copias: “supplies” here: what are the usual meanings of copia in sin-
finibus: for the dative: H. 386; A. & G. 228.
his—poterat: “these could not be persuaded to delay any longer or to
refrain from bringing aid to their countrymen.”—his: H. 384.5, A. &
G. 230.

CHAPTER XI.

ea—constituta: express this by other constructions.
secunda vigilia: from 9—12 P.M.
nullo imperio: “without any definite marching order,” or “command.”
The abl. absolute is explained by cum—numulu and by quem—properare.
primum—locum: “the first place in the line of march,” i.e., to get at the
head of the retreating column.
feecerunt—videretur: “they so managed matters that their setting out
had all the appearance of a rout.” For subjunctive: H. 498, II., N. 2;
per exploratores: what is the difference between this expression and ab exploratoribus? H. 415, I., I, N. 1; A. & G. 246, b.

ejus: H. 415, I., I, N. 1; A. & G. 246, b.

nondum persequerat: "he had as yet no intelligence."

exercitum=peditatum: as the foot soldiers made up the bulk of the Roman army, milites is often used for pedites; exercitus for peditatus.

castris=in castris.

qui moraretur=ut is moraretur: "to stop": H. 497, I.; A. & G. 317.

his=equitibus implied in equitatum.

novissimos, scil. hostes: "the rear of the enemy."

magnam—considerunt: "slew a great number of them as they were fleeing." Distinguish condito, concedo in derivation and meaning

quum—consistere: "since those on the rear of their column, to whom the Romans had come, were making a stand."—ventum est: H. 301, 1; A. & G. 146, c.

prieres—ponerent: "(while) those in advance (of the rear guard), be cause they thought they were out of danger, and were not kept together by any necessity or command of their officers, when the shout reached their ears, all broke up their ranks in confusion and rested their hope in flight."

prieres, scil. hostes: those at the head of the retreating column.—vide—

rentur—continuerent: subjunctive by attraction: H. 529, II.; A. & G. 342.—perturbatis ordinibus is more closely connected with verb ponere than the first abl. abs.: ex audito clamore.—ponerent: H. 517; A. & G. 326.

quantum—spatium: "as long as the length of the day permitted," i.e., as long as it was daylight.

CHAPTER XII.

postridie ejus diei: H. 398, 5; A. & G. 214, g: see note B.I., Chapter xxi.

priusquam se—reciperent: "before the enemy could recover themselves": H. 520; II. & A. G. 327.

magnum itinere confectum: "by making a forced march." What was the length of a regular day's march? What, of a forced march? See note B.I., Chapter vii.

Noviodunum: the ending -dun is Celtic for "town," cp. Lugdunum: Melodunum: so that Noviodunum means Newtown. The modern Sots- sons (a corruption of Suessiones) is on its site, nearly 30 miles west of Berry-au-Bac.

ex itinere: "on his march."

latitudinem fossae murique altitudinem: note the chiasmus: H. 635, V. 4; A. & G. 344, f.

paucis defendentibus=quamvis pauci (id) defendentur: "though those who defended it were few:" the abl. absol. is concessive here.

usui: H. 390, II., N. 2; A. & G. 233, 300.
vineas agere: "to get ready the vineae." The vineae were wooden frames, eight feet high, seven wide and sixteen long, protected with raw or wet hides. Under this protection the men advanced to the wall of the enemy, undermined the wall or filled up the ditch.

aggere jacto: "a platform being constructed." The aggeres were platforms for the artillery or for moveable towers.


operum: "siege works."

Galli: appositive: "they, as Gauls."

et—imperfectum: and at the request of the Remi, they (Suessiones) obtained their wish that their lives should be spared: "for subjunctive: H. 498, I.; A. & G. 331, a.

CHAPTER XIII.

primis=principibus: H. 441; A. & G. 188.

Bratuspantium: an old town Bratuspante which once stood near Breteuil in Picardie, at the head of the Somme Valley.

contulissent—abesset: bring out the changes of tense in translation: so also in accessisset—poneret.

sese—venire: "that they placed themselves under his protection and power." ejus may be both objective and subjective genitive and hence implies a mutual pledge being given.

neque=et non.

pueri: "children": not necessarily "boys" merely.

passis manibus: "with outstretched hands," expressing humiliation.

more: abl. of manner: H. 419, III., Note 2; A. & G. 248. Remark.

CHAPTER XIV.

pro his=pro Bellovacis: "in defence of these."—eum=Caesarem.

reverterat: conjugate this verb. What verbs are semi-deponent?

facit verba: "intercedes."

Bellovacis: what are the chief rules for oblique narration: H. 523-525; A. & G. 335-342. In verba facit is implied dicere on which the indirect narrative depends.

omni tempore: note that the acc. omne tempus is not ordinarily used to express duration of time.

qui dicerent: "who kept saying"; H. 524; A. & G. 336.

omnes—perferre: "endured every kind of ill-treatment and insult." Explain the use of the plural of abstract nouns: H. 130, 2; A. & G. 75 c.

qui: the antecedent of this is eos understood, the subject of profugisse.

principes=auctores: "advisers."

in Britanniam profugisse: Britain has often been a refuge for French agitators as in the recent case of Boulanger.
NOTES.

ut—utatur: "that he would exercise his well-known clemency and moderation towards them." What verbs govern the ablative? H. 421; A. & G. 249.

ficet : explain the fut. perf. : H. 527, 1; A. & G. 337.

quorum—consuerint: "by whose aid and help, whatever wars happened they (Aedui) were wont to hold out."—auxiliis—opibus: abl. means. Change from Bellovacos to the end of the chapter into direct narrative.

CHAPTER XV.


eo loco: Bratuspantium.

Nervii: these were looked upon as the most savage people of the Belgae.

natura: "character."

nullum—mercatoribus: "traders have no access to these." For mercatoribus see note on Chapter I., B.I.

nihil—pati=(eos) non pati quidquam vini: "they do not at all permit the use of wine": for the partitive genitive: H. 397, I.; A. & G. 216, a.

inferri: H. 535; H. & G. 330.—reliquarum rerum governed by quicquam implied in nihil. For a similar statement regarding the Belgae generally see Chapter I., B.I.

its rebus: "by these enjoyments."

quod—existimarent: what two reasons for the subjunctive?—Eorum: would suos be permitted here?

increpitare atque incusare: "they rebuked and even blamed." Distinguish et, atque and -que as connectives. Supply eos as subject of increpitare, incusare.—qui=quippe qui: "inasmuch as they": H. 517; A. & G. 320 e.

CHAPTER XVI.

eurum=Nerviorum.

triduum: scil., spatium, acc. of duration of time = tres dies.

millia: note that plus, minus, amplius have no influence on constructions of extent of time or space: H. 417, I., N. 2; A. & G. 247, c.

in itinere: "(already) on the march."

mulieres—conjecisse: the construction is: inveniebat (eos) conjecisse mulieres (hominum) que qui, etc.

CHAPTER XVII.


ex—Gallis: join this with complures: H. 397.3, N. 3; A. & G. 216, c.
dedictiis: the Ambiani, Suecessiones, and Bellovaci.

eorum—perspecta: "the usual marching order on the part of our army during these days being observed."

eorum dierum: depends on itineris.

inter—intercedere: "that between every two legions a great number of beasts of burden were placed." Distinguish impedimentum, impedimenta, and sarcina in meaning. The impedimenta seem here to refer to the horses, waggons or any beast of burden used in transporting the heavy material of the army.

neque—adoriri: "and that there was no trouble, when the first legion reached the camp, and (when) the other legions were a long way off in attacking this (legion) still encumbered with baggage."—negotti: partitive genitive after quidquam.—spatium: H. 379; A. & G. 257

futurum esse: depending on demonstrant, and having the clause ut—audenter for subject: "the result would be that the other legions would not be bold enough to withstand the attack:" H. 4:8, II., N. 2; A. & G. 332, e.—religiae, scil., legiones.

adjuvabat—possit: "the following fact added weight to the advice of those who brought this intelligence, that the Nervii, long ago, since they could do nothing with cavalry (for up to this time they did not pay any heed to this branch of the service, but whatever power they have rests in their infantry), that the more easily they might obstruct the operations of the cavalry of their neighbours, if they came against them (Nervii) for the purpose of plunder, had caused, by lopping the trees when young and by intertwining the branches which grew out thick in a lateral direction and by interposing brambles and briars, these hedges like a wall to form a defence, which far from being able to enter they could not even see through." Such is the literal translation. Break up the sentence into several separate sentences for a good English version.

antiquitus: explain the ending of the adverb.—quo: H. 497, III., 2; A. & G. 317, 6.—venissent: H. 529, II.; A. & G. 342.—effecerunt ut: H. 497, II., N. 2; A & G. 332, e.—instar muri: instar is an indeclinable substantive: H. 134; A. & G. 77, 1.—non modo = non modo non: cp. the Greek use of ob μουον for ob μουον ob,

don—consilium: "this plan should not be neglected by them:" for dative sibi: H. 388; A. & G. 232.

CHAPTER XVIII.

loici—quem locum: see note on itinera duo, quibus itineribus: B.I., Chap vi. This place is said to be on the River Sabis (now Sambre) in France, near the Belgian frontier, about two miles S.W. of Maubeuge.

declivis: a hill sloping from the top to the bottom was called declivis; from the bottom to the top, acclivis.

huc—contrarius: "facing and opposite to this." There is little difference between adversus and contrarius: the former seems to mean that the two armies corresponded in form and extent.
passus—ducentos: some say that the hill began to rise about 200 paces from the margin of the river, others that it was 200 paces from the bottom to the top.—passus: acc. of extent. H. 379; A & G 257.

infinitus apertus—infinis parte apertus opposed to ab superiore parte silvisstris: “so thickly wooded on the top, so that it was not easy to see into it.”

secundum: here a preposition: “down the river:“ we have also secundo flumine, adverso flumine for “down the river,” “up the river:” secundo and adverso being adj. in abl. absolute, agreeing with flumine.

pedum—trium: genitive of description: H. 396, V.; A & G 215, b.

CHAPTER XIX.

coapis: ablative of accompaniment: H. 419, III., 1, 1); A. & G. 248, a.

totum—aulenbant: “brought up the whole rear.”

duae legiones: the XIIIth and XIVth legions.

praesidio impedimentis: for two datives; H. 390, I.; A & G 233.

idem: “repeatedly.”

neque—auderant: “and when our soldiers did not dare to follow those in retreat further than the level and open ground extended in front.”

neque=et non. quem ad finem=ad eum finem ad quem=usque e0 quo: H. 445, 8; A & G. 200, b.—correcta: literally, “stretching in front.”

quaes—venerant: “which had been the first to come up:” H. 443; A. & G. 191.

opere dimenso: “the work allotted to each being measured out.” After picking out a place for the camp (Chapter XVIII., locum idoneum castris eligere), the six legions which first came up began to fortify the camp (castra manus), after the ground had been marked out for each by the surveyors (castrorum metatores, or mensores). Note that dimenso is passive: H. 231, 2; A. & G. 135, b. For the participles of deponent verb used passively see note B I., Chapter XI.

ubi—fecerunt: “when the first part of the baggage train of our army was seen by those who were concealed in ambush in the forest, which had been agreed upon among them as the proper time for beginning the battle, on a sudden they darted forth with all their forces, and made an onset on our cavalry in the same order as they had drawn up their line of battle and ranks within the woods, and as they had encouraged each other to do.”—

prima: H. 440, 2, N. 2; A & G. 193.

proturbatis: "driven forward in confusion." Another reading is per-
turbatis.

paene—tempore: "almost in one and the same moment": H. 429, A. & G. 256.

ad silvas: "at the edge of the woods."

in manibus: may mean what a person has under his hand; hence what
is in his power, or as here what is close at hand; cp. Sall. Bell. Jug. 1, 57:
cupere proelium in manibus facere.

adverso collae: "up the hill": cp. secundum in Chapter XVIII.

They made straight for the Roman camp with the hill before them.

CHAPTER XX.


vexillum—dandum: notice the asyndeton in this sentence. Why does
Caesar here use it?—vexillum (diminutive of velum, "a sail") was a
 crimson flag hung out from the praetorium as the signal of battle. Plutarch
calls it фωνηκος ἀμαχων, "a crimson cloak."

qum—optrorer: "when they had to rush to arms." Explain the sub-
 jective here: H. 521, II., 2; A. & G., 325.

signum: "the signal of battle." The various instruments in Caesar's
army were: (1) tuba: a trumpet, straight, with a funnel-shaped opening
and used for giving signals to form in line, advance, and retreat; (2) cornu:
horn, originally made of buffalo horn, gave the signal to the army to
assemble and hear the address of the commander, or the sentence of death
pronounced; (3) bucina: clarion was sounded to mark a change of watch.
In Caesar time the lituus was also used, though not mentioned by him.
It was used for cavalry and had a harsh and high note.

qui—arcessendi: "those who had gone a little too far to seek materials
for the mound had to be summoned." The antecedent of qui is ei milites
understood, subject of arcessendi sunt.

milites cohortandi: referring to the usual harangue (militum cohortatio)
of the general before the action began.

signum dandum: it is better to take this=signum committendi proelii
 dandum est: "the first order to charge." Others say it refers to
the tessera or watch-word given to the men, so that by calling it they
might avoid mistake or confusion in distinguishing friends and foes. It
was usually some auspicious term or name. The watch-word of Caesar was
usually Venus Genetrix; of Brutus, Libertas. With tessera: cp. Greek
συνούβολον.

successus: "approach" of the Nervii from below.

his—milites: "two things, namely, the skill and experience of the
soldiers were of assistance to him to meet these difficulties."—difficultatibus:
dative, depending on subsidio: H. 390, i.; A. & G. 233.—usus: a more
important word than scientia in Caesar's eyes: H. 554, 1, 2); A. & G.
156, a.
non—poterant: "they were able to give the command to themselves with no less advantage than to receive the command from others.” This shows the high degree of discipline to which Caesar had brought his legions.

ab—vetuerat: "Caesar had forbidden the different lieutenants to leave the fortifications and their respective legions, unless the camp was fortified.” For distributive numeral: H. 174, 2, 1; A. & G. 95, a.


 nihil(=ne illum: "not a mark," or = ne filum, “not a thread,”) is here used for an emphatic non: H. 378, 2; A. & G. 240, a.

videbantur, scil. administranda esse. "but they did of their own accord what they thought ought to be done.”

CHAPTER XXI.

necessariis—imperatis: "having given (only) the necessary orders": H. 431; A. & G. 255.

quam in partem—obtulit: the full construction is: in eam partem quam partem fors obtulit: "in the direction which fortune first presented.”—fors: (from fero,) whatever fortune brings: H. 445, 9; A. & G. 200, b.

retinent—possit: for the imperfect subjunctives: H. 502, 2; A. & G. 334, b.


quod—possit: this gives the reason for signum dedit.

quam quo—quam ut eo: “than the throw of a dart”: H 502, 2; A. & G. 320, c

pugnantibus occurrat: 'he finds them already engaged in fighting.”

insignia: "these seem to be the crista, feathers black and red, and other ornaments worn by the Roman soldiers to distinguish the legions and cohorts. These were moveable and were not worn on the march.

scutis: H. 414; A. & G. 243. The scutum was protected on the march with a leathern cover to shield it from the effects of the weather.

quam—conspectit: the full expression would be: hac in parte et ad haec signa quisque constitit, quam primam in partem devenit, et quae prima signa conspectit. On ordinary occasions it was a serious offence for a soldier to be absent from his regular post.

in—suis—in quaerendo sua (signa): "in seeking out his own standard.”

CHAPTER XXII.

magis—postulabat: "more in accordance with the position of the ground, the slope of the hill, and the urgency of the occasion than with the principles and arrangement approved of by military science.”—magis ut—postulabat: distinguish the use of the indo. and the subjunctive with ut following the comparative.
quum—resisterent: "since, as the different legions were scattered, different places held out against the enemy."—diversis—legionibus: abl. absolute.—aliae—parte: H. 459, I.; A. & G. 203, c.
sepibusque—interjectis: H. 431, 444, I.; A. & G., 255, 93, b.
provideri, scil. poterat: the subject of which is the clause quid—esset.
fortunae: genitive depending on eventus: "the varying success of fortune also followed:" that is, some divisions were victorious and some defeated.

CHAPTER XXIII.

aea pars: the sinistra pars occupied by the soldiers of the IXth and Xth legions.—his=Atrabatibus.
ex loco superiore: the prepositional abl. absolute; "since they occupied the higher ground."
conantes, scil, eos (Atrebates): "as they (the Atrebates) were trying."
ipsi=legionum nonae et decimae milites.
transire: for infinitive after non dubitaverunt see note under Chapter XI., B. II.
congressi: scil. milites, from legiones.
ex loco—proelabantur: "had gone down from the high ground and were fighting on the banks of the river." Explain the force of the imperfect.
nudatis: "being stripped" of defenders.
laterae aperto: "their flank being left uncovered": abl. abs. In this case latus=latus sinistrum.
summum—locum: "the height occupied by the camp."

CHAPTER XXIV.

levi armaturae: see note on levis armaturae: Chapter X, B. II.
adversis: "face to face."
declumana portae: the Roman camp had four gates: porta praetoria, in front, facing the enemy, and called from being near the praetorium or headquarters of the general; opposite to this was the porta decumana in the rear of the camp, and so called because the 10th cohorts of the legion (dechinae cohors) were stationed there; porta principalis dextra, in the centre on the right hand side of the camp, and porta principalis sinistra, on the left hand side.
respecessissent—vidissent: H. 521, II., 2; A. & G. 325, 323.
NOTES.

quorum—singularis: "whose reputation for valour is very high among the Gauls."—opinio sometimes means, as here, the impression conveyed to others.

auxilia—civitate—auxiliorum loco ab civibus: "as auxiliaries by their countrymen." This accounts for ab. So also at the end of this chapter civitate = civibus.


CHAPTER XXV.

Caesar—scuto—dectacto—processit: to this main sentence there is a long prothesis or introduction which may conveniently be divided into two parts, the first extending to esse impedimento vidit, and the second, to submitti posset.

ab—cohortatione = ab decima legione quam cohortatus erat.

signis—collatis: causative to esse impedimento: "since the standards (of the maniples) were crowded together." Distinguish aquila, signum, vexillum in meaning.

centurioribus occisis: this and the four succeeding ablatives absolute are causal to reliquis esse tardiores: "all the centurions of the fourth cohort were slain, etc., therefore, all the rest of the men were getting cowed."

—primipilo: primus pilus was the first centurion of the first manipulus of the triarii and was the first in rank of the sixty centurions of the legion. He was entrusted with the eagle of the legion, ranked among the equites as regarded pay, and had a place in the council of war along with the consuls and tribunes.

et—excedere = et nonnullos ab novissimis locum deserere ac proelio excedere: "while some in the rear were quitting their posts and withdrawing from the battle." Others have deseritos: "abandoned by those in the rear." It is better to supply loco with deserto. For proelio: H. 414; A. & G. 243.

hostes—instare: "and that the enemy both in front did not cease coming up, and on both sides were pressing (our men) hard." With instare supply nostris militibus.

et rem—vidit: "as he also saw that the danger was great." With angusto, sci. loco. We still in American parlance speak of a man being in a "tight place." The length of the sentence and the number of the dependent clauses led Caesar to repeat vidit.

subsidium: "reserves": the XIIIth and XIVth legions were too far off to be of any assistance.

scuto—dectacto: "snatching a shield from a soldier in the rear." In uni militi we have a Graecism for ab uno mile. This use of the dative for the abl. of agent with ab is generally confined to perf. part. pass.: H. 385, II., 2; A. & G. 229. With this meaning of uni: cp. the English a, an: A. S. ëan, Fr. un, all really same.

signa—inferre, referre, convertere, efferre: ad signa convenire, a signis
discedere, collatis signis corfligere, signis infestis re aut incedere. The original meaning of maxipulus was a handful (manus, pleo) of grass at the top of a pole referred to by Ovid. Fasti. III, 115. The pole was changed into a spear and the wisp of grass was replaced by gilded, silver, or bronze animals, of which the eagle was retained as the emblem of the legion. Afterwards the animals were replaced by a round ball of metal—laxare: to give full play to the sword and to lessen the deadly effect of the enemies' missiles.

milittibus: dative: H. 386; A. & G. 228.
pro se quisque: "each man to the best of his ability."
etiam—cuperent: "even in the most critical moment desired to do his best."—navare=gnavare: "to do actively:" cp. gnarus.

CHAPTER XXVI.

juxta, scil., duodecimam legionem: "next to the twelfth legion."

ut—inferrent: "that the (two) legions should gradually draw together, face about and charge the enemy." The seventh legion took up its position in rear of the twelfth, so that it faced in the opposite direction and thus the two would present a double front to the enemy. The expression conversa would thus refer to the seventh only, the two forming thus one continuous line. For conversa signa—inferrent=converterent signa et—inferrent: H. 549, 5; A. & G. 292, R.

aversi: "in the rear."

legionum—duarum: the xiiith and xivth.

castris: H. 421, I.; A. & G. 249. The ixth and xth legions under Labienus had driven the Atrebates across the river and gained possession to the enemy's camp.


qui, referring to milites implied in legiones.

versaretur: agreeing with the nearest nominative as the most important subject: H. 463, I.; A. & G. 205, d.
nihil—secerunt: "they came up as fast as they could:" literally, "they left nothing undone with respect to speed." For the partitive genitive reliquii: H. 397, I.; A. & G. 216, a, 1.

CHAPTER XXVII.
etiam qui—procubuisserent: "even such as had lain down badly wounded:" literally, "spent with wounds." For subjunctive: H. 503, I.; A. & G. 320, a.

scutis innixi: "supporting themselves on their shields:" H. 425, II., 1, 1, N.; A. & G. 254, b.
NOTES.

equites vero—praeferent: the construction is tanta rerum commutatio est facta ut equites vero—praeferent: "such a change in the battle took place that indeed the cavalry, to wipe out by their valour their disgraceful flight, put themselves in front of the common soldiers in every part of the field." For militibus: H 386; A. & G., 228.

at: often used to introduce a new subject, or a transition from one part of a description to another.
in—salutis: "even in the utter despair of safety."
his defectis: "when these in turn were struck down";
quae—redegerat: "all of which things, though in themselves most difficult, their great courage had rendered easy of accomplishment." —redegerat = reddiderat.

CHAPTER XXVIII.

prope—redacto: "when the nation and name of the Nervii had been almost exterminated." There seems to be some exaggeration in this statement as the Nervii aided the Gauls in their uprising against the Romans B.C 52: see Caesar, de Bell. Gall 7, 75.
quae—redacto: "all of which things, though in themselves most difficult, their great courage had rendered easy of accomplishment." —redegerat = reddiderat.

quaeris: "children"
quum—arbitrarentur: since they saw that nothing would stop the conquerors nor defend the vanquished." On causal quaeris: H. 517; A. & G. 326.
omnium: depending on consensu.
militibus—sexaginta: in Chapter IV. the Nervii had promised 50,000.
vix ad quingentes: hyperbaton for ad vix quingentes: so a similar inversion of order, see Caesar de Bell. Gall. B. I., Chapter vi., vix qua singuli. Probably the exaggeration of the losses was for the purpose of exciting pity in Caesar.
finitimis imperavit: translate, militis civitati imperant: militibus imperavit.

CHAPTER XXIX.
supra: Chapter XVI., B. ii.
NOTES.

venire= in itinere essent: "were on the march."

oppidum: some say that this town, Aduatun, was on the plateau at the
junction of the Meuse and the Sambre, now Namur, not far from the field
of Waterloo. Others say it was situated on the hill Falhize, on the north
bank of the Meuse, opposite the town of Huy, some miles below Namur.

quod quum: "and though this (town):" quod=et id, scil., oppidum.
despectus: "wide prospect:" owing to the height of the hill on which it
was built.

in— pedum: join ducentorum pedum with aditus. For case of pedum: H.
402, 417, I., N. 2.; A. & G. 247, c, 214, c.
ex—pugnati: according to some the name Aduatuci is purely Celtic,
from aduatu, "runners."
citra fluum: on the west side of the Rhine.
custodiam—ac praesidio: we have also custodiam—ac praesidium; cus.
todiæ—ac praesidio. Some also omit una.

eorum: the Cimbri and Teutones who fell at Aqua Sextiae 102 B.C.
and at Campi Raudi 101 B.C.
quum—defenderent: "when at one time they carried on an aggressive
war (against their enemies), at another time warded it off when made
upon themselves." With bellum inferrent, scil. hostibus: with illatum scil.
sibi. Observe that inferre bellum, not invadere, is the technical term "to
invade."

CHAPTER XXX.

primo advento: "as soon as they arrived": cp. prima luce: "as soon
as day dawned."

parvulis proelii: "in skirmishes."

pedum duodecim, scil. in altitudinem: for the genitive of description:
vineis—constitui: the vineae were brought forward to cover the men who
raised the mound (agger) on which the tower (turris) was to be placed and
brought up to the wall. The men in the tower then drove the besieged
from the wall: cp. Sallust. Bell. Jug. c. 76.— turrin: what nouns have
(1) the accusative singular in -im: (2) in -im or -em?
nirridere—increpitate: historical infinitives.
quod—instrueretur: the quod introduces the reason of the Gauls, of
Caesar: H. 516, II.; A. & G. 341, d.—ab properly governs muro under-
stood.—tanto spatio: ablative of degree of difference: H. 423; A. & G.
250.
tantulæ staturæ: "of such trifling stature:" H. 396, V.; A. & G.
215, b.
brevitas nostra=brevitas nostrorum militum.

considerent: what would the form be in direct discourse? H. 523 Il. 1;
A. & G. 338.
CHAPTER XXXI.

moveri, scil. turrim.

specie: "sight."

non: join this with sine ope divina.

qui—possent=quippe qui—possent: "inasmuch as they were able":

H. 517; A. & G., 320 e.

quam—audirent: "of which they had constantly heard from others." Audio, as akóbo in Greek, has often a perfect meaning in the present. For the mood of despoliaret: H. 523, III.; A. & G. 339.


sibi—consuisset: "that it would be better for them, if they should be brought to such a condition, to endure any lot whatever at the hands of the Roman people than to be tortured to death by those over whom they had been accustomed to hold absolute sway." The subject of praestare is the part quamvis—consuisset.

CHAPTER XXXII.

consuetudine sua: "in accordance with his habit"; of treating mercifully a defeated foe: H. 416; A. & G. 245.

aries: generally the Romans spared the inhabitants, if the city surrendered before the battering ram was applied.

in Nervis: "in the case of the Nervii."

ne quanm: is quam from quis or qui?

re—suos: "when the answer was reported to their people they said they were ready to do whatever was ordered (by Caesar)."—ad suos explain ad. Why may not suis be read for ad suos? H. 384, II., 3 A. & G. 225, b.—facere, scil. eos, i.e., Advatuosus.

muri, i.e., of the town: agger, of the Romans.


CHAPTER XXXIII.

sub vesperum: "at the approach of evening."—cp. tóv bró bróra. There is also a reading sub vespera, which has not quite the same meaning. In Caesar, de Bell. Gall. 5, 13 sub bruma means "in the depth of winter." Sometimes sub with acc. means also "a little after."—cp. Livy 21, 18: sub hanc vocem—succlamatum est.

illi: afterwards distributed, partim—partim, subjects of fecerunt.

ante into consilio: "having previously formed a plot."


dedituione facta: express this in other ways.—praesidia deducturos, scil., esse: "would either withdraw their outposts," from the line of circumanvation where the Roman sentries kept watch. Supply aut with deducturos (esse).—denique: "at least" here=saltem.

scutis—intentis: "having made shields of bark or of osiers intertwined."
NOTES.

The *ex* governs *viniminibus* as well as *cortice*. Others take *viniminibus intertextis* as abl. absolute.

*tera vigilia*: for the Roman watches, see note on B.I. Chapter xii.

*ascensus*: because the Roman works were on a height above the level of the plain.


*repentino*: adverb for the more usual form *repente* which some have.

*ignibus*: "by fire signals."—*proximis*: nearest that part of the town from which the sally was made.

*concursum est*: *ep. itur, ventum est*: H. 301, r; A. & G. 146, c

*ut—debut*: "as brave men were bound to fight, when their case was nearly desperate, on disadvantageous terms against men hurling their missiles from a rampart and towers."—*in extremis*: the prepositional ablative absolute: see note under *quod arbitratur*, Chapter xxxiii, B.I.

*—qui—jacent*: H. 503, r; A. & G. 329, a.

*sectio*: "booty," in this case the inhabitants as well as their goods. Properly speaking *sectio* was property sold on the public account whether it was property taken in war, or property forfeited to the *populus* or property sold for the payment of a penalty. *Sector* was a purchaser of such property. Some say the word is derived (1) from *sequi*, "to follow," on account of the merchants (mercatores) following the army for the purpose of speculating in such property, or, (2) from *secure*, "to retail," because the purchaser (sector) retailed to the merchant what he bought in a lump.

*milium quinquaginta trium* predicate genitive of characteristic: H. 396, V., A. & G. 215

CHAPTER XXXIV.

*Venetos*: The names of the tribes here mentioned still survive in corrupted forms: *Veneti*, in the modern *Vannes*; Redones, in *Rennes*; Auleri: *Eburones*, in *Evreux*; Sesuvis, in *Sées*. So in Chapter xxxv., *Carnutes*, *Andes, Turones*, may be seen in the modern *Chartres, Angers*, and *Tours*.

CHAPTER XXXV


*se*: referring to *nationibus*.

*qui—pollicerentur = ut ei pollicerentur*: H. 497; A. & G. 317

*legationes = legatos*: abstract for concrete: see note B. I., Chapter vii.

*Italianam*: Caesar means Gallia Cisalpina, or Citerior, which, though within the natural boundaries of Italy, formed no part of Italy in a political sense at this time. Gallia Cisalpina was a *provincia*.

*ex—Caesaris*: "in accordance with the letters of Caesar."

*dies—supplicatio*: we have also mention of *supplicationes* in Caesar, de Bell. Gall.: 4, 38; 7, 90. In these cases the genitive *dierum* is used. Of course *dies* is acc. of duration of time. A *supplicatio* was a religious thanksgiving and festival for a successful victory, proclaimed by a resolution of the senate and celebrated with or without a triumph.

*accidit nulli*: the longest celebration before this time was the *supplicatio*, fasting for ten days, in honour of Pompey's victory over Mithradates. *Note* emphatic position of *nulli*. See Chapter vi, B. 11.
### PROPER NAMES.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Abbreviations</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A = Aulus, i; N. m.; a Roman praenomen.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Aedéusus, a, um; Adj.: an Aeduan.</td>
<td>The Aedui were a powerful nation of Gaul. Their confederacy embraced all the tract of country between the Alker, the middle Loire, and the Saône, and extended a little below this river to the south. Their capital was Sibrae. When Caesar came into Gaul he found the Aedui had been overcome by their rivals, the Arcerii and the Segusi, who had called in the aid of Ariovistus, a German prince. Caesar espoused the cause of the Aedui, and restored them to their former place of power.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Aemilluus, i; N. m.; L. Aemilius, a Roman officer in command of a decurie of Gallic cavalry (B. I., C. xxi).</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Albausbsis, is; N. m.; also called the Dubis (now Doubs), a river on which Vesontio (now Besançon), the chief town of the Aedui, was situated. The word Dubis meant the black river; (cp., Celtic dhù, &quot;black,&quot; as in the modern names Dulas, Doulas, Doules, Duggles, Dublin). Albausbsis means, &quot;the river of black rocks.&quot;</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Allbróges, um; N. pl. m.; the Allobroges, a people of Gaul between the Isere (Isere) and the Rhodanus (Rhône) in the country occupied by Drapiniae, Savoie, and Piedmont. Their chief city was Vienna (Vienne), about thirteen miles below Langdunum (Lyons). The name means &quot;highlanders,&quot; from ol., &quot;high,&quot; broga, &quot;land.&quot;</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Alpes, tum; N. pl. f.; the Alpes derive their name from the Celtic alp, meaning &quot;lofty.&quot; Their length is about 600 English miles. The following are the divisions generally given to this chain: Alpes Maritimes, from Nice to Mt. Voso; Alpes Cottiae from Mt. Veso to Mt. Cenis; Alpes Graiae, from Mt. Iseran to Little St. Bernard; Alpes Peninae, from the Great St. Bernard to the sources of the Rhone and Rhône; Alpes-Rhaetiae, from the St. Gothard to Mt. Brenner in the Tyrol; Alpes Noricae, from Mt. Brenner to the head of the river Plavis; Alpes Carnicatae vel Julianae, extending to the confines of Illyricum.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ambarri, orum; N. pl. m.; a people of Gallia Celta, situated between the Aedui and the Allobroges, among either bank of the Arar (Sabine).</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ambiani, orum; N. pl. m.; the Ambiani, a tribe of Gallia Belgica, to the north of the Bellovaci, and the river Samara (Somme). They had as their capital Samarobriva, on the Somme. This town was afterwards called Ambiani (now Amiens). They occupied that part of modern Picardie, now called Departement de la Somme.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Andes, tum; N. pl. m.; the Andes, a Gallo tribe that occupied the modern Anjou or what is now called Departement de la Mayenne. They occupied the north bank of the Liger (Loire), not far from its mouth. Tacitus and Pliny called them Andecavi or Andegavi. Caesar says that they were near the sea, but in this statement he is inaccurate as the Nameines intervened (B. II., C. xxxv.; B. III., C. vii.; B. VII., C. iv).</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Andócumborius, i: N. m. a colleague of Iocius in the embassy which the Remi sent to announce their submission to Caesar.

Aquilisea, ae; N. f. a celebrated city in Northern Italy, in the territory of Venetia, between the Alsa and Natiso, and about seven miles from the sea.

Aquitanica, ae; N. f. a district of Gaul between the Garumna (Garonne) and the Pyrenees. According to Strabo, the Aquitani differed from the Gauls both in physical features and in language. They resembled the Iberians.

Aquitani, órum; N. m. pl. the Aquitanians, one of the three great divisions of Gaul inhabiting Aquitania, the district between the Garumna (Garonne) and the Pyrenees. They resembled the Iberi rather than the Gauls.

Arar, aris; N. m. the Arar (now the Seine), a river of Gaul, rising in Mons Vosgoes (non Vosges) and after a southern course falling into the Rhodanus (Rhone). The city of Lugdunum (now Lyons) stands at the junction of the two rivers: (B. I., C. xii.)

Arliovistius, i; N. m. a king of the Germans who invaded Gaul, conquered the greater portion of the kingdom and subjected the inhabitants to the most cruel and oppressive treatment. Caesar marched against him and defeated him in battle. He died of wounds or through chagrin at his defeat. His name is borne by some derived from the German Her, an army; Fürst, a leader, but see Chap. xxxi., B. I.

Arunculeius, i; N. m. Lucius Arurculeius Cotta, one of the legati in Caesar's army in Gaul. When Ambiorix, a king of the Eburones, was seeking to withdraw him and his colleague Sabinus from winter quarters, Cotta opposed leaving the encampment but finally yielded. The Roman army was drawn into an ambuscade, and both he and his colleague fell.

Arvernii, órum; N. pl. an ancient tribe of Gaul, whose territories lay between the sources of the Aller and Dordogne, branches of the Loire and Garonne. The district is now Auvergne. The name is from ar or ol, "high;" and vern (verann), "country" or "region."

Atrèbates, um; N. m. pl. the Atrébates, a native of Gallia Belgica of high renown for valor. Their territory lay S. E. from that of the Morini and S. W. from that of the Nervii, answering to the modern Artois in the Department du Pas de Calais. Their chief town was Nemetacum (now Arras, or as the Flemings calls it, Atrrecht).

Auleri, órum; N. m. pl. the Auleri, a general term applied to four different tribes in Gaul:

(1) Auleri Brannoni, clients of the Aeduli, whose territory lay between the latter and the Sequani, and corresponded to the modern Brière.

(2) Auleri Cenomanni: N. W. from the former, above the Anacis and Turones; and west of the Carnutes, their country corresponded to the modern Department de la Sarthe. Their capital was Sulindunum, afterwards Cenomannia, now Maças.

(3) Auleri Eburones: often called simply Eburones, N. W. of the Carnutes along the west bank of the Sequana (Seine), above Lucetia (Paris). Their chief town was Mediolanum, afterwards Eburones, now Evreux.

(4) Auleri Diabletines, north-west of the Cenomanni, their chief town was Mediolanum, afterwards Diabluntes (now Jablecs).

Axôna, ae; N. m. Axona, a river of Gaul, passing through the country of the Remi. It is now called Aisne. It flows S. W. joins the Isara (Isère), and both fall into the Sequana (Seine).

B.

Baculus, i; N. m. Publius Sextius Baculus, a centurion of the first rank in the army of Caesar, who on several occasions distinguished himself for his valour (B. II., C. xxv.; B. III., C. v.; B. VI., C. xxxvii.).

Baleares, um; N. m. pl. A name given to the people of the islands of Majorca and Minorca off the coast of Spain. The name was also applied to the islands themselves. The word is probably from ballein, "to throw" or "shoot" and referred to the skill of the people in the use of the sling or the arrow.

Belgae, órum; N. m. pl. A people of Ancient Gaul, separated from the Celtae in the time of Caesar by the Rivers Matona (Marne) and Sequana (Seine).
PROPER NAMES.*

139

**Bellônací, órum; N. masc. pl.: the Bellovací, a powerful nation of the Belgæ, to the north of the Parisii. Their capital was Caesaronacús, afterwards Bellovaci, now Beauvais.**

**Bibracte, is; N. n.: a large town of the Aedui in Gaul on the Arroux, one of the tributaries of the Loire. It was afterwards called Augustobonum, which name still remains in the modern Autun.**

**Bibrax, actis; N. n.: Bibrax, a town of the Remi, eight miles from the Axona, now Aitone. Some say it corresponds to the modern Bray, others to Braçere, others to Bêtre.**

**Bituriges, um; N. m. pl.: a name given to two nations of Gaul:**

1. **Bituriges Cubi, a people of Gallia Celtica, west of the Aedui, their chief city was Avaricum, afterwards Bituriges, (now Bourges), and their territory corresponded to a part of the modern Berry and Bourbonnais, in the Department du Cher et de l'Indre.**

2. **Bituriges Vivisci were situated near the mouth of the Gurunna (Garonne) and their capital was Burgidala (now Bordeaux).**

**Bodognátus, ò; N. m.: a leader of the Nervii in the attack made by Caesar.**

**Boi, órum; N. m. pl.: a people of Celtic Gaul, who dwelt on the waters of the Soliac. From Gaul they passed into Germany and settled in the present Bohemia, a corruption of Boileheim, i.e., the residence of the Boi. They afterwards went to Bavia, a corruption of Boavia. Their name means "the terrible ones," from Celtic bo "fear."

**Bratuspantium, ò; N. n.: a town of the Bellovací, near the village of Gratepeuches, between Bretteuil and Monlignon.**

**Britannia, as; N. f.: the island of Great Britain.**

C.

**Cabûrus, ò; N. m.: Caius Valerius Cabûrus, a Gallic chieftain who obtained the right of Roman citizenship (civitas). He is afterwards mentioned as holding the supreme power among the Helvii (B. VII., C. lxxv.).**

**Caerôesi, órum; N. m. pl.: the Caerôesi, a people of Gallia Belgica, between the Treveri and the river Mosa (Meuse), who along with the Condurzi, Eburos, and Paenani went under the general term of the Germans. According to some the name still exists in the little river Chiers, between Mouson and Sedan. (B. II., C. IV.)**

**Caesar, òris; N. m.: Caius Julius Caesar: see Introduction.**

**Càtius, ò; N. m.: a Roman praenomen.**

**Calâtii, órum, also Calætii, turn; N. pl.: the Calatii or Calætii, a people of Gallia Belgica. They probably occupied the district not far from the neighbourhood of the modern Rouen.**

**Càrnutæs, um; N. pl.: the Carnutæs, a nation of Gaul, between the Sequana (Seine) and the Liger (Loire) and west of the Parisii. They were clients of the Remi. Their territory was the chief seat of the Druids, who held there their courts of justice. Their chief town was Autricum (now Chartres): B. II., C. xxxv.; B. V., C. xxv., xxxix., liv., etc.**

**Càssius, L.; N. m.: Lucius Cassius was consul 107 B.C. In that year a coalition was formed of the Cimbri and Teutones. After devastating Gaul, they united with the Helvetii and resolved to attack the Roman Provincia at several points. The Helvetian tribe Tigurtian under Divico attacked the territory of the Allobroges by the bridge of Geneva and the ford of the Rhone. The rest of the Helvetii moved south. The Romans divided their forces. Cassius, the consul, hastened to Geneva, while his legatus, Scaurus, moved against the combined horde of Cimbri and Teutones. Both commanders were unfortunate. Cassius and his army were cut to pieces on the borders of Lake Lemannus (Geneva), while Scaurus was defeated and taken prisoner.**

**Castoris, ò; N. m.: a chief of the Sequani, on whom Orgetorix prevailed to seize the supreme power in his native State.**
Catumantoloedis, i; N. m.: the father of Castius.

Caturniges, um; N. m. pl.: a Gallic nation dwelling among the Cottian Alps. Their capital was Caturniges, traces of which are still to be found at Churanis, between (Gap and Embrun) in the department of des Hautes-Alpes.

Celtae, árnum; N. m. pl.: one of the tribes that inhabited Ancient Gaul. The word is derived either from cellt or cellulach, "an inhabitant of the forest," or from the root celt, "high;" (cp. celts, colonnus) hence Celtae means "highlanders."

Centrones, um; N. m. pl.: a people of Gaul who dwelt among the Alpes Graiae. They were defeated by Caesar in several battles. Their chief town was Forum Claudia Centonum (now Centron).

Cimbérius, i; N. m.: Cimberius, a brother of Nasua, who along with the latter was joint commander of the Suevi when they were endeavoring to cross the Rhine and form a junction with Ariovistus. When the German princes were overthrown they retreated (B. I., C. xxxvii).

Cimbrí, órnum; N. pl. m.: a people of Central Europe who invaded the Roman empire in the time of Marius. They were a branch of the Celtic tribe. They are supposed to have had their origin in the Cimbric Chersonese (Jutland).

Considius, i; N. m.; Publius Considius was an officer in Caesar's army. He was employed in the war against the Helvetii.

Condrusi, órnum; N. m. pl.; the Condrii, a people of Gallia Belgica, on the right bank of the Meuse (Muse), in the district of the modern Namur and Liege.

Cotta, ae; N. m.: Lucius Arunculeius Cotta: see Arunculeius.

Cnélus, i; N. m.: Cneius, a Roman praenomen.

Crassus, i; N. m.; M. Licinius Crassus, surnamed Divus, was a member of the first triumvirate. He was noted for his enormous wealth. At Carrhae he fell in battle against the Parthians.

Crôtho, um; N. m. pl.; the Criotes: the inhabitants of Crete (now Candia), an island in the Eastern part of the Mediterranean Sea, celebrated for their skill in archery.

Curiosolitae, árnum; N. m. pl.; the Curiosolitae, an Armorican nation in Gaul, north of the Veneti and northwest of the Redones. They occupied the district of the modern St. Malo, between Dinant and Lambelle, in Brittany (B. II., C. xxxiv).

D.

Divico, órnum; N. m.: an influential noble among the Helvetii. He was the leader of the embassy sent to Caesar by the Helvetii after their defeat.

Divitiácius, i; N. m.: a leading nobleman of the Aedu, who possessed great influence with Caesar in consequence of his fidelity and attachment to the Romans.

Dubis, is; N. m.; the Dubis (now the Doubs), was a river of Gaul, rising in the chain of Jura, and falling after a course of sixty leagues into the Arar (now Saône), near Cabillonum (now Chalon): B. I., C. xxxiv.

Dumnorix, igis; N. m.: a powerful and ambitious chieftain of the Aedu, and brother of Divitiácius. He was disaffected towards Caesar and the Romans, and when the former was on the point of setting out to Britain, and had ordered Dumnorix to accompany him, the Aeduian on a sudden marched away with his cavalry. He was overtaken and slain.

E.

Eburones, um; N. pl. m.; the Eburones, a nation of Gallia Belgica, to the S. W. of the Ubil. Caesar mentions them as Germans. Their territory lay on both sides of the Meuse (Muse), from the modern Liége to Azé-la-Chapelle. Their chief town was Aduatuca (B. II., C. iv).

F.

Flaccus, i; N. m.: Flaccus, a Roman praenomen.
PROPER NAMES.

G.

Gabinius, i; N. m.: Aulus Gabininus was tribune of the Commons 69 B.C., and proposed the lex Gabinia giving Pompey complete charge of the Roman fleet in the war against the pirates.

Galba, ae; N. m.: Caligula, King of the Suessiones, appointed commander of the Belgic forces. After the victory of Caesar, his sons were delivered up to the Roman general as hostages. (B. II. C. iv. xiii.). His name is derived from the German galb, "yellow," or from col, "a calf."

Galli, òrum; N. m. pl.: the inhabitants of Gallia; the Gauls.

Gallia, ae; N. f.: Gaul, corresponding to France and the northern Italian provinces of Piedmont, Venetia, and Lombardy. Gaul was divided in Gallia Transalpina, or Ulterior, or Gaul beyond the Alps, comprising nearly all France; and Gallia Cisalpina, or Interior, or Gaul, this side of the Alps, i.e., Northern Italy.

Garanuma, ae; N. f.: now the Garonne, a river of Gaul. It runs from the Pyrenees (montes Pyrenaei) and empties into the Bay of Biscay (Oceanus Cantabriacus). According to Caesar, the Garunuma separated Aquitania from Gallia Celtica.

Gênavâ, ae; N. f.: a city of the Allobroges, at the Western extremity of Lake Lemmannus (Geneva) on the south bank of the river Rhodanus (Rhône).

Germani, òrum; N. pl. m.: Germans.

Germania, ae; N. f.: a district of Central Europe inhabited by the Germans. The word is probably from either (1) wern, "war" (the Romans softening the w to g) and man, "a man," so the Germani means "warriors," or (2) from the Celtic gorrh, "war," and mann, "a man." Other derivations are given.

Graecus, a, um; adj.: Greek, a name given to an inhabitant of Greece, a country of Southern Europe.

Graulocêll, òrum; N. pl. m.: a tribe of Gaul dwelling near the Alps.

H.

Harîdes, um; N. pl. m.: a German tribe, in the vicinity of the Marcomanni, between the Rhine and the head waters of the river Danube. This district was in the vicinity of the present cities of Rothweil and Furstenberg.

Helvôtis, a, um; adj.: Helvetian.

Helvôtis, òrum; N. pl. m.: a nation of Gaul conquered by Caesar. It is generally supposed that Helvetia corresponded to modern Switzerland, but the boundaries of the ancient province were of less extent than the modern Switzerland, being bounded on the north by the Rhine and Lake Briantinus (Constance); on the south by the Rhodanus (Rhône) and Lake Lemmannus (Geneva), and on the west by Mt. Jura.

Hispania, ae; N. f.: Spain. The name is derived from a corrupt form of ëxepie, "toward the western land:" op. ëxepos, "the evening star;" vesper, "evening."

I.

Iccius, i; N. m.: Icius, a nobleman of the Remi, sent along with Andocumbiorus on an embassy to acknowledge the submission of their nation to Caesar.

Ilyricum, i; N. n.: Illyricum, the modern district occupied by Dalmatia, Bosnia, Herzegovina.

Itália, ae; N. f.: Italy; a country of Southern Europe.

J.

Jûra, ae; N. f.: a range of mountains extending from the Rhodanus (Rhône) to the Rhine (Rhine) and separating the territory of the Helveti from that of the Sequani. The words is from the Celtic, Jô라, "the domain of God" or "Jupiter."

L.

Labiânus, i; N. m.: Titus Labienus was one of Caesar's lieutenants in the Gallic wars. In the beginning of the civil wars he left Caesar for Pompey. He escaped at Pharsalia, but fell at Munda.
Lätobriges, um; or Latobrigis, örum; N. m. pl.: a people of Belgic Gaul. They extended along the banks of the Rhine, about ninety miles west of Lake Briantinus (Constance).

Lemansus, i; N. m.: now Lake of Geneva, separating the territory of the Helveti from that of Gaul. It is about 45 miles long by 11 wide.

Léuc, örum; the Léuci, a people of Gallia Belgica.

Lingones, um; N. m. pl.: a people of Gaul, whose territories inhabited Mons Vesagus (Voge), and consequently, the source of the Moson (Meuse) and Matrona (Marne). They had a town named also Lingones (now Lancy) and their territory corresponded to the modern department of de la Haute-Marne.

Liscus, i; N. m.: Liscus was chief magistrate or Vergobret of the Aedui, who gave to Caesar information of the conduct and designs of Dumnonirix.

Lucius: Lucius, a Roman praenomen.

M.

Magetobia, ae; N. f.: a town, near which Ariovistus defeated the combined forces of the Gauls. Some say it corresponds to the modern Mouille de Broë, near the village of Pontbaillet; others to Bingium, now Binyen.

Marcomani, örum; the Marcomani, a German people. The word is from German mark: English march: hence the name means march, or, border men.

Marcus: a Roman praenomen.

Marius, i; N. m.: Marcus Marius, a celebrated Roman general, opponent of Sulla. (See Roman History.)

Matrona, ae; N. f.: a river of Gaul, now the Marne, which formed part of the old boundary between Gallia Belgica and Gallia Cottica.

Menapoll, örum; N. m. pl.: the Menapii, a nation of Gallia Belgica, occupying both sides of the lower Rhine. Their fortress was called Castellum Menapiorum (now Kessl) on the Moson (Meuse): B. II., c. iv.

Messala, ae; N. m.: Marcus Valerius Messala was consul along with Marcus Piso B.C. 61.

Metius, i; N. m.: Mettius, a Roman officer in Caesar's army.

Morini, örum; N. m. pl.: the Morini, a tribe of Gallia Belgica, whose territory lay in the district of Calais and Dunkirk, a part of their territory bordering on the sea. The name means "sea people": being derived from the Celtio mar. "the sea": op. Lat. mare.

N.

Namélius, i; N. m.: a Chieftain of the Helvetii, sent along with Verudocitian at the head of an embassy to Caesar.

Nasua, ae; N. m.: Nasua, a chief of the Suevi.

Némétés, um: N. pl. m.: the Némètès, a German tribe, along the west bank of the river Rhine occupying part of the Grand Duchy of Baden. Their chief town was Noviomagus (now Strasbourg).

Nervii, örum; N. pl. m.: the Nervi, a powerful nation of Gallia Belgica, whose territory was N.E. of that of the Atrebates. The river Scaldes (Scheleld) passed through part of their territories. Their chief town was Bassacum (now Basle), which was afterwards supplanted by Cameracum (now Castrum), and Turnacum (now Tournay).

Noreia, ae; N. f.: the capital of Noricum.

Noricum: see Noricum.

Noricum, i; N. n.: a province of the Roman empire, bounded on the north by the Danube, on the west by Vindelicia and Rhaetia, on the east by Pannonia, and on the south by Illyricum and Gallicia Cisalpina. The chief town was Noreia, the capital of Norica or the Norici. It was in days of Caesar besieged by the Boii.

Noricus, a, um; adjective: of or belonging to Noricum.
Nōviodūnum, i; N. m.: Noviodūnum. There were three towns of this name in Gaul: (1) Noviodūnum Sussionum, a town of the Sussiones, now Suisnes; (2) Noviodūnum Aedūrum, belonging to the Aedui, on the banks of Liger (Loire), now Nevers; (3) Noviodūnum Biturigum, a city of the Bituriges, now Neury-sur-Baronjon.

Numidae, drum: 'the Numidians, a people of Northern Africa, employed in the Roman armies as light skirmishers.'

O.

Oak, i; N. m.: the Atlantic Ocean.

Ocolium, i; N. m.: a city among the Cottian Alps; now Uaeae in Piedmont.

Ogerōrix, tios: N. m.: a nobleman among the Helvetians, ranking first, according to Caesar, in birth and riches. Full of ambition, he formed a conspiracy among the nobles and prevailed on his people to seek a country other than their native land. He was chosen to carry out the plans of the conspirators. His conduct fell under suspicion and he was put on trial. By the aid of his retainers he managed to rescue himself, but shortly afterwards died, as was suspected, by his own hand.

Osismi, òrum; N. pl. m.: the Osismi, a people of Gallia Celta, in the N.W. of Gaul. They occupied the part of modern Brittany, around cape Finisterre, in their country was Brivates Portus (now Brest).

P.

P=Publius a Roman praenomen.

Paemāni, òrum; N. pl. m.; the Paemāni, a people of Gallia Belgica, their territory lay on the eastern side of the Mosā (Meuse), not far from the modern Liége: (B. II. c. IV.).

Pedicus, i; N. m.: Quintus Pedicus, a nephew or great-nephew of Caesar. He is spoken of as one of the legates of Caesar: (B. II. c. II.).

Piso, ònis; N. m.: Lucius Piso, consul 61 B.C., with M. Messala.

Piso, òonis; N. m.: Lucius Piso was consul 112 B.C. Five years after he served as lieutenant under the consul Cassius, but was slain, together with him, by the Tugurini. He was ancestor of L. Piso, Caesar's father-in-law.

Piso, ònis; N. m.: Marcus Piso, consul with Messala.

Pyreneae, scil. montes: the Pyrenees, a range of mountains separating Gaul from Spain. The derivation of the word is from the Celtico pyren or pyrem, "a high mountain." From this root may be derived Brenner in the Tyrol; Pyren, in Austria; Fennor, in the Tyrol.

Q.

Q=Quintus a Roman praenomen.

R.

Rauracī, òrum; N. m.: a Gallic tribe above the Helvetians and between the Sequani and the Rhine. Their chief town was Rauracum, afterwards called Augusta Rauracum, and now Augusta, a small village near Basle.

Rēdōnes, òm; N. pl. m.; the Redones, a tribe of Gallia Lugdunensis, occupying the district near the modern Remes.

Rēni, òrum; N. pl. m.; the Rēni, a powerful Gallic nation whose capital was Dūrocoribum, the modern Rheims.

Rhēnus, i; N. m.: the Rhine, rising in the Leopontine Alps, a little above Mt. St. Gothard, in the country of the Grisons. It passes through Lake Briggantinus (Constance), afterwards through Lake Aconitum (Tell), nearly west to Basle (Basel). At this point it flows northwesterly, receiving various tributary streams, till it enters the North Sea. The derivation is from the root suu, "to flow."

Rhōdānus, i; N. m.: the Rhône, a river rising in the Leopontine Alps, not more than two towns from the sources of the Rhone. It flows through Lake Lemanus (Geneva), and flows in a swift current to the Sinus Gallicus (Gulf of Lyons). The word is derived also from the Aryan root suu, "to flow."
Rómánus, m. um : Roman.
Ruténi, őrum ; N. pl. : the Ruteni, a people of Gallia Aquitania.

S.

Sabinus, t ; N. m. : Quantum Titurius Sabinus, one of the legates of Caesar.
Sabis, t. ; N. m. : the Sabis (now Sambre), a river of Gallia Belgica, rising among the Nervi, and joining the Mosella (Meuse) in the territory of the Aquatuci.
Santóni, őrum ; or Santones, um ; N. m. pl. : a people of Gallia Celtica, whose territories lay between the Pictones on the north and the Garunna on the south. Their chief town was Mediolanum, called Santones, now Saintes.
Sedúsii, őrum ; N. pl. m. : the Sedusii : a German tribe, forming part of the army of Ariovistus.
Segúsání, őrum ; N. m. pl. : a people of Gallia Celtica to the south of the Aedui and in whose territory lay the city of Lugdunum (Lyons). The chief town of their tribe was Forum Segusianorum (now Besançon).
Sénóns, um ; N. pl. : the Senones, a people of Gallia Lugdunensis, whose capital was Agendicum (now Leuven).
Séquana, ae ; N. f. : a river of Gaul, rising in the extreme northern part of the territory of the Aedui and falling into the Oceanus Britannicus (English Channel).
Séquánus, a, um ; adj. : a Sequanian. The Sequani were a people of Gallia Celtica. They called in the aid of Ariovistus to aid them against the Aedui. After the defeat of their German allies, they severely felt the power of the Aedui. Caesar, however, restored them to their former power. Their chief town was Vesontio (now Besançon).
Sesúvi, őrum ; N. pl. m. : the Sesuvi, a people of Gallia Celtica, who occupied the modern diocese of Sois.
Süessónes, um ; N. pl. m. : the Sessones, a Gallic people who occupied the district around the modern town of Soissons.
Suéves, a, um ; adj. : of, or belonging to the Suevi, a powerful tribe in Northeastern Germany.
Sulla, ae ; N. m. : Lucius Cornelius Sulla, a celebrated Roman. He served as quaestor to Marius in Africa and afterwards was the great political opponent of his old commander. After gaining the highest offices of the State, he gave up the dictatorship, and died B.C. 79.

T.

Teutónes, um ; also Teutóni. őrum ; N. m. pl. : a name given to a branch of the great Germanic family. Along with the Cimbri they devastated Northern Italy and Gaul from 113 to 102 B.C.
Tigrinus, t, um ; adj. : a canton of the Helvetii, near Lake Zürich.
Titirius : see Sabinus.
Tolóssátés, um ; N. pl. : a people of Aquitania. Their chief town was Tolosa (now Toulouse).
Tibroccii, őrum ; N. pl. m. : the Tibroccii, a people of Germanic origin. Their capital was Bracogocus (now Brum).
Tréveri, őrum ; N. pl. m. : the Treveri, a nation of Gallia Belgica, N.E. of the Rhine, between the Mosa (Meuse) and the Rhenus (Rhine). Their chief city was Augusta Treverorum (now Trier).
Tulingi, őrum ; N. pl. : a German tribe, whose territories lay to the north of the Helvetii. The modern Stuhlingen marks the site of the ancient capital.
Turónes, um ; N. pl. m. : the Turones, a powerful nation of Gallia Celtica, which lay along the banks of the Liger (Loire). Their capital was Caesarodunum, afterwards Tours, (now Tours.)
V.  

**Vālērius, i**; N. m.: *Valerius*: a Roman praenomen.  

**Vangiones, um**; N. pl. m.: *the Vangiones*: a German people on the Rhine in the neighbourhood of the modern Worms.  

**Vēlōcasses, ium**; N. pl. m.: *the Velocasses*, also called *Bellocassii*: a people of Gallia Belgica. Their chief town was Rotomagus (now Rouen) on the north bank of the Sequana (Seine).  

**Vēnēti, ōrum**; N. pl. m.: *the Veneti*: a people of Gallia Cisalpina, in the district of modern Venetia.  

**Veromandūl, ōrum**; N. pl. m.: *the Veromandui*: a people of Gallia Belgica. Their chief town was Augusta Veromanduorum (now St. Quentin), in the old division of France called Veromandois.  

**Vērūdoctius, i**; N. m.: a chief of the Helvetii, sent along with Nameius was at the head of an embassy to Caesar. Their object was to request permission to march through the Roman province.  

**Voctio, ōnis**; N. m.: *Voctio*: a king of Noricum: whose sister was a wife of Ariovistus.  

**Vōcontii, ōrum**; N. m. pl.: a tribe of Southern Gaul, lying to the east of the Rhone. Their chief town was Dea (now Die).
**ABBREVIATIONS.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Abbreviation</th>
<th>Full Form</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>a. or act.</td>
<td>active</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>abl.</td>
<td>ablative</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>acc.</td>
<td>accusative</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>acc, to</td>
<td>according to</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>adj.</td>
<td>adjective</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>adv.</td>
<td>adverb</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a· 0·um</td>
<td>with</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cf. = confer.</td>
<td>compare</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>comm. gen.</td>
<td>common gender</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>comp.</td>
<td>comparative degree</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>conj.</td>
<td>conjunction</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>contr.</td>
<td>contracted</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dat.</td>
<td>dative</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>def. defect.</td>
<td>defective</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dem. demonstr.</td>
<td>demonstrative</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dep.</td>
<td>deponent</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>desid.</td>
<td>desinatal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dissyll.</td>
<td>dissyllabic</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>esp.</td>
<td>especially</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>etym.</td>
<td>etymology</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>f.</td>
<td>feminine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>folld.</td>
<td>followed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fr.</td>
<td>frequentative</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>freq.</td>
<td>future</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gen.</td>
<td>genitive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gov.</td>
<td>governing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gr.</td>
<td>Greek</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>imperf.</td>
<td>imperfect</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>incho.</td>
<td>inchoative</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ind. or indic.</td>
<td>indicant</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>indecl.</td>
<td>indeclinable</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>indef.</td>
<td>indefinite</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>inf. or infin.</td>
<td>infinitive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>intens.</td>
<td>intensive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>interj.</td>
<td>interjection</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>interrog.</td>
<td>interrogative</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>irr. or irreg.</td>
<td>irregular</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>m.</td>
<td>masculine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n. or neut.</td>
<td>neuter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nom.</td>
<td>nominative</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>num.</td>
<td>numeral</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>obsol.</td>
<td>obsolete</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ord.</td>
<td>ordinal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>P. or part.</td>
<td>participle</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pa.</td>
<td>participial adj</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pass.</td>
<td>passive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>perf.</td>
<td>perfect</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pers.</td>
<td>person, personal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pluperf.</td>
<td>pluperfect</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>plur.</td>
<td>plural</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pos.</td>
<td>positive degree</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>poss.</td>
<td>possessive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>prep.</td>
<td>preposition</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pres.</td>
<td>present</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>prob.</td>
<td>probably</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pron.</td>
<td>pronoun</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rel.</td>
<td>relative</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sans.</td>
<td>Sanscrit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>semi-dep.</td>
<td>semi-deponent</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sing.</td>
<td>singular</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>subj.</td>
<td>subjunctive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sup.</td>
<td>superlative</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>trisyl.</td>
<td>trisyllabic</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>t. t.</td>
<td>technical term</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>unconstr.</td>
<td>uncontracted</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>v. a.</td>
<td>verb active</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>v. dep.</td>
<td>verb deponent</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>v. n.</td>
<td>verb neuter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>voc.</td>
<td>vocative</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>=</td>
<td>equal to</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

N.B.—The figures before v.a., v.dep., and v.n. denote the conjugation of the verb.
Where the etymology is not given, the word is of very uncertain or unknown origin.
Such forms and meanings of words, as do not belong to the text are not inserted in the Vocabulary.

146
# VOCABULARY.

**A.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Term</th>
<th>Definition</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ab (ā), prep. gov. abl. [akin to Gk. ἀπό: Eng. &quot;off&quot;] From; in the direction of; on; by.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>abs-ens, entis. Pa. [abs-sum, &quot;to be absent&quot;] Absent.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ac-cúso, āvi, stum, āre, 1. v. a. [for ad-caus-ō; fr. ād, &quot;to;&quot; caus-a, &quot;a judicial process&quot;] To bring to trial, chide, blame.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ac-er, ācris, ācre, adj. [root ac, &quot;sharp&quot;] op. acuo, acus; àkeri; Eng. edge] Sharp, fierce.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ac-ervus, ervi, m. [usually referred to root ac, &quot;to make pointed, to point&quot;] A heap.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ac-cipio, ceci, cessum, cídiere, 3. v. n. (for ad-cédo; fr. ād, &quot;to;&quot; cedo, &quot;to go&quot;) To go to or up to; to draw near, approach; to be added.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>acceptus, a, um, P. perf. pass. of accepio: With Dat. Agreeable, or acceptable, to.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ac-cidó, oldi, non sup., cídere, 3. v. n. [for ad-cidó; fr. ād, &quot;upon;&quot; cedo, &quot;to fall&quot;] To fall out, happen, come to pass.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ac-Diplo, cepi, cipitum, cipère, 3. v. a. [for ad cápio; fr. ād, &quot;to;&quot; cápio, &quot;to take&quot;] To receive.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ac-clivis, e, adj. [for ad-cliv-is; fr. ād, &quot;up, upward;&quot; clivus, &quot;a hill&quot;] Up-hill, inclining or sloping upwards; ascending.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ac-clivitas, itatis, f. [ac-cliv-is, &quot;uphill, ascending&quot;] An acclivity, ascent, rise.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ac-commódo, commódài, commódàtum, commódâre, 1. v. a. [for ad-commôdo; fr. ād, &quot;to;&quot; commódo, &quot;to adjust&quot;] To fit on.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ac-curro, curri and ocurrri, currére, 3. v. n. [for ad-curvo; fr. ād, &quot;to;&quot; curvo, &quot;to run&quot;] With ad: To run to or up to; to hasten up to.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

*Note: The entries are from the 18th century English Glossary, and the terms are categorized alphabetically.*
ad-ministro, ministrāvi, ministrātum, ministrāre, 1. v. a. [ad, "without force;" ministrō, "to serve"] To take in hand, execute, perform.

ad-mirror, mirātus sum, mirāri, 1. v. dep. [ad, "without force;" mirror, "to wonder"] To wonder or be astonished.

ad-mitto, misi, missum, mittēre, 3. v. a. [ad, "to;" mittō, "to allow to go"] Of a horse as Object: To give the reins to.

ādōlescens, antīs, comm. gen. [P. pres. of ādōlescō, "to grow up;" as Subst.] A youth.

ādōlescent-ia, iās, f. [ādōlescens, ādōlescens-īs] Youth.

ādōrīor, ortus sum, ārīri, 4. v. dep. [ād, "against;" ārīor, "to rise"] To attack, assault, assail.

a-dsci-sco, vī, tum, secrē, 3. v. a. inoperc.: [a-dsci-o, "to take to one's self knowingly; to admit"] To take to one's self; to unite, join.

ad-sum, ō, esse, v. n. [ād, "at;" sum, "to be"] To be present: to be at hand.

adven-tus,īs, m. [adven-īre, "to come to"] Approach, arrival.

ad-ver-sus, sa, sum, adj. [for adversus; fr. advert-ō, "to turn towards"] Opposite, unfavorable, unsuccessful.

ad-verte, vertī, versum, vertēre, 3. v. a. [ād, "towards;" erte, "to turn"] To observe, recognize, perceive by directing the mind towards an object.

ad-sedic-tum, ātūm, ātūre, 3. n. [ad-sedicio, "to build"] A building of any kind.

aegr-ō, adv. [aeger, aegrī, "feeble, sick"] With difficulty or effort; scarcely.

eaqual-īter, adv. [aequal-īs, "equal"] Equally, regularly.

aequ-itas, ātīs, f. [aequus-us, "equal"] Also "just:" Evenness; justice, fairness.

aequo, āvi, ātēm, āre, 1. v. a. [aequus-us, "equal"] To make, or render, equal; to equalize.

aequus, a, um. adj. [root is, "to make like or even;" cp. limō, aequalius; cēro] Equal.

aēs-tas, ātīs, f. [root ē-ī, "to burn;" cp. aeses, aescus; ēsā, ēsēs] Summer.

aēs-timo, tīmāvi, tīmāmum, tīmāre, 1. v. a. [prob. for aer-timo; fr. aēs, aēris, "money"] To reckon, consider.

aestū-ārium, ārii, n. [aestus, uncontr. Gen. aestū-āis, "a tide"] A part of the coast which the sea alternately covers and leaves; a salt marsh, a morass.

aētās, ātis, f. [for aevitas: cp. aevum, aeternus (=ævitermus): Gothic, avis, "time;" German, ewig, "ever;" Gk. aĩōn, ãet, all from root aëv, a lengthened form of i, "to go"] Age, time of life; old age.

aētēs, ātēs, f. [ad aētēs; fr. iēs, "to, for;" to bring] To bring, take, or carry to or up to; to cause, impart.

aētēs, ātēs, f. [for ad-aētēs; fr. aētēs, "to bring"] To bring, take, or carry to or up to; to cause, impart.

aētēs, ātēs, f. [for ad-aētēs; fr. aētēs, "to bring"] To bring, take, or carry to or up to; to cause, impart.

aētēs, ātēs, f. [for ad-aētēs; fr. aētēs, "to bring"] To bring, take, or carry to or up to; to cause, impart.

aētēs, ātēs, f. [for ad-aētēs; fr. aētēs, "to bring"] To bring, take, or carry to or up to; to cause, impart.

aētēs, ātēs, f. [for ad-aētēs; fr. aētēs, "to bring"] To bring, take, or carry to or up to; to cause, impart.

aētēs, ātēs, f. [for ad-aētēs; fr. aētēs, "to bring"] To bring, take, or carry to or up to; to cause, impart.

aētēs, ātēs, f. [for ad-aētēs; fr. aētēs, "to bring"] To bring, take, or carry to or up to; to cause, impart.

aētēs, ātēs, f. [for ad-aētēs; fr. aētēs, "to bring"] To bring, take, or carry to or up to; to cause, impart.
VOCABULARY.

Alliquam-diu, adv. [alliquam (adv.) "in some degree" (only used in connection with diu and multipus) ; diu, "for a long time."] For some long or considerable time.

Alliquid, adv. [adverbial neut. sing. of alliquis] In some degree, to some extent, somewhat.

All-quis, quid, (Gen. alliquis; Dat. allicu; Fem. Sing. and Neut. Plur. not used) indef. pron. subst. [allius, quis] Someone, somebody; something.

Alter: [alius, old form of ali-us] Otherwise, other, differently; in another way.

Alius, f., Ind (Gen.: allus, Dat. alli); adj. [root ali, "to change"] cp. alibi, altius, alter; Gothio, alis, a] H.O. elies (else) Gk. állos, álλα, ál-las] Another, other.—Of many: aliquus ... alius ... alius ... another. The remaining, remainder of.—As Subst.: alli, orum, m. plur. The rest, the others.

Al-o, ti, tum and tum, ere, 3. v. a. (root ali or ou, "to grow") cp. ad-o-li, xo, sub-oi-eso; állo] To nourish, maintain, cherish.

Al-turâ, tum, adj. [see al-o] High, tall; lofty; deep.


Amici-tia, f., f. [amicus] Friendship; a league of amity, alliance between nations.

Am-icus, ius, ium, adj. [am-o, "to love"] Loving, friendly, kind.—As Subst.: A friend.

Am-mito, miui, missum, mittère, 3. v. a. (ali, from mittu, "to let go") To let go.

Amor, oris, m. [am-o, "to love"] Love.

Amplifico, ampli-fico, ampli-co, ampli-us, comp. adv. [adverbial neut. of amplius, "more extensive"] More, further. The adverbs amplius, plus, and minus are often joined to numerals and other words denoting "measure" as mere qualifying adjectives, without influencing the construction.

Amplius, a, um, adj [am (=ambi), "around"] pl-óo, "to fill"] Amplo, extensive; noble, distinguished, illustrious.

An, conj. [prob. a root word] introducing the second half of a disjunctive sentence: Or. — an ... an, whether ... or; see also no.

An-ceps, scinit-is, adj. [for an-cipit-: fr. an (=ambi), "around"]; cipit, scinit-is, "a head"] Two-fold, double, uncertain.


Angustus, ta, tum, adj. [for angor-: fr. angor, "compression"] Narrow, dangerous or critical.

Anim-adverto, adverbi, adverum, advertere, 3. v. a. [animus, "the mind;" adverto, "to turn towards"] To perceive, observe; fold. By Objective clause, to chastise, punish.

Animus, i, m. [root an, "to breathe"] cp. anima; animus Mind, feelings, disposition, courage, heart.

Annus, ni, m. [root am, "to go round"] cp. eros, enavtus; annulus Of time: A year.

Annus, a, um, adj. [annus, "a year"] Yearly, Annual. In adverbial force: Annually.

Ante, adv. and prep.: Adv.: Before, previously:—pauus ante diebus, a few days before. Prep. gov. acc.: Before.

Ante, adv. [prob. for ant-eam; fr. ant-e, "before"]; ear, acc. sing. fem. of pron. is, "this, that"] Formerly, previously, once.

Antiquus, adv. [antiquus, "ancient"] Anciently, of old, in former times.

Antiquus, tuus, i, m. m. antiquum, adj. [ante, "before"] Former, ancient, old.

Appel, ti, tum, ere, 4. v. a. To open.

Aper-tus, ta, tum, adj. [aperto, "to uncover"] Uncovered, exposed. Of places: Open, clear.

Appello, appello, amplif-ico, amplico, amplius, comp. adv. [adverbial neut. of amplius, "more extensive"] More, further. The adverbs amplius, plus, and minus are often joined to numerals and other words denoting "measure" as mere qualifying adjectives, without influencing the construction.

Appropinquus, itatis, f. Nähe, relationship.
### VOCABULARY.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Word</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Arbi-tr-or, atus sum, arj, 1. v. dep.</td>
<td>&quot;one who treats a thing according to his own will; a master&quot;</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| Arbi-tr-um, li, n. | [arbiter, arbitr-, "to hold as true in one's mind; to suppose, deem, consider, regard, think.
| Arbor, oris, f. | [root ar, "high"] A tree. |
| Arma-tura, tura, f. | [arm(a)-o, "to arm"] Armed soldiers or troops; levis armatūra, light-armed soldiers. |
| Arma-women, n. plur. | [root ar, "to fit:" op. armus, articulus, armus; ãrobor, ãrobrum, ãrobrum] Arms, weapons. |
| Arrogate-ter, adv. | [for arrogate-ter; fr. arrogans, arrogant-is, "arrogant"] Arrogantly, presumptuously. |
| Arrogate-latæ, lae f. | [arrogans, arrogant-is, "arrogant"] Arrogance, presumption. |
| Arx, arcis, f. | A citadel. |
| Ascend, ascendi, ascendere, 3. v. n. | [for ad-scend-od; fr. ad, in "augmentative" force; seando, "to mount"] To mount, ascend, climb. |
| Ascendens, sūs, m. | (for ascend-sus; fr. ascend-o, "to ascend") An ascender. |
| At, conj. | But. [akin to Gr. áρη, "but"] |

#### at-que (contr. of) con.] [for ad-que; fr. ad, denoting "addition," quē, "and"] And also; and.—With comparative adjectives or words expressing dissimilarity, difference, contrariety: Than—After words denoting similarity: As, with.

- **at-tengo**, tigi, tactum, tinge, 3. v. a. [for ad-tango; fr. ad, "against;" tango, "to touch"] To touch on, border upon; arrive at, come to, a place.
- **auctoritas**, tētās, f. [auctor, "a producer"] Weight of character, influence, authority.
- **aug-tus, ta, tum, adj.** [for aug-tus; fr. aug-ō, "to increase"] Great, distinguished.
- **audac-, is, ad, auctor-, is, adv.** [audax, audac-cons, "bold"] Boldness.
- **audācius**, see audacter.
- **audac-ter, adv.** [audax, audac-is, "bold"] Boldly.
- **audēs, ausus sum, audūre, 2. v. semi-dep.** To dare, or venture, to do something.
- **audiens, nīs, n. pres. of audio—With Dat.: Obedient to.**
- **audit, o, ī, ītum, 1re, 4. v. a.** ("To give ear to;" hence) To hear [akin to audī (=audī), audīōs, "an ear").
- **aug-ēs, aux, augment, augēre, 2. v. a.** To increase, augment.
- **aut, conj.** Or;—aut...aut, either...or.
- **autem, conj.** But, on the other hand; besides, further, moreover [akin to avē-].
- **auxiliā-tum, li, n.** [prob. from obsol. adj. auxill-ēs, (=augil-is, fr. aug-ēs, "to increase"), "increasing"] Help, aid, assistance, succour: auxiliām ferre, to bring help or succour.—Plur.: Auxiliary troops or forces; auxiliaries.
- **āvēt-is, itae, f. [āvar-us, "avaricious"] Avarice, covetousness.**
- **Δ-vent, verte, versum, vertère, 3. v. a.** [3. "away;" verte, "to turn"] To turn away;—aversus hostis, on enemy (turned away, i.e. with his back towards one, or in retreat.—To turn aside, divert.
- **āvus, i, m.** A grandfather.

#### B.

- **barbarus, i, m.** A barbarian.
- **bellīc-ēus, ës, ës, adj.** [bellus, "warlike"] Very warlike, martial.
- **bellō, ī, ītum, āre, 1. v. n.** [bellum, "war"] To wage war, to war.
- **bellum, ellī, n.** [old form du-ellum; fr. duō, "two"] War, warfare.
Vocabulary.

vortor, fr. To force fr. see circum, to hither fr. circum, fr. KoKuvr, to arco, to (cum), "to fortify" To fortify around, or all round; to secure or protect by fortifications.

circum-sisto, steti, nosu, sustae, 3. v. a. [circum, "around;" duco, "to lead"] To draw around.

circum-ficio, fici, jectum, jloere, 8. v. a. [for circum-ficio; fr. circum, "around;" facio, "to cast"] With Dat. of pers. Objects: To place, or throw, troops, etc., round a city; to surround a city with troops.

circum-munico, munivi, muniam, munire, 4. v. a. [circum, "around;" muno, "to fortify"] To fortify around, or all round; to surround, or anotl, beset.

cis, prep. gov. acc. On this side of.

citer, tra, trum, adj. [for cis-te; fr. cis, "on this side"] On this side, hither.

citorius, us: see citer.

citr-o, adv. [id.] Hirther:—only in connection with ulgro: hither and thither, to and fro.

civitas, labia, f. [city, a citizen] Citizenship; a state, commonwealth.

clamor, dris, m. [clam-o, "to cry out"] Outcry, clamour, shouting, a shout.

clau-do, al, sum. dere. 3. v. a. [root clav, akin to sklave, "to shut"] To shut, shut up; to close, end, finish.—claudere, to close the line of march, i.e., to bring up the rear.


clien, entis, gen. comm. gen. [for claeus, which is also found; fr. clae-o, "to hear;" hence, "to obey"] A dependant, adherent.

cosservare, ἑσερβάω, ἑσερβάω, 1, v. a. [co (=cum), "together;" servare, "to keep"] To keep together, heap up.

cosmico, smi, emptum, émère, 3. v. a. [co (=cum), in "intensive" force; ém, "to buy"] To buy up, buy, buy.

cos, pres. ante-classical, isee, v. def. n. and a. [contr. fr. co-ápio; fr. ce (=cum), in "augmentative" force; ápio, "to lay hold of"] To begin to.

cos-erco, erco, erúsum, eróre, 2. v. a. [for co-erco; fr. ce (=cum), in "intensive" force; arco, "to enclose"] To restrain, hold in check.

cos-gito, gitavi, gitatóum, gitare, 1. v. a. [contr. fr. co-agito; fr. ce (=cum), in "intensive" force; agito, "to put in motion"] To weigh thoroughly in the mind; to ponder, think.

cos-gnoco, gnóvi, gnórum, gnocere, 3. v. a. [ce (=cum), in "augmentative" force; gnoco, (=noso), "to become acquainted with"] To become thoroughly acquainted with, learn, make inquiry about; to investigate.

cosgono, cosgi, cosatum, cosere, 3. v. a. [contr. fr. co-agono; fr. ce (=cum), "together;" ago, "to drive"] To collect, assemble; to force, compel.

cos-hors, tis, f. [ep. xorphos, "an enclosed space;" Lat. horstus, "yard or garden"] A cohort; the tenth part of a Roman legion.

cos-hortatio, tiōnis, f. [cohort(a), or, "to exhort"] An address, exhortation.

cos-horto, hortásum, hortari, 1. v. dep. [co (=cum), in "strengthening" force; hortor, "to exhort"] To exhort, to encourage, animate.

cos-ligaro, ligavi, ligatórum, ligare, 1. v. a. [for con-ligaro; fr. ce (=cum), "together;" ligo, "to bind or fasten"] To pin together by means of something driven through two or more things.

cosllis, is, m. [root cell, "to be high;" ep. celsus, columna; kolóyn] A hill.

cos-löco, locavi, locatórum, locare, 1. v. a. [for con-löco; fr. ce (=cum), in "intensive" force; loco, "to place"] To put, place, or station anywhere; to place a woman in marriage; i.e., to give a woman in marriage.

coslquum, li, n. [coslovor, "to confer with"] A conference.

coslovor, loquutus sum, loqui, 8. v. dep. [for con-lovor; fr. ce (=cum), "together;" loquor, "to talk"] To talk together or with a person; to hold a conference, confer with.

cos-buro, busul, bustum, bůrē, 8. v. a. [com (=cum), in "intensive" force; buxo (=uro), "to burn"] To burn up, consume by fire.

cosmētus, tis, m. [cosmēt(a), "to go to and fro"] Provisions, supplies.

cosmémoro, mémvári, mémvatóum, mémvare, 1. v. a. [com (=cum), in "augmentative" force; mémoro, "to mention"] To make mention of, recount, relate.

cosmêdo, māvī, mēvatum, mēdre, 1. v. a. [com (=cum), in "intensive" force;
mío, "to go") To go, come, travel, etc., frequently to a place.

com- minus, adv. [com (= cum), "together;" manus, "hand"] Hand to hand, in close fight.

committio, mitt, museum, mittâre, 3. v. a. [com (= cum), "together;" mitt, "to cause to go"] Of battle: To engage in, commence. — With Dat.: To trust, intrust. — With ut and Subj.: To give occasion, or cause, that; to perpetrate, commit, do, anything wrong.

commodus, commodus, s. um, adj. [commod-us, "convenient"] Conveniently, suitably, readily.

commod- us, s. um, adj. [commod-us, "convenient"] Conveniently, suitably, readily.

com-món-ésăcio, feci, factum, facère, 3. v. a. [com (= cum), in "augmentative" force; món-ēo, "to cause to think"; (=cum) connecting vowel; ēco, "to make"] To remind forcibly, put in mind, thoroughly.

com-movēo, māvī, mōtūm, movere, 2. v. a. [com (= cum), in "intensive" force; mōvēo, "to move"] To move greatly or thoroughly. — Mentally: To disturb, affect, disquiet. Of a battle: To bring about, force.

com-munio, mūnīvi or mūnī, mūnītum, mūnire, 4. v. a. [com (= cum), in "intensive" force; mūnīo, "to fortify"] To fortify strongly or on all sides.

com-múnis, mūnīe, adj. [com (= cum), "together;" perhaps, mūnī, "serving"] Common, general.

committâ- tion, tionis, f. [commit(a) o, "to change entirely"] A changing, change, alteration.

com-mūtio, mittâvi, mātūtum, mūtâre, 1. v. a. [com (= cum), in "intensive" force; mūto, "to change"] To change, wholly alter.

com-pāro, pārīvi, pārītum, pārâre, 1. v. a. [com (= cum), "together;" pāro, "to bring or put"] To make or get ready, prepare; to acquire, procure.

com-pello, pālī pulsum, pellēre, 3. v. a. [com (= cum), in "augmentative" force; pello, "to drive"] To drive, force the enemy.

com-pēr-fo, l. tum, ire, 4. v. a. [com (= cum), in "augmentative" force; root firr, akin to perior, "to pass through"] To find out accurately; to ascertain.

com-plector, plexus sum, plecti, 3. v. dep. [com (= cum), "with;" plecto, "to entwine"] To embrace, clasp.

com-plēo, plēvi, plētum, plēre, 2. v.a. [com (= cum), in "augmentative" force; -plēo, "to fill"] Sometimes with Abl.: To fill completely or entirely with.

com-plūres, plūra (and sometimes pluria) adj. [com (= cum), in "augmentative" force; plūre, "very many"] Very many, several.

com-porto, portâvi, portâtum, portâre, 1. v. a. [com (= cum), "together;" porto, "to carry"] To carry together, convey, collect.

cōnâ-tes, cōrum, n. plur. (sing. prob. not found) [con(a) or, "to attempt"] Attempts, endeavours, efforts.

cōnât-us, tûs, m. [id.] An attempt, endeavour, effort.

con-cēdo, cessi, cessum, cedère, 3. v. a. [con (= cum), in "augmentative" force; cedē, "to yield"] To grant, concede.

con-cido, cēdī, cēsum, cedere, 3. v. a. [con-caedo; fr con (= cum), in "augmentative" force; caedo, "to cut"] To cut up, slay, kill, destroy.

concili-o, sūvi, sātum, årē, 1. v. a. [concil-ium, "union"] To bring about, procure, gain.

con-cilium, n. n. [for concil-ium; fr con (= cum), in "augmentative" force; concilium, "together;" cal-o, "to call"] A meeting, assembly, council.

con-clāmo, clamāvi, clamātum, clamāre, 1. v. a. [com (= cum), in "intensive" force; clamō, "to cry out"] To cry out aloud; to exclaim, shout out.

con-curro, huri (rarely oscurrui), currüm, currère, 3. v. n. [com (= cum), "together;" curro, "to run"] To run together, or in a body.

con-cur-sus, sūs, m. [for concur-sus; fr concoct-o, "to run together"] A running together.

cond-itio, itis, f. [cond-o, "to put together"] State, or condition, of a person; an agreement, terms.

con-dō, dōnāvi, dōnātum, dōnāre, 1. v. a. [com (= cum), in "augmentative" force; dōnā, "to give" as a present] To forgive, overlook.

con-duco, duxi, ductum, ducère, 3. v. a. [com (= cum), "together;" ducō, "to lead"] To assemble, collect.

confēro, contāli, collāsi, conferre, v. a. irreg. [com (= cum), "together;" fēro, "to bear"] To bring together; to collect, gather; to compare; To bear one's self, etc., i.e. betake one's self.—Of a fault, blame: To ascribe, attribute, to one; lay to the charge of, throw upon one.

confer-tus, ta, tum, adj. [for confer-tus; fr confercio, "to cram or press
close together”) Crowd together, closely packed.

**con-ficio, féci, factum, ficere, 3. v. a.** [for con-ificio; fr. con (=cum), in “augmentative” force; ficio, “to do or make”] To prepare, accomplish.

**con-fido, fíbus sum, fidère, 3. v. n.** semi-dep. [con (=cum), in “intensive” force; fido, “to trust”] With Dat.: To trust.

**con-firm-o, fívi, físum, fíre, 1. v. a.** [con (=cum) in “augmentative” force; firm-us, “strong”] To strengthen, confirm; to encourage; to assert.

**con-fiغوù, flíví, fluctum, flígere, 3. v. n.** [con (=cum), “together;” fligo, “to dash”] To come, or enter, into conflict; to engage, contend, fight.

**con-grediôr, græsus sum, grédi, 3. v. dep.** [for con-gradiôr; fr. con (=cum), “together with;” grádiôr, “to step”] In a friendly sense: To meet with one; In a hostile sense: To engage, come into collision, fight, etc.

**con-jicio, jí, jícum, jícere, 3. v. a.** [for con-jácio; fr. con (=cum), in “augmentative” force; ficio, “to cast”] Of weapons: To hurt, throw, cast. —Of persons: with in catenas; To throw into chains.

**con-jungo, junxi, junctum, juncre, 3. v. a.** [con (=cum), “together;” junco, “to join”] To join together, unite.

**con-jú-rá-tio, tónsis, t. (conjur(a)-o, “to swear together;” hence, “to conspire, plot”) A conspiracy, league.

**con-jú-ro, júravi, júrávi, júratum, 1. v. n.** [con (=cum), “together;” júro, “to swear”] To enter into a confederacy; to combine, unite.

**cónor, átus sum, ári, 1. v. dep. To endeavor, try, attempt.

**con-quiro, quíavi, quístum, quirère, 3. v. a.** [for con-querro; fr. con, in “augmentative” force; quero, “to seek”] To seek after or search out, earnestly or carefully.

**con-sanguin-üs, ës, sum, adj.** [con (=cum), denoting “correspondence;” sanguis, sangüinis, “blood”] Related by blood, akin.—A Subj.: consanguinus, ës, m. A blood relation, kinman.

**con-sisciô, sciivi, scítum, sciscère, 3. v. a.** [con (=cum), in “augmentative” force; sciço, “to decrease”] With mortem sibi: (To decree death to one’s self; i.e.) To kill, or destroy one’s self; to commit suicide.

**con-sol-us, a, um, adj.** [con, “with;” sol-o, “to know”] Conscious.

**con-scribo, scripi, scriptum, scribere, 3. v. a.** [con, “together;” scribo] Of soldiers: To enroll, enlist.

**consens-us, a, um, m.** [for consent-us; fr. consent-ô, “to agree”] Agreement, consent.

**con-sentio, sensi, sensum, sentire, 4. v. n.** [con (=cum), “with;” sentio, “to think”] With cum; To agree, or combine, with; To make common cause with.

**con-séquor, acciputus sum, séquii, 3. v. dep.** [con (=cum), in “augmentative” force; séquor, “to follow”] To follow, follow after.—In a hostile sense: To pursue, to obtain.

**con-servô, servavi, servátum, servâre, 1. v. a.** [con (=cum), in “augmentative” force; servo, “to keep”] To preserve, keep unhurt or alive.

**con-sódo, súdi, sessum, sódere, 3. v. n.** [con (=cum), “together;” sódo, “to sit down”] Of troops: To take one’s station; to encamp; to settle.

**con-sulitum, li, n.** A plan, design; an assembly; a council of war.

**con-similis, similis, adj.** [con (=cum), in “intensive” force; similis, “like”] Altogether, or wholly, like.

**con-sistô, stiti, stítum, stître, 3. v. n.** [con (=cum), in “augmentative” force; sisset, “to set one’s self,” i.e., “to stand”] To take one’s stand; stand still.—Of troops: To take up a position; to halt, make a halt.

**con-sólor, soñatus sum, sólari, 1. v. dep.** [con (=cum), in “augmentative” force; solôr, “to comfort”] To comfort, to console.

**con-spect-us, tús, m.** [con-spl-o-lo] Sight, view.—In conspectu, before the eyes, or in the presence of some one.

**con-spéci, speci, spectum, spóere, 3. v. a.** [for con-spectô; fr. con (=cum), in “augmentative” force; specio, “to see”] To see, behold, observe.

**con-spéci-ôr, átus sum, ári, 1. v. dep.** [for con-spectôr; fr. con (=cum), in “intensive” force; specio, root of specio, “to see”] To see, behold, get a sight of, desery.

**constant-îs, iæ, f.** [for constans constant-is; “standing firm”] Of character: Firmness, steadfastness, constancy.

**constant-îr, adv.** [for constant-îr; fr. constans, constant-is, in force of “uniform”] Uniformly, unanimously, with one voice.

**con-stîtuo, stituli, stítum, stîthère, 3. v. a.** [for con-statû; fr. con (=cum); stakto, “to place”] To draw up an array or fleet in order of battle; to post troops;
VOCABULARY

The, to put, station; to arrange, regulate, set in order; to fix, appoint, to resolve, determine, decide.

conseu-scio, vi, tum, scire, 3. v. n. [consic-o, 'to be accustomed' [To accustomed one's self: In perf. tense: To have accustomed one's self, i.e., to be accustomed or wont.

conseu-tudo, tändissi, f. [for consuetudo; fr consuetus, "accustomed"] custom, habit, usage.

consul, tills, m. A consul: one of the two chief magistrates of the Roman state, chosen annually after the expulsion of the kings.

consulátus, stásis, m. [consul] The office of a consul; the consilium.

consuló, ti, tum, ere, 3. v. n. [consul [-cum], "to take counsel, deliberate, consult."—Impers. Pass. Inf. perf.: consultum esse. That counsel was taken, that it was deliberated.

consul-tum, ti, n. [-cum], "to determine upon" [A resolution, decree.

con-súmo, sumpsi, sumptum. súmère, 3. v. a. [con (-cum), in "intensive" force; sumo, "to take"] To annihilate, destroy, bring to nought, waste.

con-temp-itus, ptá, m. [for contemnitus; fr. contemno, "to despise"] scorn, contempnent.

con-tendo, tendi, tentum, tendère, 3. v. a. and n. [con (-cum), in "augmentative" force; tendo, "to stretch"] To make an effort or endeavour; to strive eagerly after, exert one's self zealously for.

- With accessory notion of hostility: To strive, contend, struggle.

con-tent-tio, túnis, f. [for contend-tio; fr. contento, "to contend"] A contention, contest.

continent-er, adv. [for continent-er; fr. contentus, "continuous"] In time: Continuously, without interruption.

con-tinuéo, ti, tum, timère, 3. v. a. and n. [con (-cum); fr. con (-cum), "together, tendo, "to hold"] Of places: In Pass. To be surrounded, encompassed, or enclosed by; to comprise, occupy; to restrain.

con-tin-tingo, tigi, tactum, tingère, 3. v. a. and n. [for con-tango; fr. con (-cum), in "intensive" force; tango, "to touch"] Act: To touch, reach, extend to.—Neut.: To happen or chance; to fall out, come to pass.

contin-úus, ita, [tum], adj. [contin-i, "to hold together"] Of time: Successive, in succession.

contra, adv. and prep. Adv.: ("Over against; hence) On the other side, on the other hand, in return, in reply; in opposition; on the contrary. Prop. gov. acc.: Against.

con-trah-o, traxi, tractum, trahère, 3. v. a. [con (-cum), "to draw"] To draw, or meet, together; to collect, assemble.

contra-rius, ra, rum, adj. [contra, "over against"] Of places: Lying over against, opposite.

contumélia, ita, f. [contemno, through obsol. adj. contumélis, "swelling greatly"] Insult, affront, contumely.

con-véns, vén, ventum, vénère, 4. v. n. [con (-cum), "together, venio, "to come"] To come, or meet, together; to collect, assemble; to be agreed upon.

conven-tus, tás, m. [conven-ior] An assembly, assembly, meeting; a judicial assembly, a court of justice.

con-vert-o, verti, versusum, vertère, 3. v. a. [con (-cum), in "augmentative" force; verto, "to turn"] To turn or turn round; to wheel round.—Pass. in reflexive forces: To turn one's self round, turn round; change.

con-vinc-o, vicidi, victum, vincère, 3. v. a. [con (-cum), in "intensive" force; vincro, "to conquer", hence, "to st. w. or prove conclusively"] To show, or prove, very conclusively.

con-voc-o, vocávi, vocátum, vocáre, 4. v. a. [con (-cum), "together, voco, "to call"] To call together; to convene, convoke, summon.


copi-ósus, osa, osum, adj. [copi-o, "plenty"] Furnished abundantly, or well supplied with a thing; abounding in wealth, rich.

cor-ám, adv. [contr. fr. cor-am; fr. co (-cum), in "augmentative" force; os, oris, "the face"] Personally, in person.

cornu, Ús, n. [root car, "hard"] op. carina, calculus; képas, kápous] Of an army: A wing.

corpus, Ús, ois, n. [root car or car, "to make"] The body.

cort-ex, leis, m. and f. The bark of trees.

cré-ber, bra, brum, adj. [car, root of cre-o-sco, "to increase; hence] Frequent, numerous.

cré-do, didi, ditum, dére, 3. v. a. To believe, to think, suppose.
crēmo, āvi, ātum, āre, 1 v. a. [root car-, "to burn"] To burn.

crē-o, āvi, ātum, āre, 1 v. a. [root car-, "to make"] To make a person untoward, e.g., king, consul; to create, copycat.

crē-so, vi, tūm, scōre, 3 v. n. [akin to crē] To increase, to become greater or larger.

crē-nis, nis, m. [for crēnis; fr. car-, root of cresco-, "to grow"] The hair of the head.

crūciā-tus, tās, m. [cruc(ē)-o, "to torture"] Torture.

crūdē-lis, itālis, [crūdē-īs, "cruel!" Cruelty.

crūdē-liter, adv. [id.] Cruelly, with cruelty.

cul-tus, tūs, m. [for col-tus; fr. col-o, "to cultivate"] Mode, or manner, of living.

cum, prep. gov. abl.; [op. Greek oun, on] With, together with.—In composition (also com, co): With, together.—In "augmentative," or "intensive" force, to denote completeness, with a high degree. With personal pronouns cum always follows its case, e.g., secum, nubicem, etc., and usually so with relative pronouns, e.g., qui-buscum.

cunctus, a, um, (mostly plur. cuncti, ae, a) adj. [contr. fr. conjunctus; fr. conjungō, "to join together" or convince tus, "bound together"] All, the whole.

cupid-e, adv. [cupidus, "eager"] Eagerly, zealously, passionately.—Comp.: Too eagerly.

 cupid-ītus, itātis, f. [id.] A longing, desire, eagerness.


cupid-īo, īvi or īvi, ātum, āre, 3 v. n. With Dat.: To wish well to; to be favourably disposed towards.

cur- (anciently quer-), adv. [contracted acc. to some, fr. quare (＝quare); acc. to others, fr. cur rel] Why; wherefore.

curr-e, ae, f. [for coe-ra; fr. coer-o, old form of quer-e, "to seek"] Care, solicitude, attention.

curr-o, āvi, ātum, āre, 1 v. a. [curr-ae, "care"] With Acc. and Gerundive: To take care, order, or cause, that something be done.

curr-sus, sus, m. [for curr-sus; fr. curr-o, "to run"] A running, speed, course:—currsum adequare, (to make equal their running (i.e.) to keep up with the pace of the horses.

curs-tos, tōdis, comm. gen. [root sou, "to cover"] ep. soltós, solía; scūtum] A guard, keeper.

custōdi-a, ae, f. [custōdi-o, "to guard"] A guard, a protecting force.

custōdi-ātus, tātus, m. [custōd-īs, "guardian!" Custody.

custōdi-ātus, tātis, [custōd-īa, "guardian!" Custody.

custōdi-a, ae, f. [custōdi-o, "to guard"] A guard, a protecting force.

custōdi-ātus, tātis, m. [custōd-īs, "guardian!" Custody.

custōdi-a, ae, f. [custōdi-o, "to guard"] A guard, a protecting force.

custōdi-ātus, tātus, m. [custōd-īs, "guardian!" Custody.

custōdi-a, ae, f. [custōdi-o, "to guard"] A guard, a protecting force.

custōdi-ātus, tātis, [custōd-īa, "guardian!" Custody.

custōdi-a, ae, f. [custōdi-o, "to guard"] A guard, a protecting force.

custōdi-ātus, tātus, m. [custōd-īs, "guardian!" Custody.

custōdi-a, ae, f. [custōdi-o, "to guard"] A guard, a protecting force.

custōdi-ātus, tātis, [custōd-īa, "guardian!" Custody.

custōdi-a, ae, f. [custōdi-o, "to guard"] A guard, a protecting force.

custōdi-ātus, tātus, m. [custōd-īs, "guardian!" Custody.

custōdi-a, ae, f. [custōdi-o, "to guard"] A guard, a protecting force.

custōdi-ātus, tātis, [custōd-īa, "guardian!" Custody.

custōdi-a, ae, f. [custōdi-o, "to guard"] A guard, a protecting force.

custōdi-ātus, tātus, m. [custōd-īs, "guardian!" Custody.

custōdi-a, ae, f. [custōdi-o, "to guard"] A guard, a protecting force.

custōdi-ātus, tātis, [custōd-īa, "guardian!" Custody.

custōdi-a, ae, f. [custōdi-o, "to guard"] A guard, a protecting force.

custōdi-ātus, tātus, m. [custōd-īs, "guardian!" Custody.

custōdi-a, ae, f. [custōdi-o, "to guard"] A guard, a protecting force.

custōdi-ātus, tātis, [custōd-īa, "guardian!" Custody.

custōdi-a, ae, f. [custōdi-o, "to guard"] A guard, a protecting force.

custōdi-ātus, tātus, m. [custōd-īs, "guardian!" Custody.

custōdi-a, ae, f. [custōdi-o, "to guard"] A guard, a protecting force.

custōdi-ātus, tātis, [custōd-īa, "guardian!" Custody.

custōdi-a, ae, f. [custōdi-o, "to guard"] A guard, a protecting force.

custōdi-ātus, tātus, m. [custōd-īs, "guardian!" Custody.

custōdi-a, ae, f. [custōdi-o, "to guard"] A guard, a protecting force.

custōdi-ātus, tātis, [custōd-īa, "guardian!" Custody.
run"  To run down; to lead or draw off, withdraw.

dé-fatigado, fatigávi, táfígátum, fatí-gäre, 1. v. a. [dé, denoting "completeness"] fatigó, "to weary"  To weary thoroughly, weary out, exhaust.

dé-fendo, fendi, fensum, fendère, 3. v. a. [dé, "away from"; obsol. fendo, "to strike" ] To ward off; to protect, defend.

dé-fensor, series, m. [for defend-sor; fr. dé-fendo, "to defend" ] A defending, defense.

dé-ficisci, fessus sum, faticáci, 3. v. dep. [for déficisci; fr. dé, in "strengthening" force; faticáci, "to grow faint" ] To become quite faint or weary. In perf. tenses: To be quite faint or weary; to be wearied out or exhausted.

dé-ficio, fici, fectum, fícère, 3. v. n. [for déficio; fr. dé, "away from"; fícère, "to make" ] Of supplies: To fall, fall short, be wanting. Of persons, etc., to revolt.

dé-inde (triavl.), adv. [dé, "from"; inde, "thence"] Of time: In the next place, afterwards, after that.

dé-jec-tus, tús, m. [for déjac-tus, fr. déjicio, "to throw or cast down"; through dé, "down"; Jac, root of jácilo] A dejectly, sloping ground, a slope.

dé-ficio, fici, fectum, fícère, 3. v. a. [for déficio; fr. dé, "down"; jácilo, "to throw"; or cast down; -dejecti estas pe (thrown down from that hope; i.e.) disappointed in that hope.

dé-leo, evés, étum, ére, 2. v. a. To put an end to, efface the recollection of, blot out.

dé-libéro, liberávi, liberárum, liberáre, 1. v. a. [for dé-libro; fr. dé, in "strengthening" force; libro, "to poise or weigh" ] To weigh well in one's mind; to ponder, consider; déliberate;

dé-ligó, ligávi, ligátum, ligáre, 1. v. a. [dé, "down"; ligá, "to bind" ] To bind down; to bind fast, fasten.

dé-ligo, ligí, lectum, ligère, 3. v. a. [for dé-ligo; fr. dé, "out"; ligó, "to choose" ] To choose out, select, pick out.

dé-minuto, miní, miníatum, miníre, 3. v. a. [dé, in "strengthening" force; minito, "to make less" ] To make less; to lessen, diminish.

démisius, a, um, p. perf. pass. of démitto] Of localities: Low-lying, low. Of the head: Bowed down, drooping.

dé-mittó, missum, missum, militére, 3. v. a. [dé, "down"; missí, "to let go" ] To let, or allow, to go down; to lower, let fall.

dé-monstrávi, monstrávó, monstrátum, monstráre, 1. v. a. [dé, in "augmentative" force; monstró, "to show" ] To show, point out.


dé-négo, négávi, négátum, négáre, 1. v. a. [dé, in "intensive" force; négo, "to deny" ] To refuse.


dé-níque, adv. [fr. dé-nique; fr. dén, "then", "and", "and"] At length, at last.

dé-nunciat, nuncitávi, nuncitátum, nuncitáre, 1. v. a. [dé, "from"; nuncit, "to send a message" ] To intimate, announce; to menace, threaten.

dé-perdó, perdúli, perdítum, perdère, 3. v. a. [dé, denoting "completeness"; perdo, "to lose" ] To lose entirely or completely.

dé-póno, pósul, pósitum, pónère, 3. v. a. [dé, "down"; póno, "to put" ] To put or lay down in a place; to lay aside.

dé-poáilo, póplavá, póplátum, pópláre, 1. v. a. [dé, in "strengthening" force; populo, "to rage" ] To rage utterly; to lay waste.

dé-popóli, pópóli, pópóli, pópólitum, pópólitum, pópólitum, pópólitum, 1. v. a. [dé, in "strengthening" force; popóli, "to rage" ] To rage utterly; to lay waste.

dé-précá-tor, térís, m. (deprec(é)-or, "to intercede with") An intercessor. To intercessor, (he being an intercessor, i.e.) at his intercession.

dé-précátor, précásum, préçári; 1. v. dep. [dé, in "strengthening" force; précor, "to pray" ] To pray, entreat, beg, or beseech earnestly; to pray for.

dé-seó, serdi, seritum, serítre, 3. v. p. [dé, in "negative" force; sóeo, "to join"] To forsake, abandon, desert.

dé-signo, signávi, signátum, signáre, 1. v. a. [dé, "out"; signo, "to mark" ] To denote, point out or at.

dé-sistó, stítí, stítum, stítre, 3. v. n. [dé, "away from"; stito, "to set one's self away from"; stítum, "self"; stítre, "self"; stito, "set one's self away from"; stítum, "self"] To set one's self away from
VOCABULARY.

despectus, tás, m. [despecto, "to look down upon"; de, down; specto, "to look at"] A view, prospect from higher ground.

déspéro, sperávi, spérátum, spérære, 1. v. a. [dé, denoting "reversal" spéro, "to hope"] To give up or lose hope, to despair.

déspelo, spectui, spectum, spectre, 3. v. a. [for de-specio; fr. dé, "down"; specio, "to look at"] To disdain, contempt, despise.

dés-spélio, spolliavi, spolliatum, spoliiare, 1. v. a. [dé, in "strengthening" force; spolio, "to spoil"] With Abl.: To despoil or deprive of.

déstittuo, stütiali, stitätum, stätäre, 3. v. a. [for de-statuio; fr. dé, "away from" statum, "to put" or "place"] To forsake, abandon, desert.

dé-stringo, struxi, strictum, stringere, 3. v. a. [dé, in "strengthening" force; stringo, "to draw" a sword from the sheath] To unsheathe, draw out.

dé-sum, fui, esse, v. n. [dé, "away from"; sum, "to be"] To be wanting, to fail.

dés-super, adv. [de, "from"; super, "above"] From above.


désterréo, terríli, terrítum, terrére, 2. v. a. [dé, "away from"; terréo, "to frighten"] To deter, discourage, hinder, prevent.

dé-tráho, traxi, tractum, tráhibo, 3. v. a. [dé, "away"; trahó, "to draw"] To withdraw, remove, take away.

dé-tráimentum, menti, n. [déttéro, "to rub off"] de, "from"; tero, "to rub"] Loss, hurt, damage, injury, detriment.

déus, i, m. A god, deity [akin to Gr. théos, and Sans. deva, "a god"]

dé-vénio, vexi, vectum, véniano, 3. v. a. [dé, "down" or "away"; vénio, "to come"] To carry down or away.

dé-vénio, vénio, ventum, vénire, 4. v. n. [dé, "down"; vénio, "to come"] To come down.

dex-tor, tra, trum, adj. [root dexe, "to receive" or dink, "to point out"; cp. dēpyum, dēxynum disco, index] To, or on the right side: right. As Subst.: dextera, ae, f. The right hand.

dico, dixi, dictum, dicoere, 3. v. a. [see dexter] To say; state, report; appoint.

- Of a cause: To plead.

dictio, tônias, t. [dico, "to speak"] A pleading or defending.

dictum, u. n. [dico, "to speak"] In order, command.

dies, di, m. (in sing. sometimes l.) [root dív, "to shine"; cp. divus, di-, for; O.H.G. zio; Lith. divas- deus] A day, or in the day.

différo, distill, dilátum, differre, v. n. [for dis-fero; fr. dis, "apart"; fero, "to carry"] To differ, be different.

dif-fiellis, fiele, adj. [for dis-féllis; fr. dis, in "negative" force; delictis, "easy"] Not easy, hard, difficult.

difficultas, tatis, f. [difficil, old form of difficil-is, "difficult"] A difficulty, difficult circumstance.

diligenter, adv. [for diligent-ter, fr. diligens, diligent-is, "diligent"] Diligently, carefully.

dignitas, tatis, f. [dignus, "worthy"] Dignity.

diligentia, lae, f. [diligens, diligent-is, "diligent"] Carefulness, attentiveness, earnestness, diligence.

dimétior, mensus sum, metri, 4. v. dep. [di (=dis), "apart"; metior, "to measure"] To measure out.

dimico, milavi or mileni, milium, moio, i. v. n. [di (=dis), "greatly"; mico, "to move to and fro"] To fight, combat.

di mitto, mihi, missum, mittère, 3. v. a. [di (=dis), "apart"; mitto, "to send"] To send away, dismiss.

dirigo, ēmi, emptum, Imere, 3. v. a. [for dis-empo; fr. dis, "apart"; emo, "to take"] Of a conference: To break up, put an end to.

diriþo, ripi, repum, ripère, 3. v. a. [for di-rapio; fr. di (=dis), "apart"; ripo, "to tear, etc."] To plunder.

dis-cedo, cessi, cessum, cedere, 3. v. a. [di, "apart"; cedo, "to go"] To go away, depart, withdraw. >

discus-sus, sus, m. [for discus-s; fr. disco, "apart"; depart, "to depart"] A departing, departure.

disciplina, leae, f. [for disciplin-a; fr. disciplin-us, "a learner"] Discipline.

disco, didici, no sup., discère, 3. v. a. [same root as dexter] To learn.

discifcio, jaci, jecutum, jecere, 3. v. a. [for dis-ko; fr. dis, "assumer"; jaco, "to throw"] To disperse, scatter, rout.

dis-spergo, speri, spersum, spergere, 3. v. a. [for dis-spergo; fr. di (=dis), "in different directions"; spago, "to scat-
to scatter in different directions; to disperse.

dis-pono, posui, posatum, poneo, 3. v. a. [dit., "in different directions"]; poneo, "to place".] Of troops: To set in order, draw up, post.

dis-sipó, sipavi, sippatum, spere, 1. v. a. [dit., "apart"; obsol. sipo, "to cast, throw".] Military t.t.: To disperse, route, put to flight.

dis-tinö, taini, tentum, tinere, 2. v.a. [for dis-teneo; fr. die, "away off;" teneo, "to hold;"] To keep at a distance, of or away; to hinder, detain.

di-tio, tonis, f. [prob. for de-tio; fr. do, "to put," through root da] With reference to the person upon whom one places one's self: Dominating, sway, authority.

diu, adv. [Adverbial Abl. of obsol. dius (=dies), "a day." For a long time; a long while.

diā-turnitas, itatis, f. [diā-turn-us, "of long duration"] Long duration or continuance; length.

diū-turnus, turna, turnum, adj. [diu, "a long while"] Of long duration; long, prolonged.

diū-urnus, urna, urnum, adj. [diēs, "a day"] Of, or belonging to, the day; by day.

div-er sus, as, sum, adj. [for diver-sus; fr. diverto, "to turn away," also "to turn in a different direction."] Separate, apart from others; different, various.

div-es, itis, adj. [root uv, "to shine," see dies] Rich, wealthy. Comp.: divitior and ditior; Sup.: divitissimus and dititissimus.

di-vído, visi, visum, videre, 3. v. a. [dit (=dis), "apart"; root vin, "to part asunder;" fr. viduus, vidua, English, widow.] To divide, separate.

di-vinus, ma, mum, adj. [see dies] Divine.

do, dödi, dötum, däre, 1. v.a. [root da, "to give;" cp. dos, domum; döres, dösum.] To give in the widest acceptance of the term: negotium dare alieni, ut or uti, c. Subj. to direct, or commission, one, to do,--With ad fugam: To put, etc., to flight.

do-ö, dö, tum, ere, 2. v. a. [akin to die-o] To teach, instruct, inform, show, tell.

do-ö, dö, tum, ere, 2. v. n. To be in pain; to grieve, sorrow.

do-or, őris, m. fœlicio, "to grieve" Grief, sorrow.

dö-lus, I. m. Craft, fraud, guile, deceit.

dömes-ticus, tica, ticum, adj. [prob. for domus-ticus; fr. domus, "a house," hence, "one's country or home." Domestic, at home, in one's own country.

döm-ö-fium, ii, n. (for döm-ö-fium; fr. dömus, "a bode;" i), connective vowel; root cüal-Čal, in cau-āt, to conceal" A habitation, dwelling, domicile.

döm-in-or, ātus sum, āri, 1. v. dep. [root dam, "to tame;" cp. ðana, ðeres; dömo, dominus; Eng. tame] To rule, bear, away, have dominion.


döm-o, āvi, ātum, āre, 1. v.a. [see do] To give as a present; to present.

dübitā-tio, tōnis, f. [dūbīta-o, "to doubt;"] A doubting, doubt, hesititation.

düb-tio, itāvi, Itatūm, ētare, 1. v. in., intents. [primitive form dū-бо, fr. dū-o, "two;" Itar] To hesitate, doubt, be in doubt.

düb-tus, ās, āsum, adj. [obsol. döbo, "to move two ways, vibrate to and fro;" fr. duo, "two;" Doubtful, uncertain.

dü-cent-i, ae, a, num. adj. plur. [duo, "two;" centum, "a hundred"] Two hundred.

duēco, duxi, ductum, duōre, 3. v. a. To draw, lead, conduct, in the widest sense. Duēcere uxorém, to lead a wife (home), i.e. to marry. Duēcere in matrimonium, to lead (home), for marriage, i.e. to marry.--Of a commander: To lead, move or march troops; induce; reckon regard; to draw out, prolong.

dum, adv. [akin to diu] While, whilst, while that; until, until that.

dū-o, ae, o, num. adj. plur. Two [ēs; dū-decim, "twelve;"

dū-decim, num. adj. plur. indecl. [for dū-decim; fr. duo, "two;" decem, "ten;" Twelfth.

dū-decim-us, a, um, num. adj. [duodecim, "twelve;" Twelfth.

dū-de-vindicā, num. adj. plur. indecl. [dūo, "two;" dē, "from;" vindicā, "twenty;" Eighteenth.

dū-plex, plēs, adj. [for du-plēs; dr. du-o, "two;" plo-o, "to fold;" Two-fold, double.

dūr-us, a, um, adj. Hard, severe, toil some, difficult.
VOCABULARY.


e; see ex.

ēdītus, īta, ītum, adj. ēdō, "to put, or set, forth"

ē-do, didi, ditum, dēre, 3. v. a. [ē (= ex), "out;" do, "to put"] To put out or forth.

ē-duco, ductum, dūcere, 3. v. a. [ē (= ex), "out;" dūco, "to lead"] To lead out or forth.

ēfēmin-o, āvi, ātum, āre, 1. v. a. [for ex-fēmin-o; fr. ex, denoting "change;" fēmina, "a woman"] To render effeminate, enervate.

ēffēro, extiūl, ētum, efferre, v. a. irreg. [for ex-fēro; for ex, "out;" fēro, "to bear"] To spread abroad, publish, proclaim.

ēfficio, fēci, fectum, flicre, 3. v. a. [for ex-fic-o; fr. ex, "out;" fēco, "to make"] With double Acc.: To make or render an object that is made or expressed by the second Acc.

ēgo, Gen. mēi (plur. nōs), pers. pron. 1.

ē-gō-dior, gressus sum, grēdi, 3. v. dep. [for grē-dior; fr. ex-gē-re, "out;" grēdior, "to stop"] To go out or come forth; to leave.

ēgrēgiē, adv. [see egregius] Excellently, admirably.

ē-grēgious, ta, tum, adj. [ē (= ex), "from out of;" grēg, ēreg-īs, "a flock"] Excellent, eminent.

ēlectus, a, um [plf. part. of eligō] Chosen.

ēligo, ēgī, lectum, liācre, 3. v. a. [ē, "out of;" ēligo, "to choose"] To choose or pick out; to select.

ē-migro, migriāvi, migrum, migrāre, 1. v. n. [ē (= ex), "from;" migro, "to depart"] To depart from, emigrate.

ē-mitto, misi, missum, mittēre, 3. v. a. [ē (= ex), "away from;" mittō, "to send"] To throw away, cast aside or off.

ēmo, ēmi, emptum, emēre, 3. v. a. [ēmo, "to take"] To buy, purchase.

ēmōl-imentum, Intenti, n. [enol-; "to work out"] Effort, exertion, labour, difficulty.

ēnīm, conj.: For.

ē-nuntio, nuntiāvi, nuntiatum, nuntiare, 1. v. a. [ē (= ex), "out;" nuntio, "to tell"] To divulge, disclose, reveal.

ēq-, adv. [prob. for eum (-cum), old acc. sing. masc. of pron. is, “this, that”]

Of place: To that place, there. Of a cause or reason: For the cause or reason that follows; on that account.

ēq, īvi, or ī, itum, īre, v. n. To go [root ī, akin to Sans. root ī, Gr. ī-avai, "to go"]

ēsōdem, adv. [for eōdem, (=eun-tem), old acc. masc. sing. of īdem, "the same"] To the same place.

ēqu-ō-ās, stis, m. [for equi-; fr. ēqu-us, "a horse;" ē, epenthetic; ē, root of ēqō, "to go"] A horseman.—Plur.: Horse-soldiers, cavalry.

ēqu-ester, strīs, estri, adj. [equi-, "a horse;" strīs, "a horse"

ēquā-tus, tās, (Dat. ēquā-tūm, ch. 39, etc.) m. [ēquāt(a)-o, "to be an equus or horseman; to ride"] Horse soldiers, cavalry.

ēquīs, i, m. [ēc, "swift"; op. ēxīc, aquī] A horse.—ex equis, on horseback.

ēripio, ripi, rentum, ripere, 3. v. a. [for ēripio; fr. ē (= ex), "away;" ēripio, "to snatch"] To snatch away. With Dat. of person and Acc. of thing: To deprive one of something; to deliver, set free.

ērup-tio, tōnis, f. [frumpo, "to salt out"] A sortie, sally.

ēt, conj. And:—et...et, both...and [akin to Gr. ērī, "moreover.”]

ētam, conj. [akin to ēt] And also, and furthermore; likewise, also, besides; even.

ētiam, ētiam, conj. [ētiam, "even;" si, "if"] Even if, although.

ēt-ā, conj. [ēt, "even;" si, "if"] Even or, although.

ē-vello, velli and vulsi, vulsum, velle, velāre, 3. v. a. [ē (= ex), "out;" vello, "to pluck"] To pluck out, pull out.

ēven-tus, tūs, m. [ēven-īo, "to turn out, issue"] Issue, result, consequence, event.

ex (ē), prep. gov. abl. Of local relations: Out of:—ex vinculis dictis, to plead in chains.—From:—ex equis, (from horses, i.e.) on horseback; ex itinere, (out of the march, i.e.) during or on the march.

—from, in consequence of; in accordance, or conformity with; through, by—ex communi consensu, by common consent.—Of time: After:—ēden ex die, day after day.—Of parentage: By.

ex-āgito, āgitāvi, āgitātem, āgitāre, 1. v. a. [ēx, "without force;" āgito, "to disturb, chase"] To harass.
VOCABULARY.

ex-ánim-o, Avi, Ætum, Aro, 1. v. a. [ex, implying "negation"; ánim-a, "life"] In Pass. only: To be deprived of strength; to be weak or exhausted.

ex-audio, audivi or audit, auditum, audire, 4. v. a. [ex, "thoroughly"; audio, "to hear"] To hear thoroughly; to hear distinctly or clearly.

ex-cédô, cessi, cessum, cădare, 3. v. n. [ex, "out or away," cédo, "to go"] To go out or away; to withdraw, depart.

ex-ciplo, cepi, cepsum, cipère, 3. v. a. [ex-capio; fr. ex, "without force"]; capio, "to take") To take, receive; to intercept, encounter.

excur-sio, sionis, f. [for excursio; fr. excorri, "to run out," hence, "to sally forth"]; A sally, onset, attack.

exemplum, i, n. An example in the fullest acceptance of the word; A way, manner, sort, kind.

ex-ô, ivi or if, itum, ire, v. n. irreg. [ex, "out or forth"; go, "to go"] To go out, or forth, from.

exer-cô, erâni, erixum, ercre, 2. v. a. [for ex-arco; fr. ex, "out"; arco, "to inolute"] To practice, exercise.

exerçitá-tio, tions, f. [exerctt(a)-o, "to exercise"] Exercise, practice.

exerçi-ta-tus, te, tum, adj. [id.] Well, or fully exercised. trained, practiced.

exerçi-tus, Ætus, m. [exercitatio; "to exercise"] A trained, exercised, or disciplined body of men; an army.

exign-ñtas, ñtis, f. [exign-us (of time), "short"] Shortness.

exim-fus, i, tum, adj. [exim-o, "to take out"] Of abstract things: Extraordinary, remarkable.

existím-tio, tions, f. [existim-a-o, "to think"] Opinión, judgment.

existímo, istimâvi, istimátum, istimâre, 1. v. a. [for ex-asteo; fr. ex, "without force"; aestio, "to think"] To think, imagine, deem, suppose.

expedí-tus, a, tum, adj. [expedit-o, "to set free"]; Uncumbered, without baggage, light-armed.

ex-perior, pertius sum, perirî, 4. v. dep. [ex, "thoroughly"; obsol. périrî, "to go or pass through"] Hence, "to try") To try, prove, put to the test; to make trial of, experience.

explorá-tus, ta, tum, adj. [explor(a)-o, "to spy out"] A spy, scout.

explorâ-tus, ta, tum, adj. [explor(a)-o, "to search out"] ("Searched out") Certain, ascertained, sure, known.

ex-primo, pressi, pressum, prîmâre, 3. v. a. [for ex-primo; fr. ex, "out"] Primo, "to press"); To exert, elicit.

ex-pugno, pugnâvi, pugnâtum, pugnâre, 1. v. a. [ex, "thoroughly"; pugno, "to fight"] To take by assault; to storm, capture.

exquiro, quisi, quistum, quître, 3. v. a. [for ex-quero; fr. ex, "very much"]; Quero, "to seek for") To search out, ascertain.

ex-séquor, séquitus sum, séquil, 3. v. dep. [ex, denoting "to the end or close"]; Sóquor, "to follow."] To follow up, carry out, enforce.

ex-specto, spectavi, spectatâ, spectâre, 1. v. a. [ex, "very much"] Specto, "to look out") To wait for, await, wait to see; to expect.

ex-strúo (struó), struxi, strutum, strutri, 3. v. a. [ex, "thoroughly"]; Struxo, "to heap up") To pile up, raise.

exter (térus), ténra, ténrum, adj. [ex, "out"] On the outside, outward: extremum agmen, (the last part, or extremity, of the line of an army on the march, etc.; I.e.) The rear;—in extremis suis rebus, (in their extreme circumstances; i.e.) in their utmost or greatest danger.

extrá, prep. gov. aoc. (contr. f. extera, a. pl. sing. fem. of extérus, "outside") Out, or outside, of; beyond.

extrémus, i, um, sup. adj.; see exter. As Subst.: extrémum, i, n. The end, extremity.

ex-ufo, ussi, ustrum, ûrère, 3. v. a. [ex, denoting 'completeness'; ûro, "to burn"] To burn up, consume by fire.

F.

facil-e, adv. [facil-is, "easy"] Easily, with ease;—non facil-e, not easily, i.e. with difficulty.

facilis, ile, adjec. [facilo, "to do"] Easy, devoid of difficulty.

facilius, inôris, n. [facilo, "to do"] In bad sense: A bad deed, crime.

facio, faci, factum, facère, 3. v. a. and n. [root akin to ru, "to be"] In a causative sense: cp. fu-; —bam in imperf. act. of verb; Óc, óc] Act: To make, in the widest acceptatio of the term—procellum facere—to make, i.e., to engage in battle; so how proelio facto, when this engagement had taken place: potestatem sui
VOCABULARY.

fa·cere, (to make an opportunity of himself; i.e. at ch. 40) to afford an opportunity of fighting with him;—fa·cere judicium, (to make i.e.) to form an opinion:
—fa·cere. —Neut.: With adverbs: To act, behave.—fa·cere arroganter, to act arrogantly or presumptuously.

fa·cio, ti·onis, f. [fa·ci-o, "to do"] A party, side, faction.

fa·ci-tum, ti, n. [fa·ci-o, "to do"] A deed, action, act.

fa·ci·tus·tas, tātīs, f. [obsc. fācūl (-fā·ci·l-is), "easy"] Power, means, opportunity, supply, abundance. Plur.: Means, resources.

fa·llo, fē·felli, falsum, fallēre, s. v. a. To deceive [akin to Gr. σφαλλέω].

fa·mes, mis, f. Hungry, famine; [root μαχ, "to eat"] cp. fagus: Gr. φαγός, φαγεῖν; Goth. bokh. Eng. beef.

fa·mil·i·us·ta·ri·is, är·e·d·r. [famīli-a] Of, or belonging to, a family; intimate, friendly, on good terms.—As Subst. familiāris, is, m. An intimate friend.

fa·s, n. indecl. The will of the gods;—or it may be translated by the English adj Lawful, permitted, allowable.

fa·stigio, áv, átu·n, är·e, l. v. a. To make pointed; to raise or bring up to a point.—P. part. pass.: Sloping up to a point. sloping down, steep.

fa·tum, ti, n. [fa·tu-r] "to speak"

Destiny, fate.

fa·vē·o, fā·vē·o, favē·tum, favē·re, 2. v. n. With Dat.: To be well-disposed or favourable to; to favour.

fel·lic·itas, tātīs, f. [felix, felicis "fortunate"] Good fortune, success.

fer·a·xis, æ·cis, adj. [fē·r-rō, (of the soil), "to bear, bring forth"] Fruitful, fertile, productive.

fer·o, adv. Nearly, almost, about.

fer·ō, tēl·ītum, ferre, v. a. [root fer. "to bear"] cp. φέρω, φέρν, φέρο, φέρεται; ferax, fertili, fortis, fertua; Goth. bar, baira; A.S. bere, (Scot.; bere, barley). The root ρελ or ρό, "to bear" appears in ρελάω, τρελαύω; tello, tolero; Gothic, thula; O.H.G. dolen) To bear: to carry; to submit to, suffer, tolerate, endure, any person or thing.—Of aid: To carry, bring, render.

fer·rum, ri, n. Iron; an iron implement of any kind; cp. a sword.

fer·til·itās, tātīs, f. [fer·til-is, "fertile"] Fertility.

fer·tus, a, um, adj. "Fierce, savage" [akin to ῥῆπ, Aeolic φῆπ, "a wild animal."

fid·ēs, i, f. [fi·do, "to trust"] Trust, faith; fidelity; pledged or plighted faith; a promise.

fi·llia, ae, f. [akin to flius] A daughter.

fi·lius, li, m. [root ἱυ, "to beget"] A son.

fin·gō, fin·xi, fin·xum, fin·gerē, 3. v. a. [akin to Gr. ἔγχυσαι, "to touch"]; Lat. tettigi, figura: Goth. deign; Eng. dough] To form, mould, fashion, etc.—vultum fingere, (to form, or mould, etc., the countenance, i.e.) to command their countenance, so as to hide the fears that filled them.

fi·ris, nis, m. [probably for fid·nis, fr. findo, "to divide"
An end. Plur.: Borders of a country; and so territory, land, country, included within borders.

fin·it·i·mus, lit·tis, lat·tum, adj. [fin·is] see final Bordering upon, adjoining, neighbouring. As Subst.: finitimi,orum, m. plur. The neighbouring peoples.

fio, factus, sum, fīrē, v. pass. irreg.: [see facio] To be made; to become; to happen or come to pass; to be brought about.

fīr·mus, ma, mum, adj. [fīr·mus, fr. fīr-o; hence, "able to bear"] (see fero) Strong, firm.

fīg·i·to, fī·vi·tātum, fīre, l. v. a. To demand earnestly.—With double Acc.: To demand something earnestly of one.

fīo, fīvéo, fīveōn, fīvē·rē, 2. v. n. [root fēv, "to flow"] cp. φάς, φυο To weep.

fī·tus, tās, m. [fā·t-o, "to weep"] A. weeping, lamentation.

flō·re·n·a, nītis, adj. [flor·o-; "to flourish"] Flourishing, prosperous.

flō·men, minis, n. [flō-o, "to flow"] A stream, river.

flō·ri, flōxi, flūxum, flūere, 3. v.n. [see fīc] To flow.

fōr·tis, tē, adj. [see fero] Brave, bold, courageous.

fōr·l·t·i·ter, adv. [for·l·i·s, "brave"] Bravely, boldly, with bravery.
VOCABULARY.

fort-itādo, itādīnis, m. [fort—is "brave"] Courage, valor, bravery.

fort-ūna, ūnae, f. [fors, foris, "chance"] Fortune, whether good or bad. Plur.: Properties, fortunes.

fossae, ae, f. [fod-sa; fr. fōd-īo, "to dig"] A ditch, trench, fosse.

fregō, frēgī, frōgūtum, frangō, 3. v. a. [root RAG or RG: cp. Gr. ἁπλοῦ, ἁπλῶν, ἀπλῶν; Lat. frāvere; Ger. brechen; Eng. break, wreck] To shatter, shatter, ruin, etc.

frāter, tris, m. A brother
frātērus, na, num., adj. [frater, "a brother"] Of, or belonging to, a brother; fraternal.

frēm-ītus, tūs, m. [frēm-o, "to roar"] A roaring; a dull, heavy sound or noise.

frons, frontis, f. [akin to Gr. ὑφόν; frontis] The front part, or front, of anything.

frigēs,īna, īnum., adj. [Gr. ἱρή σω, ἱρῆν] Cold, frost.

fructī-ōsus, ōs, ōsum, adj. [fructus, (uncontr. gen.) fructūs, "fruit"] Abounding in fruit, fruitful, productive.

fructūs,ūnis, sing; fructūsum, ārum, adj. [frument-um, "corn"] Pertaining to corn; res frumentāria, crops, provisions. Of places—Abounding in corn.

frument-um, menti, n. [frū- or, "to eat"] Corn, grain. Plur.: Corn. 1. e. crops.

frux, frūgis (mostly pl.) f. [for frug-ā; fr. frō, a root of frū-or, "to eat"] Fruits of the earth; produce of the fields.

fugā, ae, f. [fugō, "to flee"] Flight. In fugam conjunctae, (to throw into, i.e.) to put to flight, rout.

fugīō, fugī, fugītum, fugīre, 3. v. n. [akin to ēpt, root of ēpet, "to flee"] To flee, flee away, take to flight.

fugītīv-us, i, m. [fugītīv-us, "fleeing away"] A runaway, fugitive.

fūmus, m., m. [root mū, "to shake:" ep. mūs, mōs, máus; Lat. fava; O.H.G. tunst (storm); Eng. dust] Smoke.

fund-ītor, ēdīs, m. [fund-a, "a sling"] A slinger.

fundō, fūdi, fūsum, fundēre, 3. v. a. [root run, "to pour out:" ep. Gr. χέως, χέω-; Eng. gush] To rout or overthrow.

fūrus, ēris, m. [fur-o] Rage, fury, madness.

G.

gālēa, ēae, f. [root KAL, "to cover:" cp. kalvtr, celo] A helmet, head-piece.

gēnēr-ātīm, adv. [gēnus, gēnĕr-is, "a race"] By races, nations, or tribes.

gēn-e, eis, f. [root or, "to produce:" γεγομένος, γεγος; gigno, genus, gnosco; Gēth. kun[=Lat. genus]] A nation, tribe.


gēro, gessi, gement, gērēre, 3. v. a. To do, perform, carry on. Of war: To wage.

glādūs, li, m. A sword


glōr-iā, rūns, sum, āri, 1. v. dep. [glori-, "boasting"] To boast, vaunt, praise one's self, brag.

grandis, e, adj. Great, large

grāt-īa, ēae, f. [gratul(a) mitochond.] Joy, rejoicing, congratulation.

grāt-ūlor, hūtāsum, āri, 1. v. dep. [grat-īus, "pleasing"] To wish one joy, to offer congratulations.

grātus, ta, tum, adj. [akin to χαίp, χαίς, O.H.G. gieier, greedy] Dear, pleasing, delightful

grāv-is, e, adj. [akin to bāpēs: cp. ba, bās; Gr. bās; Lat. brāvus] Heavy, weighty; severe, dangerous.

grāv-i-ter, adv. [grāv-is, "serious"] Heavily, seriously, severely.

grāv-or, ātus sum, ārī, 1. v. dep. [grāv-is, "heavy"] To feel vexed, or annoyed, at; to do something reluctantly.

H.

hāb-ēo, ūlītum, ère, 2. v. a. To have, in the widest acceptation of the term; to possess; to account, consider; to hold, i.e., to do, make, perform.

hībern-ā, ērum, plur. [hibern-us, "winter:" root hīm, "to snow:" cp. hīmns; Gk. xwris, xeriōr, xesos; S. hīm, hīma, hīmas, snow; so Himalaya, "house of snows"] Himavat, "gifted with snow."
hic, Haec, hoc (Ten. haec; Dat. huc), pron. dem. [pronominal root: aspirated; o, a dem. suffix: cp. L, i, tta, i-pec; This person or thing: As Subject: This man, he.

hic, adv. [L. hic] In this place, here.

híc-mo, mínis, comm. gen. [prob. same root as facio; generally referred to human, "the ground," and so, "the one pertaining to the ground"] A human being, a person; a man, a woman.

hónés-tus, ta, tum, adj. [for hono-rus; fr. honor. (= honor), "honour"] Honourable

hónor, (hónos), óris, m. Honour, respect, esteem; public honour or distinction in recognition of service rendered to the state; official dignity, office.

hónor-l-fíc-us, a, um, adj. [for honor-l-fac-us; fr. honor, honor-is; (i) connecting vowel; faci-o, "to do"] That does honour to one; honourable.

hór:a, ae. f. [for Fosara; same root as /eap; Lat. aera; Slav. jara (spring); Zend. yare; Goth. jera(æ); Norw. jær; Ger. Jahr; Eng. year] An hour.

horréo, no perf. nor sup., ère, 2 v. a. To shudder, or be frightened at.

hor-tor, tátus sum, tari, 1 v. dep. [root an or or, "to raise"]; cp. órare] To strongly urge; to exhort, advise.

hos-tis, tis, comm. gen. [Sansk. root ahs, "to eat"]; hence, the "one entertainer, friend, guest; an entertainer; a host

hos-pít-lum, li, n. [hospes, hospit-is] hospitality, entertainment.

hos-pes, ptis, m. [akin to Sanscrit ghas, "to eat"]; and ped-o, "to seek."] A tailed] An enemy, or foe, of one's country. Plur.: The enemy.

húc, adv. [for hoc, adverbial neut. acc. of hic, "this"] To this place, hither.

húmán-itás, tás, tis. [húman-us] "kind; also, "refined" in manner(s) Kindness, humanity; courtesy, or polished, manners; refined behaviour.

i-ca, i-ca, i-ca, adv. [pronominal root, i] In that place, there.

i-cús, tún, m. [i-cus, "to strike"] A strike, blow.

i-dem, ódem, ídem, (i-tem), pron. dem. [pronominal root i, with demonstrative suffix dem] This same.

i-de-n-tidem, adv. [for i-du-m-tem; fr. i-tem (root of i-tem), "the same;" the composition of i-tem is uncertain] Repeatedly, from time to time, every now and then.

i-donéus, a, um, adj. Fit, suitable, convenient.

i-gnás, is (Abl. igni), m. Fire.

i-gnósco, gnóvi, gnóat, gnóre, 1 v. a. [for in-gnósco; fr. in, "negative" particle; root ano; whence no-ico, old form gnosco, "to know"] Not to know, or know of; to be ignorant of, to be unacquainted with.

i-gnosco, gnóvi, gnóat, gnóe(ér), gnóes(ér), 3 v. n. [fr. in-gnósco; fr. in, "not;" gnosco (gnosco), "to know" with reference to a fault or crime] With Dat.: To pardon, forgive.

i-le, la, lad (Gen. illius; Dat. illi), pron. adj. [for is-ile fr is] That.

illíc, adv. ille (pron.), "that"] In that place, there.

im-mortálís, mortális, adj. [for in-mortális: fr. in, "not;" mortal, "mortal"] Immortal, unifying


impé-dé-lo, tvi or li, litum, tre, 4 v. a. [for in-pédé-lo; fr. in, "in;" pes, péd-is, "the foot"] To hinder, obstruct, impede.

impéditus, a, um, P. perf. pass. of impédélo-Of troops: Encumbered with baggage.

im-péll-o, plii, pusum, pellère, 3 v. a. [for in-péll-o; fr. in, "against;" pello, "to drive"] To push forwards; to impel, urge, instigate.

im-péndéo, no perf. nor sup., pendère, 2 v. a. [for in-péndéo; fr. in, "upon or over;" pendéo, "to hang down"] To hang over.

im-pérra-tor, tóris, m. [imper(a)-o, "to command"] A commander, esp. a commander-in-chief.

im-pérá-tum, ti, n. [imper(a)-o, "to command"] A command, order.
impērī-tus, pēritus, pēritum, adj. [for in-pēritus, fr. in, "not;" pēitus, "skillful"] With Gen.: Unskilful, unskilled, or inexperienced in, not acquainted with.

impērī-tum, n. [imper-o, "to command"] Command; supreme power, dominion.

impēro, pērāvi, pērātum, pērāre, 1. v. a. [for in-pēro; fr. in, "upon;" pēro, "put"] To command; order; bid; to make a requisition for, to demand.

impētro, pētrāvi, pētrātum, pētrāre, l. v. a. [for in-pētro; fr. in, "without force;" pēro, "pato, "to perform"] To get, obtain.

impētus, n. m. [impēto, "to fall upon, or attack"] An attack, assault, on-set; impetuosity, force.

impīloro, pōrlāvi, pōrlātum, pōrlāre, l. v. a. [for in-impīlāro; fr. in, "upon;" pōlāro, "to bewail;" hence, "to cry out aloud"] To beg, beseech, entreat, implore.

impōno, pōsēti, pōsitum, pōsēre, 3. v. a. [for in-impōno; fr. in, "upon;" pōno, "to put"] With Dat.: To put or place upon, to mount on horses. Of a tribute: To impose.

impōnto, portāvi, portātum, portāre, l. v. a. [for in-impōnto; fr. in, "into;" porto, "to carry, or bring"] To carry or bring into a country, to import.

impōrus, proba, probum, adj. [for in-impōrus; fr. in, "not;" probus, "good"] Bad; odious, wicked.

imprōvisus, prōvisus, prōvīsum, adj. [for in-prōvisus; fr. in, "not;" prōvisus, "foreseen"] Not foreseen, unforeseen, unexpected; —de improviso, unexpectedly.

impugno, pugnāvi, pugnātum, pugnāre, l. v. a. [for in-pugnā; fr. in, "against;" pugno] To fight against; to attack.

impūnē, adv. [impun-is, "unpunished"] Without punishment, without harm or loss, with impunity.

impūnitas, itatis, f [id]. Freedom, or safety, from punishment; impunity.

in, prep. gov. abl. and acc.; With Abl.: In; among.—With Gerunds or Gerundives: In, during; on, upon.—With neut. adj. to form adverbial expressions: in occulto, secretly, in secret.—With Acc.: Into.—With verbs of rest to denote going into or to, a place and then doing the action denoted by the verb.—collectare pro-phinque suam nuptiam in alias civitates, (to take his kinswomen, to be married, into other states, and there give them in marriage; i.e.) to settle his kinswomen in marriage in other states.—Upon; against; at; for; to, towards; after, according to —mirum in modum, after a wonderful manner.

incen-do, di, sum, dère, 3. v. a. [for in-can-do; fr. in, "in or into;" root can, "to see on fire;" Gr sádo] To set on fire, burn.

incido, cidi, cūsum, cidere, 3. v. n. [for in-cido; fr. in, "into;" caelo, "to cut"] To cut partially; to make a cut in.

inciplo, cópi, cepum, cópere, 3. v. a. [for in-ciplo; fr. in, "in;" ciplo, "to take"] To begin, commence.

incitātus, a, um. Perf. pass. of incito: Of a horse: At full speed.

incito, citāvi, citātum, citāre, l. v. a. [in, "without force;" citā, "to cut in rapid motion"] To arouse, excite, incite.

incoilo, cólō, cultum, cólere, 3. v. a. and n. [in, "in;" colo, "to dwell"] Act: To inhabin. Neut.: To dwell, reside.

incolāms, colāme, adj. [in, "in" intensive force; obsol. colāms, "safe"] Quite safe, safe, in safety.

incommodum, i, n. [incommodus, "troublesome"] Trouble, misfortune, disaster.

incrēdibilis, crēdible, adjective [in, "not;" crēdibilis, "to be believed"] Not to be believed, incredible, extraordinary.

incrēpito, itāvi, itātum, itāre, l. v. a. and n. freq. [incrēp-o, "to make a noise against;" to exclaim loudly against] Act: To inveigh against, to taunt, reproach. Neut.: To taunt, rebuke.

incūs-o, āvi, āsum, āre, 1. v. a. [for in-caus-o fr. in, "against;" caus-o, "to say"] To blame, find fault with, censure.

incursus, sūs, m. [for incursus; fr. incur-o, "to run against;" hence, "to attack"] An attack, onset, assault.

in-de, adv. [probably fr. pronominal root -d, with n, openthetic; de, suffix] Of place: From that place or quarter, thence. Of time: After that.

indicētum, i, n. [indic-o, "to make known"] Information.

indicō, dixi, dictum, dicere, 3. v. a. [in, "augmentative" force; dico, "to say"] To declare publicly; to proclaim, appoint.
VOCABULARY.

indignitas, iatis, f. [indign-us, "unworthy"] Unworthy treatment, indignity, etc.

indiligent-er, adv. [for indiligent-er; fr. indiligens, indiligent-er, "careless"] Carelessly, heedlessly, negligently.

indūco, duxi, duōtum, dūcere, 3 v. a. [in, "into;" dūco, "to lead"] To move, excite, stimulate.

indulgēō, ulsi, ultum, ulgare, 2 v. a. With Dat.: To be kind, or indulgent, to, to favour.

in-drō, òdrē, dūtum, òdrē, s. v. a. [ep. ìvōvī, ìvōn.] To put on.

in-ēo, ivi or li, itum, ire, v. a. [in "into;" ēo, "to go"] To enter upon, begin, commence.—Of a plan: To form, adopt.

in-erm-is, e, adj. [for in-armis; fr. in, "not;" arma, "arms"] Not having, or without arms; unarmed.

in-erm-us, a, um, adj. [for in-armus, fr. in, "not;" arma, "arms"] Not having, or without arms; unarmed.—The form inermus is rare; Inermis is generally found.

inferior, lus, comp. adj. [infer-us, "that is below"] Lower.

infero, tuli, (ll)-lātum, ferre, v. a. [in; fēro, "to bear;" in, "into"] To bear, carry, or bring, into or to; [in "against;" To bring, or carry against.—Bellum inferre, inferre carē war against one, i.e. to make war upon one, wage war against one:—so inferre calumnatam or injuri- am, to inflict a calumny or injury; inferre vulnera, to inflict wounds; signa inferre, to carry the standards against one; i.e. to advance to the attack. Of a cause or reason: To assign, allege.

in-īrō, ēra, ērum, adj. [in, "in;" suffix erus, with rigamma or f prefixed] Pos.: That is below, beneath, or under-neath; low.

in-flecto, neci, inflexum, infectēre, 3 v. a. [in, "without force;" flecto, "to bend"] To bend. With 1 personal pron. in reflexive force: Of things: To bend itself, become bent.

in-flō, fluxi, fluxum, flōre, 3 v. n. [in, "into;" flō, "to flow;" Of a river: To flow or run into; to empty itself into.

in-gens, gentis, adj. [in, "not;" gens "a race or kind"] Vast, immense, huge.

in-grādīōr, gressus sum, grādī, 3 v. dep. [for in-grādīōr; fr. in, "into;" grādīor, "to step"] To enter.

iniquitās, qual. syll.) iatis, f. [in-iqu-i, "uneven;" also "unfavorable"] Unevenness; unfavourableness.

in-imicus, imōs, imīcum, adj. [for in-āmicus; frīn, "not;" āmicus, "friendly"] Unfriendly, hostile, malicious. As Subj. In-imicus, i, m. A private enemy or foe.

in-iquus, iquis, iquum, adj. [for in-aequus; fr in, "not;" aequus, "just"] Unjust.

in-itium, ùli, n [in-o, "to go in;"] A beginning, commencement.

in-jecto, jecī, jectum, jectēre, 3 v. a. [for in-jecto, fr in, "into;" jecī, "to throw"] Mentally, with Acc. of thing and Dat. of person, and in Pass. with Det of person alone: To infuse something into one; to inspire one with some feeling.

injuri-ās, ae, f. [in-jūr-lus, "injurious"] Unjust or wrongful conduct, injustice; a wrong, injury.—Adverbial Abj.: Injuri, unjustly, undeservedly, without cause.

in-jus-sus, sūs (only found in Abi Sing.), m. [for in-jus-sus, fr in, "not;" jussū, to "command"] Without command: in jussu suo, without his command or order.

in-nascor, nātus sum, nasci, 3 v. dep. [in, "in;" nascor, "to be born"] Mentally. To arise, or spring up, in the mind; to be produced.

innocentia, e, f. [innocens, innō cent-is, "innocent"] Uprightness, integrity, innocences.

innopina, lae, f. [innopīs, "innopis", "without means"] Want, lack, scarcity.

inopina, ns, nis, adj. [in, "not;" opīn(a)-or, "to expect"] Not expecting, off one's guard, unaware.

in-quirō, quīstī, quīstum, quīrēre, 3 v. a. [for in-quaerō, fr. in, "without force;" quaerō, "to seek"] Mentally: Without object: To enquire, make enquiries.

in-sciens, scientis, adj. [in, "not;" sciens, "knowing"] Unaware, without one's knowledge.

in-ssequor, sequiātus sum, sequū, 3 v. dep. [in, "after or upon;" séquor, "to follow"] To follow after or close upon; to pursue, press upon the fleeing enemy.

in-sidiae, lūrum, f. plur. [in-sidīo, "to take up a position in a place"] An ambush, ambushment; artillery, plot, treachery.

insignis, is, n. [insign-is, "having a mark on it"] ("That which has a mark on it," hence, "a distinctive mark," etc.; hence) A standard, ensign.

insignis, is, e, adj. [in, "upon;" sig-
VOCABULARY.

num, "a mark") Marked, remarkable, especial.

in-silico, siliki and silici; no sup, sili, 4. v. n. [for in-silico; fr. in, " upon; " silico, " to leap") To leap on, or upon.
in-sisto, stiti, no sup, sistere, 3. v. n. [in, " upon; " sisto, " to set one's self to stand") With Dat.: To stand on or upon.
insolenti, adv. [for insolent-i; fr. insolens, insolentis, " insolent ") Insolently.

in-stra-r, indec. [in, " in; " sta, root of sto, " to stand") A likeness of; like, corresponding to, resembling.
in-stituo, stiti, stitatum, stitare, 3. v. a. [for in-stituto; fr. in, " without force; " stato, " to set") Of persons: To train up, instruct.
instituto, ti, n. [instituo, " to institute ") Institution, custom.
in-stro, stiti, stitatum, stare, I. v. n. [in, " upon; " sto, " to stand") To pac.: -ad; usual, ordinarily: Of place: To be close at hand.
in-struo, struxi, structum, stræcre, 3. v. a. [in, " without force; " strio, " to build") Of troops: To arrange, draw up, form.

intellego, lexii, lectum, ligere, 3. v. a. [for inter-lego; fr. inter, " between; " lego, " to choose") To perceive, understand, comprehend.
inter, prep. gov. acc. Between, among; inter se, among themselves, i.e. mutually, one with another. Of time: During.

inter-cedo, cessi, cessum, cedere, 3. v. n. [inter, " between; " cedo, " to go or come") Of time: To intervene; to be, or exist between
inter-cipio, cipi, ceptum, cepere, 3. v. a. [for inter-capio; fr. inter, " between; " capio, " to take") Of things: To intercept; to seize in passing.
inter-cludo, clusi, clusum, cludere, 3. v. a. [inter, " between; " cludo ( = claudi), " to shut") To cut off persons from supplies.
inter-dico, dixi, dictum, dicere, 3. v. n. [inter, " between; " dico, " to speak") With Dat. of person and Abi of place: To prohibit one from coming into a place; to shut one out from a place.
inter-dut, adv. [inter, " during; " dies, " day") During the day, by day.
internum, adv. [inter, " at intervals; " dum, Sometimes, occasionally.

inter-ea, adv. [for inter-eam; fr. inter, " between; " eam, acc. sing. fem. of is]) Of time: Meanwhile, in the mean time.

inter-ficio, feci, scriptum, ficere, 3. v. a. [for inter-ficio; fr. inter, " between; " facio, " to make") To destroy, esp. to kill, slay, slaughter.

inter-im, adv. [inter, " between; " im = sum, acc. maso sing. of is]) Meanwhile, in the meantime.

interior, lus. comp. adj. [comp. of absol. adj. inter-us, " within") In the interior of a country.

inter-ficio, feci, scriptum, ficere, 3. v. a. [for inter-ficio; fr. inter, " between; " facio, " to throw") To put, set, or place, between; to interfere.

inter-mitto, misi, missionem, mittere, 3. v. a. and n. [inter, " apart; " mitta, " to make to go") Act.: To leave off, or discontinue, for awhile; to interrupt the doing of a thing: immemissae nocte, a night having intervened. Neut.: to leave a space or interval.

intermeceo, fons, f. [intermeceo, " to kill utterly") Uter destruction, extermination.

inter-pollo, avi, stum, are, 1. v. a. inter, " between; " pello, " to drive") To obstruct, hinder, molest, disturb.

inter-pono, poni, pons, ponte, 3. v. a. [inter, " between; " ponno, " to put") Of a pretext, reason, etc. : To allege, interpose.

interpres, etis, comm. gen. An interpreter.

inter-scindo, soldi, sciisum, scindere, 3. v. a. [inter, " between; " scindo, " to cut or tear") With accessory notion of destruction: To cut down, break up, tear to pieces, destroy.

inter-sum, salis, esse, v. n. [inter, " between; " sum, " to be") Of Space, To be between, intervene.

inter-vallum, valli, n. [inter, " between; " vallum, "the mound of a camp) An interval of space; distance.

in-texto, textum, textere, 3. v. a. [in, " in or among; " texo, " to weave") To interlace, intertwine.
intri, prep. gov. acc. (confr. fr. interea. abl. sing. fem. of interius, " within") On the inside of, within.
in-tro, travi, tratum, trea, 1. v. n. With accessory notion of force: To penetrate, get inside, enter.
intra-duco, duxi, duclum, dicere, 3. v. a. [intro, " within, inside; " duo, " to lead") Fold.-by in c. Acc.: To lead within, inside of or into.
in-tri-mitto, misi, missionem, mittere, 3. v. a. [intro, " within; " mitta, " to send") To send within or inside; to send in.

...
**Vocabulary.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Latin Term</th>
<th>English Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><em>in-tūcōr</em></td>
<td>tūtus sum, tērī, adv. [in, &quot;at or upon;&quot; tūcō, &quot;to look&quot;] To look at or upon; to cast the eyes down upon.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>in-ūsitātus</em></td>
<td>uitātā, uitātum, adj. [in, &quot;not;&quot; īsitātus, &quot;usual&quot;] Not usual, unusual, uncommon.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>in-ūtilis</em></td>
<td>util, adj. [in, &quot;not;&quot; īutilis, &quot;useful&quot;] Not useful, useless, of no use.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>in-vēnio</em></td>
<td>vēni, ventum, vēnire, 4. v. a. [in, &quot;upon;&quot; vēnio, &quot;to come&quot;] To find, discover.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>in-vētērascō</em></td>
<td>vētērāvi, no sup., vētērāscēre, 3.v. a. [in, &quot;without force;&quot; vētērascō, &quot;to grow old &quot;] To grow old: to be established.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>in-victus</em></td>
<td>victa victūm, adj [in, &quot;not;&quot; victa, &quot;conquered&quot;] Unconquered, unvanquished, not to be conquered, invincible.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>in-video</em></td>
<td>vidi, visum, vidēre, 2. v. a. [in, &quot;at or towards;&quot; video, &quot;to look&quot;] In a bad sense: To envy.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>invito</em></td>
<td>vī, ātum, āre, 1. v. a. To invite.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>in-vītus</em></td>
<td>ta, tum, adj. Unwilling, reluctant, against one's will.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>i-pse</em></td>
<td>pās, pāsum, pron. dem. [for i-psē; fr. is: σύν, pās] Self, very, identical.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>iṝa-undus</em></td>
<td>cunda, cundum, adj [iṝa-scor, &quot;to be angry&quot;] Very angry or wrathful, full of rage or passion.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>iṟi-dicōle</em></td>
<td>adv. [for in-dicōle; fr. in, &quot;not;&quot; indicōle, &quot;laughingly, humourously&quot;] Not humourously, unwittily; without wit or humour.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>iṝi-rideō</em></td>
<td>rā, rāsum, rīdēre, 2. v. n. [for in-rideo; fr. in, &quot;without force;&quot; rideō, &quot;to laugh;&quot; hence, &quot;to laugh in ridicule&quot;] To laugh in ridicule; to mock, jeer.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>iṣa, īṣa</em></td>
<td>id, pron. dem. [pronominal root]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>ītā</em></td>
<td>adv. Thus, in this way or manner, so; in the following way or manner; accordingly.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>ītā-que</em></td>
<td>conj. [ītā, &quot;thus;&quot; quē, &quot;and&quot;] And thus, and so. On this, or that account; therefore.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>ītem</em></td>
<td>adv. So, even so, in like manner; also, likewise.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>īter</em></td>
<td>tīris, n. [co, &quot;to go,&quot; through root] Of troops: A march; a journey; a road, way.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>ītērum</em></td>
<td>adv. Anew, afresh, a second time, again.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**J.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Latin Term</th>
<th>English Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><em>jā-cēō</em></td>
<td>cē, cēnum, cēre, 2. v. n To have fallen in battle, etc.; To be lying slain.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>jācō</em></td>
<td>jēc, jactum, jācēre, 3. v. a. To throw, cast, fling.—Of earthworks: To throw up, construct by throwing up earth.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>jāc-to</em></td>
<td>tāvī, tātum, tāre, 1. v. a. freq. [jācō, &quot;to throw&quot;] Of the arms: To throw or toss about.—Of matters: To agitate, discuss.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>jarn</em></td>
<td>adv. [prob. for eam, fr. ies, &quot;this&quot;] At this time, now; already.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>jūba</em></td>
<td>ae, f. The mane of a horse.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>jūdo</em></td>
<td>jēsī, jēsaum, jēbēre, 2. v. a. To order, command, bid.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>jūdicium</em></td>
<td>i, n. [judico, &quot;to judge&quot;] A trial; decree, decision; judgment, opinion.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>jū-dico</em></td>
<td>āvī, ātum, āre, 1. v. a. and n. [for jur-dico; fr. jūs, jūsī, &quot;law;&quot; dico, &quot;to point out&quot;] Act: To decide, determine; to deem, consider, judge. Neut.: To settle, come to a decision or determination.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>jū-gum</em></td>
<td>i, n. [jugō, &quot;to join&quot;, root ju-] Of mountains: A height, summit, ridge. A yoke formed by a spear fastened horizontally to the top of two other spears set upright in the ground, beneath which a vanquished force was compelled to pass as a token of submission.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>jungo</em></td>
<td>junxi, junctum, junγre, 3. v. a. [see jux] To join, unite.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>jū-ro</em></td>
<td>rāvī, rītum, rūre, 1. v. n. [root ū, &quot;to join;&quot; or &quot;bind&quot;] To take an oath; to swear.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>jū-s</em></td>
<td>ris, n. [root ū, &quot;to join;&quot; op. ēruvāni, jūngo] Love, whether natural, human or divine. A right or privilege; power, authority.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>jus-jūrāndum</em></td>
<td>Gen. juris-jūrāndi, n. [jūs, &quot;a right;&quot; jur(a)-o, &quot;to swear&quot;] An oath.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>justītia</em></td>
<td>itia, f. [see jus] Justice.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>just-us</em></td>
<td>ta, tum, adj [for jur-tus; fr. jūs, juris, &quot;law&quot;] Just, right.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>juvo</em></td>
<td>jūvī, jūtum, jūvarē, 1. v. a. To help, aid, assist.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>juxta</em></td>
<td>adv. [prob. for jug-sta; fr. jūs, root of jugo, &quot;to join;&quot; sta, root of sto, &quot;to stand&quot;] Close at hand, hard by, near.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### VOCABULARY

#### K

**Kalenda** [kal-e=ka], n. pl. "Things to be called out or proclaimed"; i.e., the Nones, whether they were to be on the fifth or seventh day of the month. The proclamation was always made by the Pontiffs on the first day of the month, hence called) *The Kalenda*.

#### L

läb-or, oris, m. [root *lāb*, "to get" or "to gain," cp. *labēre*] Tool, exertion, labor.

lä bōr-o, āvi, ātum, āre, 1. v. n. and a. [labor, "labor"] Neut. To labour, toil. Or soldiers. To be hard pressed; to be in danger. Act.; To labour at; to endeavour earnestly to effect.

lāc-osso, esavi or essai, essatum, essēre, 3. v. a. intens. [see lacrima] To attack, fall upon, assault, assail.


lācus, ās, m. A lake. [akin to *lākēr*, "a pit, pond."]

lā-pis, pīdis, m. A stone [akin to *lāas-, "a stone."]

larg-ītor, itus sum, tri. 4. v. dep. [larg-um, "large," hence "bountiful"] To bribe.

larg-iter, adv. [largus, "large," hence, "extensive"] Extensively, to a great extent, very much or greatly.

larg-tīs, tīonis, f. [larg-īor, "to bestow freely""] In a good sense: Liberty.

lāss-tūdo, lāttīnis, f. [lāss-us, "weary"] Weariness, exhaustion, fatigue.

lāt-e, adv. [lāt-us, "wide"] Widely, e- "especially," far, and. side.

lāt-ūdō, ātum, āre, 2. v. n. [root *lāt-, "to be hid,"] cp. *lāthēw*, *lēthēn* To be hid, to be concealed.

lāt-tūdo, ātīdimis, f. [lāt-us, "wide"] Width, breadth.

lātus, ās, um, adj. [for stātus: root *stār*, "to scatter," cp. sterno; *stāvi*; O. H. G. *strau*; Eng. straw] Broad, wide.

lātus, ēris, n. [prob. akin to lātus, "wide," "The extended thing;" hence] A side. Of an army: The flank: later aperto, on (their) open flank i.e., on their right flank, which was more exposed to the weapons of the enemy, in consequence of its not being protected by the shields of the soldiers; ch. 25.

lāus, laudis, f. [for *laus*: root *lā*, "to hear;" see *glōrīa:* for omission of initial *o;* cp. lamentor=lamentor] Praise, commendation.

lax-o, āvi, ātum, āre, 1. v. a. [lax-us, "loose," hence, in extent, "broad, extended"] Of troops: To open, open, open wide; to leave or make a space between.

lēgā-tīs, tīonis, f. [lēg(a), "to send on an embassy"] An embassy. The persons attached to an embassy; delegates.

lēgā-tus, ti, m. [id.] An ambædor; a lieutenant-general; a lieutenant.

lēg-īt-o, tīonis, f. [lēg-o, "to levy or enlist"] A Roman legion, consisting of 10 cohorts of infantry, and a squadron of 300 cavalry.

lēgion-ārius, ari, ārum, adj. [legio, légion-is, "a legion"] Of, or belonging to, a legion; legionary.

lēn-īt-as, tātis, f. [lēn-is, "soft, smooth;" hence, "gentle"] Gentleness.

lēn-īt-er, adv. [lēn-is, "soft;" hence, "gentle"] Gently, moderately, gradually.

lēv-is, e, adj. [root *lev-tv"to raise or to be light;" cp. *lepus* (a hare); Gk. *lēv-ēs, -ēs*] Light (opp. to "heavy.") Of troops: Light-armed; light.

lēv-īt-as, tātis, f. [lev-is, "light;" hence, in character, "light-minded, fickle"] Light-mindedness, fickleness.

lex, legis, f. [leg-o, fr. leg-o, "to read"] A law, statute, decree, ordinance.

liber-ter, adv. [for libert-er: fr. libera, libertin-is, "willing"] Willingly.

lib-er, er, ērum, m. plur. (the sing. only in late Lat.) [root *lūr* or *lūn", "to love,"] cp. Lat. *libet*, liber; Eng. lief Children.

liber-āt-is, tātis, f. [liber-āl-is, "liberal"] Generosity, liberality.

liber-āl-tor, adv. [liber-āl-is, "pertaining to a free man," hence, "courteous"] Courteously.

libō, e, adv. [liber] Freely, i.e., unrestricted, without restraint.

lib-ōr, ērum, m. plur. (the sing. only in late Lat.) [root *lūr* or *lūn*, "to love,"] cp. Lat. *libet*, liber; Eng. lief Children.

lib-ēt-is, tātis, f. [liber, "free"] Freedom, liberty.
licéor, itus sum, ari, 2. v. dep. To bid at auction.
ling-us, us, f. [ling-o, "to lick"] The tongue; a language.
lin-ter, tris, m. [perhaps, lin-o, "to smear"; see litera] A boat, skiff.
litóra, ae, f. [root lit, "to smear"; cp. litus, line] Sing.: A letter of the alphabet; Plur.: A letter, epistle.
lúc-us, i, m. (Plur. lóct-i, m. and lóct-a, n.) [for (st)locus; root sta, "to stand"; cp. stóma, stóx, stógia; Latin stare, stito, status; O.H.G. stam; Gothic standa; Lith stot] A place.
long-e, adv. [long-us, "long" hence, "far off"] Far off, at a distance.—With Comparative and Superlative words: By far, very much, greatly.
long-in-quus (trisyll.), a, um, adj. [for long-hin-yeus; fr. long-us, "long"] Hine, "hence" Of time: Of long duration or continuance; long continued, long.
long-itúdo, itúdinis, f. [long-us, "long"] Length.
lon-gus, a, um, adj. Long.—Of time: Distant, far off, remote.
lóqu-or, utus (and lóct-) sum, i, 3. v. dep. To speak, talk.
lú-na, nae, f. [for lúca; fr. lúca e.] "to shine" The moon.
lux, lucis, f. [for lux-e; fr. lúca e., "to shine"]; cp. luceo, luco(eun); Gk. lucoos, lucoos; Scoto: Scotch lawn, a flame] Light, the light of day, daylight.
luxú-ría,iae,ae,f.[obso. adj. luxú-ría, "luxurious"]; fr. luxus, "luxury"] Luxury.

M.
má-chíné-tó, tónis, f. [máchn(a)-or, "to contrive"] An engine of war; a machine.
mág-is, comp. adj. [mág, root of magnum] More; in a greater or higher degree.
má-gistr-átus, átus, m. [magister, magistra, "master"] Magistracy; a magistrate.
magn-opérè, adv. [for magnó operó, the ablative sing. of magnus "great," and opés, opérës, "work" respectively] Greatly, very greatly, exceedingly.
magn-nus, na, num, adj. [root mag, "to be great."] cp. major (=mág-lor), maximus (=mag sinus), magister; Gk. μεγέσις, μεγεσίς; O.H.G. mihil, mer; Gothic, mikils, mais, maist (most); Scotch, muckle] Great, lary.—Of sound: powerful; loud. — Image: Great, advanced, old.
májor, us, comp. adj.: see magnus.— As Subst.: májores, um. m. plur.: Ancestors, forefathers.
málo-e, adv. [málo-us, "bad"] Badly, injuriously, to one's hurt.
málo-fíc-tum, in., n. [for male-fac-tum; fr. mále, "badly," facio, "to do"] An evil deed, offence, crime; mischief, harm.
má-lo-us, a, um, adj. [root mal, "to be black"] cp. mébus] Bed of its kind.
mándá-tum, ti, n. [mand(a)-o] A command, order.
mándo, davi, datum, dare, 1. v. a. [mán-us, "hand," do, "to put"] To enjoin, command; to betake one's self to fight.
má-in-ó-pul-us, i, m. [a lengthened form of má-in-ól-us, for man-ól-üs; fr. man-us, "hand," (1) connecting vowel; pl-ô, "to fill"] In the early times of the Romans, the standard of a company of soldiers was a pole surmounted by a small bundle, as it were a mere handful of hay or straw; A company of soldiers belonging to the same standard; a maniple.
mansué-túdo, tándinis, f. [for man-sué-t-ús; fr. mansuét-us, "gentle"] Gentleness, mildness, clemency.
má-nus, nús, f. [root má or man, meaning first (1) to touch, as in manus; (2) to measure, as modus, metier, metace, mensis; Gk. μέτρον, μέτρον; Goth. mins (moon); Eng. moon, month; (3) to think, mens; moneo, meniri, mentio; Gk. μένουμα, μενούμαν, μενούμα] A hand.
máre, is, n. [root mar, "to die," Sans. maru, "death;" Slav. moro; Celtic mor; Lith. moras, nanas; Gothic, maru; Irish, mar, "sea,"] or. mar, "to be bright;" as marmon; marnius; English, mere, "sea" in mermaid. The sea.
márt-íminus, ítima, ítimum, adj. [már-ta, "the sea"] On the sea-coast; bordering on the sea; maritime.
mártar-a,ae,f. A Celtic javelin or pike.
má-ter, tris, f. [root ma, "to produce;" Gk. μητρί] A mother.
mátr-imónium, ímóni, n. [mater, matris, "mother"] Marriage, matrimony.
mátu-e, adv. [mátrus] Early, speedily, soon.
mátrur-o, ávi, átum, are, 1. v. a. [ma-
### VOCABULARY

- **mátrix**, s. um, adj. [mirr] To wonder; to wander, or marvel at.
- **mirus**, s. um, adj. [mirr] "to wonder, question, or inquire".
- **mínus**, comp. adv. [minor] Less; nihilominus (sometimes written as a single word, nihilominus), by nothing the less, i.e. none the less, nevertheless, notwithstanding.—To make an emphatic negation: Not at all, in no degree: minus posse, he was quite unable.
- **minór**, ratus sum, riri. 1. v. dep. To wonder; to wander, or marvel at.
- **mirus**, s. um, adj. [mirr] "to wonder, question, or inquire".

---

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Vocabulary</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| misér- **or**, 1. v. dep. | Miserable |}

---

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Vocabulary</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>misér- <strong>or</strong>, 1. v. dep.</td>
<td>Miserable</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
munic-fio, tómis, f. [munio, "to fortify"] A fortifying, the act of raising fortifications; a fortification, rampart.
munus, áris, n. A gift, present.
mur-us, i. m. [for munus; see moenia] A wall of a city.

N.

nam, conj. For.
am-que, conj. [nam, "for" suffix, que] An emphatic confirmative particle: For, for indeed, for truly.
na(n)-cor, nactus sum, nancisci, 3. v. dep. To get, obtain. To meet with, find.
na-soor (old form gna-), tua sum, sci, 3. v. dep. [for gna-soor; root one- gn-an; op. yés-or; gigno, gens, genus] To be born.—Of a hill, etc.: To rise, spring.
na-tío, tónis f. [na-soor, "to be born"] A nation, race of people.
na-túra, turae, f. [id.] The nature, i.e. the natural property, of a thing; natural situation or position of a country, etc.
na-tus, tás (found only in Abl. sing.) m. [na-soor, "to be born"] Birth, age, years.
nav-o, ávi, átum, áre, l. v. a. [náv-us (=gnáv-us), "diligent"] To do, perform, accomplish with diligence or zeal.
nav-lícula, lóciula, f. dim. [nav-is, "a vessel"] A small vessel; a boat.
navis, is, f. A ship, vessel [akin to Gr. vais; Sans. náus].
ná, adv. and conj. Adv.: No, not—ne quidem, not even. Conj.: That not; lest. After words denoting fear: That. After words denoting a hindrance: That one, etc., should not, etc., do; from doing, etc.
né, exclam. and interrogative particle: Whether:—ne ... an ... an, whether ... or whether ... or whether ... or whether ... or whether
neoc: see neque.
néc-es-sário, adv. [necessári-us, "necessary"] Unavoidably, necessarily.
néc-es-sári-us, ária, árium, adj. [nec- cesse, "needful"] Needful, necessary: pressing, urgent; nearly related to one through natural ties.—As Subst.: necessarius, ii, m. A relative, kinsman.
néc-es-sa-tas, itátis, f. [id.] Need, necessity, urgency, unavoidable force of circumstances, necessity.
néc-es-sá-tudo, itádinis, f. [id.] Relationship; friendship, intimacy.

lec-ne, conj. [nec, "not;" ne, "or"] Or not.

néc-o, ávi or ói, átum, áre, l. v. a. [root nák, "to harm"] Lat. neco, nex, necare, nox, niger; Gr. νέκως, νέκος] To kill.
néc-gígo, léxi, lectum, ligére, s. v. a [for nec-gígo; fr. nec, "not;" légno, "to gather"] To neglect.
néc-o, ávi, átum, áre, l. v. a. ("To say no to;" hence) To deny.
nég-ótium, ótii, n. [for neg-ótium; fr. nec, "not;" ótium, "leisure"] An affair, matter, business.
né-mo, minis, comm. gen. [contr. fr. ne-homo; fr. ne, "not;" homo, "a person"] No person, no one, nobody.
né-que, (contracted nec), conj. [né, "not;" que, "and"] Neither, nor, and not.
né-quiquam, adv. [ne, "not;" quiquam, adversial abl. neut. of quisquam, "any"] In vain, to no purpose, causelessly.
ne-utor (disyll.), utra, utrum, adj. [ne, "not;" uter, in force of "either" of two] Neither of the two, neither one nor the other.
nerv-us, is, m. Plur.: Might, power, neu, see nève.
né-ve, (contracted neu), conj. And not, nor.
nex, nécis, f. [see neco] Death; esp. violent death.
nihil; see nihilum.

nihilum, i apocopated nihil, contr.
nill. indecl., n. [for nihilum; fr. ne, "not;" nihilum, "a mark," or nullum, "a thread"] Nothing.—Nihilum—nihil minus (or as one word, nihilominus, adv.), not at all the less, nevertheless, notwithstanding.
nihilum, n. [see nihilum.]
ní: see nihilum.
ní-si, conj. [ne, "not;" si, "if"] If not, i.e., unless, except.
nitor, níssus, or níxus sum, niti, 3. v. dep. With Abl.: To rely, or depend, upon.
nóbilis, bile, adj. [nó-bí-sis] Renowned, celebrated, famed; of noble birth, highborn. As Subst.: nóbilis, i, m. A nobleman.
nóbil-us, itátis, f. [nóbil-ís, "noble"] The nobility, the nobles.
noceó, úi, útum, úre, 2. v. a. [see neco] To harm or injure.
noctu, [abl. of obsolete noctus=nox] By night; in the course of the night.
nōcturnus, urus, urum, adj. [nos, nōctis, "night"] Of or belonging to night, by night; nocturnal.

nō-ō, oōl, oōle, o. v. irreg. [contracted fr. ne, volo; nē, "not;" volo, "to wish"] Not to wish, not to be unwilling.

nō-men, minis, n. [non-so] A name, purpose, design: suo nomine on his own account.

nōminā-tim, adv. [nōmin(a)no, "to name"] By name, expressly.

nōmin-o, avī, atum, āre, l. v. a. [nō-men, nōmin-is, "a name"] To name; to specify or mention by name.

noν, adv. Not — non placed before a negative word forms, in connection with it, a slight affirmative: non nuncquam, or as one word, nonnullum, nonnullus, sometimes; non nullus, or as one word, nonnullus, not (i.e. some).

non-a-ginta. num. adj. indecl. ninth; ("Ninth tert.: [nonus, ninth"] (a) connecting vowel; ginta = kōta = "ten.")

non-dum, adv. [non, "not;" dum, "yet"] "I Not yet.

non-nullus, nulla, nullum, adj. [non, "not;" nullus, "empty;" nonnullus, "never;" see non] Some.

non-nunquam, adv. [non, "not;" nunquam, "never"] Sometimes.

nos-ter, tra, trem, pron. poss. [nos, our own, ours: as Subst.: nostri, ourm. plur. Our men.

nōvum, num. adj. indecl. nine.

nōvus, a, un, adj.: New: novae res, a change in the state, a revolution. Sup.: Last. As Subst.: nōvissimī, òrum. m. plur. Of soldiers: Those in the rear of an army, the rear. Where a thing is last, the last part of a thing: novissimum agmen, the last part of the men on march, the rear.

nōx, noctis, f. [see mōco]. Night.

nūbo, nūm and nupta sum), nuptum nūbēre. 3. v. a. and n. [nūbēs, "a cloud"] (hence, to put on the bridal veil) To marry or wed, to be married.

nūd-o, avī, atum, āre, l. v. a. [nūd-us, "naked"] With Abi: To strip of, leave bare of or without; to leave exposed to the enemy: to leave defenseless.

nūd-us, a, un, adj. Naked, bare.

nūl-us, uła, ullum, adj. [for ne-ullus; fr. nē, "not;" ullus, "any"] Not any, none, no; sometimes with Gen. of thing distributed.

nūm, interrogrant particle: In direct questions without any corresponding force in English. In indirect questions: Whether.
VOJABULAKY.


ob-timéo, timt, tentum, thère, 2. v. a. [ob-timéo; fr. "without force;" ténéo, "to hold"] To hold or occupy; to acquire, get possession of, obtain.

ob-vénio, vēni, ventum, vēnire, 4. v. n. [ob, "before;" vēni, "to come"] With dat. To fall to the lot of.

occā-sus, sūs, m. [for occadsus; fr. occido, "to set;"] Of the sun: The setting or going down.

occido, oldi, oldum, oldīre, 3. v. a. [for ob-cacdo; fr. ob, "against;" cacdo, "to strike"] To cut down, kill, slay, slaughter.

occulto, tāvi, tātum, tāre, 1. v. a. intens. [occūlo, "to hide"] To hide, conceal.


occupātus, a, um. P. perf. pass. of occipio: Busy, engaged, occupied.

oc-cō-po, avi, atmum, aäre, 1 v a for ob-cacpo; fr. oh, "without force;" cap, root of capio, "to take" To take or lay hold of; to seize; to occupy, hold possession of.

oc-curro, curri (rarely oc-curri, cursum, curriēre, 3. v. n. [for ob curro; fr. oh, "up or towards;" curro, "to run;"

With dat. To hinder, oppose, prevent.

ocēōnus, i, m. The Ocean, [oceans.]

oct-avus, āvī, āvum, num. adj. [octo, "eighth"] Eighth.

octo, num adj. indecl. Eighth. [octa-

octō-decim, num. adj. indecl. [for octo-decem; fr. octo, eight; decem, "ten"] Eighteen.

octō-ginta, num. adj. indecl. ["Eighty-Octo-ginta" Eighty [octo, eight; ginta, koptē = "ten."]

ōd-iōlus, ill. m. An eye.

ōdi. issu, v. defect. To hate.

offendo, fendō, fendium, fendere, 3. v. a. [for ob-fendo; fr. ob, "against;" fendo (obsol.), "to strike;"] To mortify, vex, annoy, offend the feelings.

offen-sio, slōnis, f. (for offend-sio; for offendo, "to offend;") A giving offence to; an offending, or displeasing, of.

offēro, obtūli, obtūatūm, offerre, v.a. Irreg. [for ob-fērē; fr. ob, "towards;" fērō, "to bring;"] To present, offer.

officium, i, n. [for op-facium; fr. (ops) opis, "aid;" facio, "to perform;" duty, service, allegiance.

o-mitto, misi, mission, mittēre, [for ob-mitto; fr. ob, "without force;" mitto, "to let go"] Of advice: To neglect, disregard.

omn-ino, adv. [omnis] Altogether, at all.

omnis, e, adj. All.

ōnymus, e, adj. [root Ar, "to breathe," i.e., "what makes one breathe;" see animus] A burden, load.

ōpēr-a, ae, f. [ōpēr-or, "to work"] Work, labour.

ōpor-tet, sit, are, [only in 3rd person and inf. mood 2. v. n. (It) is necessary, fit, proper, right; (it) behoves.

oppidā-num, a, um. adj. [oppium, "a town"] Of or belonging to a town. As Subst.: oppidānim, um, m. Townsmen, townsmen.

oppidum, i, n A town.

opin-io, tōnis, f. [opinor, "to think"]. Opinion, belief, reputation.

op-port-ūnum, ās, ānum, adj. [for ob-portūnum; fr. ob, "over, against;" port-us, "a harbour"] Convenient, suitable, reasonable, opportunities.

op-primo, pressi, pressum, primērē, 3. v. a. [for ob-prēmo, fr. ob, "against;" prēmo, "to press;"] To crush, overwhelm, overpower.

op-pugna, pugnāvi, pugnātum, pugnāre, i. v. a. [for ob-pugna; fr. ob, "against;" pugna, "to fight"] To attack, lay siege to, besiege, a city.

op-s, is, (Nom. Sing. does not occur, and the Dat. Sing. is found perhaps only once; fr. [probably for ap-s, fr. root Ar, whence ap-sor, "to obtain"] Means of any kind; wealth, riches, resources.

optim-o, sup. adv. [optimus, "best"]; In the best way; very or exceedingly well.

optimus, a, um. sup. adj. Best; very good or favourable.

ōpux, ēris, Work, labour; a military work, fortification.

ōpus only in Nom. and Acc. a. ind. Need, necessity. In connection with some part of sun used as an Adj. Necessary.

ōrā-tio, tōnīa, f. [or(a)to, "to speak"] A speech, oration.

ord-o, his, m. [ord-or, "to weave"] Arrangement, order; a line, rank, of soldiers.

ōre, a. nis, P. pres. of or-or, "to weave" in orienium solem, towards the rising sun, i.e. the East.
VOCABULARY.

or-tor, tus sum, tri. 3. and 4 v. dep. (root or, "to rise;" Gk. ὀρέος) Of the heavenly bodies: To rise, become visible; to begin, commence.

ornamento, menti, n. [orn(a)-o, "to adorn"] Ornament, decoration.

ôr, áv, átum, are, 1. v. a. [os, ör, is, "the mouth"] To pray, beg, entreat, beseech.

ostendo, tendi tensum, tendère, 3. v. a. (for obs-endo; fr. obs (= ob), "be-fore against;" tendo, "to stretch out") To show, exhibit, display; to declare, set forth, make known.

pâblâ-tile, Monis, f. [pabl(a)-or, "to forge"] A foraging, collecting of fodder.

pâbulum, hollum, m. [pa-soo, "to feed"] Of animals: Food, fodder.

pâcâbus, a, um P. perf. pass. of pâco: Undisturbed, tranquil, in a state of peace.

pâco, ávi, átum, are, 1. v. a. [pax, peace] To bring into a state of peace or quietness; to tranquillize.

paeae, adv. Nearly, almost.

pâgus, i. m. A canton; i.e. A district of the Gauls or Germans; the people of a canton. [See pax.]

pâlam, zie. Openly.

pâlus, ãdus, f. A swamp, marsh [hybrid word: for pal-u-s; fr. pal-âs, "clay"; adus, "wet, moist.

pando, pandi, panum and passum, pandère, 3. v. a. To open, throw open P. perf. pass. Of the hair: Disheveled.

par, paris, adj. Equal; sometimes with Dat.

pârâbus, a, um P. perf. pass. of pâro. Ready, prepared.

pârâo, oss, ntum, are, 2. v. n. To obey.

pâr-ô, ávi, átum, are, 1. v. a. To make, or get, ready; to prepare.

paré, tis, f. A part, piece, portion, share.

partim, adv. [old acc. form of part, "a part," and used adverbially] Partly, in part. -As Subst.: Some...-partim...-partim...-same...same.

parv-us, la, slum, adj. dimin. [parv-us, "small"] Slight, trifling, petty.

parvus, va, yum, adj. Small, little.

pas-sus, sus, m. [for pad-sus; fr. pad, "to go"] A step or pace. As a measure of length: A pace equal to five Roman feet.

pât-e-fâcio, fâci, fâctum, fâcère, 3.v. a. [pateo, "to lie open;" (e), connecting vowel; fâcto, "to make"] To open, throw open.

pâtens, ntis, P. pres. of pateo: Open, lying open, to attack.

pât-ô, oss, ntum, are, 2. v. n. To lie, stand, or be open; to stretch out, extend.

pâ-ter, tris, m. A father, as one who protects. [root pa, "to feed." cp. psaco.

pâtior, passus, sum, pâti, 3. v. dep. To bear, endure; to allow, permit, suffer.

pât-rus, sa, mum, adj. [pater, patris] Of, or belonging to, a father; a father's; paternal; hereditary.

paucus, a, um, adj. Sing.: Small, whether in size or extent. Plur.: Few. As Subst.: Pauca, omn. m. plur. Few persons, few.

paul-âtum, adv. [paul-us, "little"] By little and little, by degrees, gradually.

paul-isper, adv. [id.] For a little while; for a short time.

paul-o, adv. (adverbial abl. of paul-us, "a little") By a little, a little, somewhat.

paululo-um, adv. [adverbial neut. of paulus, "very little"] A very little, just a little.

pauluo-um, adv. [adverbial neut. of paulus, "little"] A little, somewhat.

pâx. pales. f. (for paces; fr root râc, "to bind;" hence, pâlus, pâga, pagina; Gk. πάγιον) Peace.

pâco, ávi, átum, are, 1 v. n. To do amiss, commit a fault, transgress, offend, do wrong.

pâd-es, tis. m. Of pât-îte; fr. pes, podis, "a foot;" (e) epithectic; f. root of âo, "to go." A foot soldier. Pur: Infantry.

ped-ester, estris, estré, adj. [pes, "a foot"] On foot, that goes on foot;—pedestres copiae, foot forces, infantry.

pel-îa, is, f. A skin or hide [akin to πέλας, "a hide").

pello, pêpâl, pûlûm, pûlëre, 3. v. a. To beat, throut, ut to flight.

pendo, pêpendi and pendi, pexam, pendère, 3. v. a. [prob. akin to ped-îe, "to hang"] To weigh, rough out; to pay.

pêr, prep. gov. acc.: Through, through the midst of; all over or along; through by means of.

percutâ-tio, tionis, f. [percus- (s)-or, "to enquire"] An enquiring, inquisitive.
VOCABULARY.

per-duco, dux, ductum, ducter, 3. v. a. [per, "through"; "duco," "to lead"] Of a ditch, building: To bring, carry.

per-sō, sī vi or il. litum, ire, v. n. irreg. [per, "through"; só, "to go"] To perish, lose one's life, die.

per-fācillus, fācile, adj. [pēr, in "augmentative" force; facili, "easy"] Very easy.

per-sāro, tall, lātum, ferre, v. irreg. [pēr, "without force"; sóro, "to bear"] To bear, submit to, endure.

per-fīco, fīcī, fectum, fīcere, 3 v. a. [for per-fīcō; fr. per, "completely"; fīco, "to make"] To accomplish, execute; to complete.

per-fringo, frāgi, fractum, fringere, 3 v. a. [for per-frangō; fr. prēr, "through"; frango, "to break"] To break, to break through.

per-fūg-a, ae, m. [per-fūg-ī, "to desert"] A deserter to the enemy.

per-fugō, fūgō, fugārum, fugāre, 3 v. a. [per, "quite"; fugō, "to flee"] To flee for refuge; to go over, or desert, to the enemy.

pērī-cl-ītōr, fītās sum, fātā, 1. v. dep. n. (pērī-cl-um, "a trial, experiment") To try, prove, put to the test.

pērī-cl-ōnus, ōnus, ōnun, adj. [pērī-cl-um, "danger"] Full of danger, dangerous, perilous.

pērī-cl-um, cūlī, n. [obsol. pērī-or, "to try"] A trial, experiment, attempt; with Objective Gen.: perī-clum facere (alēctūs), to make trial of one, put one to the test; danger, peril.

pērī-tus, ta, tum, adj. [obsol. pērī-or, "to try"] With Gen.: Acquainted with, skilled in.

pēr-mānō, manus, manum, mānere, 2. v. n. [pēr, "to the end"; manānō, "to stay"] To stay to the end, to continue, endure, remain.

per-mitto, mīsī, missum, mittēre, 3. v. a. [pēr, "through"; mītto, "to let go"] To give leave, or permission, to; to permit or allow: sometimes with Dat.

per-movēo, mōvī, mōtum, mōvēre, 2. v. a. [pēr, "thoroughly"; movō, "to move"] To influence, affect, more deeply; to induce, persuade, prevail upon.

percnic-ēs, ēs, ēs. [for pernicēs; fr. pernic-ēo, "to kill utterly"] Destruction, ruin.

per-paucus, paucus, paucum, adj. [pēr, "very"; paucus, "little"] Sing.: Very little. Plur.: Very few.

perpētū-o, adv. [perpētū-us "constant"] Constantly, uninterruptedly, perpetually.

perpētū-us, us, nom. adj. [per, "through"; root PAT, "to extend"] Op. patē; Gk. perāvnumij Constant, perpetual; wholly, entire.

per-prō, prēpi, ruptum, rumpere, 3. v. a. [per, "through"; rumpō, "to break"] To break, or burst, through.

per-sēqūor, sēquās sum, sēquās, 3. v. dep. [per, in " augmentative" force; sēquās, "to follow"] To follow perseveringly, to continue to follow.

persēvēr-o, āvi, ātum, āre, 1. v. n. [persēvērus, "very strict"] To persist, persevere.

per-solvo, solvi, solūtum, solvere, 3. v. a. [pēr, "thoroughly"; solvo, "to pay"] Of punishment: to pay.

per-śpiciō, spexi, spectum, spectūre, 3. v. a. [for per-śpiciō; fr. per, "thoroughly"; spēcō, "to see"] To ascertain, learn.

per-sūādeo, sūa, suāsum, suādre, 2. v. a. [per, "thoroughly"; sūaedeo, "to advise"] To convince, persuade, induce.

per-ter-ō, terrī, terrītum, terrēre 2. v. a. [pēr, "thoroughly"; terrēo, "to frighten"] To frighten thoroughly; to strike with terror.

pertināci-a, lae, f. [per-tinax, pertinacius, "obstinate"] Obstinacy, pertinacity.

per-tiño, tīnī, tēnītum, tīnīre, 2 v. n. [for per-tēnīo; fr. pēr, "thoroughly"; tēnēo, "to hold"] To reach, or extend, to a place; to belong, relate or have reference to.

per-turbo, turbāri, turbātum, turbāre 1. v. a. [pēr, "utterly"; turbō, "disturb"] To disturb utterly, to throw into an uproar, to dispute, to compose, to enter, to disturb.
VOCABULARY.

pi-lum, ii, n. A heavy javelin used by the Roman infantry.

pi-llus, i, m. The divisions of the Tri-

us in the Roman army—so in connection with primus; see primi-plius [either fr. pilum, "a javelin," and so, "that which has the pultum."]

plae-oc, ci, itum, esc, 2, v n. To be pleasing or agreeable; to please. Impers. With Dat.: Plaeirit: If pleasing, or seemed or good; it was resolved.

plau-sites, itet, f. [plau-us, "flat""]

A flat or even surface, a plain.

plen-o, s. f. [root PLEX, "to be full;"

plenus; πλήθος] The multitude or mass; the populace.

plerumque adv. [adverbial neut. of pleuragun, "the greater part of"] For the most part, generally.

plerus-que, pleur-que, pleurum-que, adj. [a strengthened form of pleuris, "very many"] Rare in Sing.: The larger or greater part of; the majority of.

plur-um, sup. adv. [adverbial neut. of pluri-us: Most

plur-us, rima, rimum, sup. adj. [pl. of ple-o, "to fill;"

(i) connecting vowel; simus, superl. suffix: = ple-

simus; changed as follows: pleo-simus, pleo-simus, pleo-simus, pleo-simus] Sing.: Very much. Plur.: Very many, most numerous.

plus, pluris (Plur. plures, plura), comp adj [contr and changed fr. ple-or, pleo, root of ple-o, "to fill;"

(i) comparative suffix, "or""] More


poena, ae, f [root PO, "to purify"

or "to cleanse;"

(i) connecting vowel; simus, superl. suffix: = ple-

simus; changed as follows: pleo-simus, pleo-simus, pleo-simus, pleo-simus] Sing.: Very much. Plur.: Very many, most numerous.

post-ica, adj. [posed-sio, "to possess;"

(i) possession, occupation.

post-sidé, addi, sessum, sidére, 2 v.

a. [for post-sidé; fr. post (inseparable prefix, "much;"

(i) to sit") To have and hold; to be master of; to own or possess; to take, or hold, possession of.

postsum, postiti, no sup., possesse, v. n.

irrevers; fr. pote, "able;"

sum, "to be") To be able, or powerful;

to have power to do, etc., something.

post, adv. and prep. [perhaps contrac-

ted from pone ("behind") est, "it is"] Adv.: Of time: Afterwards, after later.—Prep. gov. Acc.: Of place: After, behind: Of time; After, subsequent to.

post-8a, adv. [probably for post-sam, i.e., post, "after;"

i.e., "after;"

imm. acc. sing. fem.

is, "this;"

that") After this or that.

Afterwards, in combination with quam, or as one word: After that.

postéa-quam: see postea.

post-érs, ére, érum, adj. [post]

Coming after, following, next.

post-8uam, (also written as two words, post quam, conj. [post, "after;"

quam, "that"] After that, when, as soon as.
post-r-i-die, adv. contr. fr postér-i-die, i.e. poster om. the respective ablative of postér-us, "following;" dies, "day;" with (i) connecting vowel. On the day after, on the following day, on the morrow.

postul-ā-tum, n. [postul(a)o] Mostly plur.: A thing demanded; a demand.

postulō, āvi, ātum, āre, 1. v. a. [usually considered akin to posco] To demand, request, require, desire.

pōtens, nīs, (part. pres. of possum; but found only adj.) Mighty, powerful, strong, potent, etc.

pōtēnt-ātus, ātis, masc. [pōtēns, pōtēnt-is, "powerful"] Political power, dominion, rule, command.

pōtēnt-ās, āsa, f. [id.] Might, force, power; authority, sway, influence.

pōtēs-tas, tās, f. [for pōtēsan; fr. pōtēns, pōtēnt-is, "powerful"] Power, power, possibility, opportunity; poëtætum subjacent, to give, or present, an opportunity (of himself, i.e.) of fighting with him; ch. 40.

pōt·or, ātus, sum. tri. 4. v. dep pōtēs, "powerful"

pōt·us, comp. adv. [adverbial, neuter of potior, "preferable"] Preferably, rather, more:—potius quam, rather than.

praē, prep. gov. abl [skia to pro, "before"] In comparison of, compared with.

praē·cōtūs, ēntā, ēntum, adj. [praē, "before;" ēntus, "sharp"] Sharp towards, or at, the end; sharp at the point.

praē-bō, bā, bitum, bērē, 2. v. a. [contrasted fr. praē-bābō; praē, "before;" bābō, "to have or hold"] To supply, furnish, provide.

praē-cūvēo, cūvi, cūntum, cūvēre, 2. v. n. [praē, "before;" cēre, "to take head"] To take head beforehand; to beware, be on one's guard.

praē-cēdō, cessi, cessum, cēdēre, 3. v. a. [praē, "before;" cēdo, "to go"] To surpass, exceed.

praē-cep-s, ceptitus adj. [for praē-capitēs; fr. praē, "before;" capitum, capit-is, "the head"] In headlong haste; headlong; in adverbial force precipitately.

praē-cipō, cīpi, cēptum, cēpēre, 4. v. a. and n. [for praē-cēpō; fr. praē, "before;" cēre, "to take"] To stō, sit, direct, order, bid, command.

praēcipūt-e, adv. [praēcipuus, "especially;"

praē-dico, dicavi, dicāvum, dicäre, 1. v. a. [praē, "publicly;" dicō, "to proclaim"] To proclaim publicly; to declare, publish, announce.

praēd-or, ātus sum, āri, 1. v. dep. [praēdus, "plunder"] To plunder, spoil, pilage, etc.

praefect-us, ti. m. [for praēfectu-tus; fr. praē-fico, "to set before"] A prefect, commander.

praē-fēro, fērō, fētum, fēre, v. a. [praē, "before;" fēro, "to bear or carry"] With Person: Pronoun in reflexive force: With Dat.: To put, or place, one's self, etc., in front of or before.

praē-ficio, fēci, fēctum, fēscē, s. v. a. [for praē-fico, fr. praē, "before;"

praē-mītto, mitto, mittum, mittēre, 1. v. a. [praē, "before;" mittō, "to send"] To set or place over, to appoint to the command of.

praē-scribō, scripsi, scriptum, scribēre, 3. v. a. [praē, "before;"

praē-scrip-tum, ti. a. [for praēscrip-tum; fr. praē-scribo, "to write"] To order, appoint, direct, prescribe.

praē-scrip-tus, ti. m. [for praēscrip-tus; fr. praē-scribo, "to write"] An order, command.

praē-scribo, scripsi, scriptum, scribēre, 3. v. a. [praē, "before;"

praē-sens, entis (abl. sing. usually present of persons, present of things) adj. [praē, "before;" sūm, "to be"] Present.

praē-sent-i, a, ĕ, 1. a. [praēsens, praē-SENT-is, "present"] A bringing present, presence. Phrase: In praēsenti. For the present, at present.

praē-ser-tim, adv. [praē, "before;"

praē·sto, stītum, stāre, 1. v. n. and a. [praē, "before;" stō, "to stand"] To be superior to; to
VOCABULARY.

surpasa, excel. Act.: To give, supply, furnish

praesum, fti, esse, v. n. [praes, "before;" sum, "to be"] With that; To have set over; To have the charge, or command of.

praet-er, prep. gov. acc. [praes, "before;" demonstrative suffix ter] Past. beyond; besides, in addition to, except.

praetē-rē-sā, adv. [for praetēr-eam; fr. praeter, "beyond;" eam, acc. sing. fem. of prim, "this"] Besides, moreover, further.

praetē-rē-tus, ta. tum, adj. [praetēr-is, "to go by"] As Subst.: praetērita, ārum, n. plur. Things past; the past.

praetōr, toris, m (contracted fr. praetēr; fr. prae, "to go before") A praetōr; a Roman magistrate charged with the administration of justice. At the end of his year of office he was generally sent to some Province as its governor.

praetē-rō, praetē-ī-tus, ta. tum, adj. [praetēr-is (praetōr, praetē-is, "a commander, general"); of, or belonging to, a praetēr; praetērō, praetērōs; praetērōcia cohōrīs, a praetērōcia cohōrīs, i.e. the cohort attached to a general as his body guard.

prēces, um; see prex.

prē-hendo, hendī, hendum, hendere, 3. v. a. [praec, in "augmentative" force; obsol. hendō, "to lay hold of;" akin to Gr. hēdō, "to hold"] To lay hold of firmly; to seize, grasp.

prēmo, presī, pressum, prēmēre, 3. v. a. In war: To press hard or close, to vex, harass, beset with difficulties.

prēndō, prendere, prēnsum, prendere, 3. v. a. A contracted form of prēndō; see prēhendo.

prē-tium, tumult. [akin to piēsēa, "to buy."] Price cost.

prex, prexīs (Nom. and Gen. Sing. obsol. mostly in plur. I. [for preexīs fr. prē-o; "to ask"] A prayer, request, petition.

prē-die, adv. [for prē-die; fr. prae, "before;" die, abl. sing. of diēs, "day"] On the day before.

prīm-ē-plūs, (also prim-ā-plūs), plūs, m. [prīm-us, "the first or chief;" (I) or (O), connecting vowel; plūs, "the triāriōs; see plūs] The first, or chief, centurion of the triāriōs. The first word is obtained by the ellipse of centurio, centurio, in the expression primus plūs, and by combining primus and plūs together by means of a connecting vowel.

prīm-o, prīm-um, adv. [prīm-us, prīm-um, "first"] At first, in the first place; quām primus, as soon as possible.

prī-mus, ma. Maur., sup. adj. [for prī-meus; fr. prae, "before;" with suppletive suffix mus] First, the first. Of time: primā,ce, at daybreak or dawn.

In order, rank, etc.: The first, principal.

—Phrase: In primis: Principally, especially.

prīm-cap-s, capi-um, adj. [for prim-cap-s; fr. prim-us, "first;" capi-um, "to take"] First, whether in order or time.

—Of rank: The first, principal, chief, as Subst.: princes, pīs, m. A chieftain; a chief person, leading man.

prīn-ci-pātus, attic., m. [prīn-ci-pī, principālis, "a chief"] The first or chief place; the prīn-ci-pātus, chief authority, chiefly, the chief or first rank.

prī-ōr, us, comp. adj. [for prī-ōr; fr. prae, "before;" comparative suffix, or] Former; often to be translated first.

As Subst.: prīores, um, m. plur. The former ones, the first mentioned.

prīs-tinus, tīnus, tūnum, adj. [obser, "to keep;" Former; old, ancient.

prītius, comp adv. [adverbial neut. of prior, "before"]; sooner: prīs-tus, as one word, prīs-tus, sooner than, before that.

prīs-quām; see prius.

prīvā-tus, ta. tum, adj. [privā-a, "to make privus," i.e. "single"] Private.

prō, prep. gov. abl. : Before, in front of; for, in behalf of, in favour of; for, in the place of; instead of; esp. in connection with the title of any officer to denote his substitute; e.g., pro praetōrō, in proportion to, in accordance with, conformably to; as, just as, for.

prōb-o, avi, atum, are, 1. v. a. [prob-us, "good"] To prove, demonstrate.

pro-cedo, cessi, cessum, cedere, 3. v. a. [pro, "forward;" cedo, "to go"] To go forwards, advance.

pro-cul, adv. [pro, "forward;" root kum, "to drive;" cp. celer; culum] Of place: Of place: At a distance, far off.

pro-cumbo, cumbi, cumbītum, cumbītus, 3. v. a. [pro, "forwards;" obsol. cumbō, "to lie down"] Of the wounded, etc.: To fall, or sink; forwards, accompanied with a notion of subsequent protection on the ground; To fall, or sink, down.

pro-curro, curari, curāri, curārum, curāre, 3. v. a. [pro, "forwards;" curāre, "to run forwards, advance with a run or rapidly.

prō-dō, ivi or ili, tum, ire, v. n.
PROSPERITY.

earn, To (a pron. un قال) 1 v. a. [pro, "forth or forwards; forth or forward; to do, "to put"] To hand down, transmit.

PROSPERO, dux, duetum, dux, 3 v. a. [pro, "forth or forwards; do, "to put"] To hand forwards or forth.

PROSPEROR, attus sum, as, 1 v. dep. (proceumm, "a battle") To join battle, engage in battle, battle, fight.

PROSPERUM, III, n. A battle, engagement.

PROSCFIO, tiocis, t for proscfio; fr. proscfior, "to set out," departure.

PROSCIPIO, 3. a. [pro, "forth or forwards; do, "to put"] To effect, bring about, accomplish.

PROSCLIO, tectum, ficcere, 3 v. a. [pro, "forth or forwards; facto, "to make"] To set out, go, proceed.

PROSCLIO, 2 v. dep. [pro, "forth or forwards; facto, "to make"] To set out, go, proceed.

PROSCLIO, gradus sum, gradis, 3 v. a. [for pro-gradior; from pro, "forth or forward; gradior, "to step or go or"] To step or go, forth or forward; to advance, proceed.

PROSFIBEO, hibil, hibilum, hibere, 2 v. a. [for prosfibio; fr. pros, "before;" hibio, "to hold"] To hold or keep back, ward off, hinder, restrain, prevent.

PROSFJECIO, foci, fectum, ficere, 3 v. a. [pro, "forth or forwards; jacto, "to cast"] To throw or cast forwards; project on the feet at the foot of some one.

PROSMVELO, movi, motum, movere, 2 v. a. [pro, "forthwards; movo, "to move"] Of a camp: To move forwards or onwards; to advance.


PROSPERO, puli, pulsae, pellicere, 3 v. a. [pro, "forthwards;" pello, "to drive"] To drive forwards or before one's self.

prpsd-do, avl, atum, are, 1 v. n. [pro per us, "quick"] To hasten, make haste.

PROSPINOUS, iius, ius, [prospino, "near"] Neighbourhood, vicinity, proximity, nearness; relationship, affinity.

PROSPINOUS, a, um. adj. [for prospino, fr. pro, "prope;" hisa, "from this place"] Near, neighbourings, night at hand, close. Of relationship: Near, related, kindred. As Subst: prospino, i. m. A relation, relative, kindred.

PROSPINO, as, a. A female relation, etc.

PROSPERNO, pos, pataum, patare, 3 v. a. [pro, "before or forth;" pono, "to put"] To mention, state, declare. Of statement: To set forth, point out.

PROSPERIO, prep. gov. acc. [obsol. adj. prospiro, "near"] On account, or by reason, of; because of.

PROSPERIO, adv. [for prospiro, fr. pro, eam, acc. sing. fem. of is, "this or that"] On this, or that, account, therefore: prospiro quod, because that, inasmuch as.

PROSPINO, pugnavi, pugnatum, pugnare, 1 v. n. [pro, "forth or forwards;" pugno, "to fight"] To make a carry on or a rise.

PROSPINO, avl, atum, are, 1 v. n. Intes. [prospello, "to drive forwards"] To repel, drive back, ward off.

PROSPECTO, sequus sum, sequi, 3 v. dep. [pro, "forth or forwards; sequor, "to follow"] In hostile sense; To follow after, pursue, chase the enemy. —With Acc. of person and Abi. of thing: To honour or present one with something; to bestow something on one.

PROSPECUS, tis, m. [prospilo— for prospeco, "to look forwards or into the distance"] A look out, a distant view, the prospect.

PROSPECTO, specul, spectum, specere, 3 v. a. [prospecto, fr. pro, "before, before;" specio, "to see"] To look out for, to make provision or provide for.

PROSPINOUS, adv. [for prospino, fr. pro, "before;" tenuis, "up to or as far as"] Of time: Forthwith, immediately.

PROSPINOUS, vidii, visum, videre, 2 v. a. [pro, "beforehand;" viro, "to see"] To foresee; to prepare or provide for.

PROSPINOUS, avl, avlitum, alicer, 1 v. n. [pro, "forth or forwards;" velo, "to fly"] To rush out, dash forth.
VOCABULARY.

quidem, adv. Indeed:—ne quidem, At least, certainly, sooth.

quid, conj. [for qui-] ne: fr. qui, ablative of relative pron. qui, "who, which; ne- non] With Subj. That not, but that. After words expressing doubt or ignorance: That; that not, but that.

quīn-decim, num. adj. indecl. [for quīnque-decim; fr. quīnque, "five;" decem, "ten"] Fiftieth.

quīn-strām, conj. [or, as two words, quīn.-"but indeed;" etiam, "too"] But indeed too; yea too, moreover.

quīn-gent-i, ae, a, num. adj. [for quīnque-cent-i; fr. quīnqu-cent-i, "five hundred"] Five hundred.

quīn-nil, nae, na, num. distrib. adj. [for quīnque-nil; fr. quīnque-ae, "five"] Five.

quīnque-ā-qinta, num. adj indecl. ["Five tens," hence] Fivey [for quīnque-ā-qinta; fr. quīnque, "five;" (a) connecting vowel; qīnta = corāna = "ten;"]

quīnque, num. adj. indecl. Five [akin to Gr. πέντε].

quīn-tus, ta, tum, num adj. [for quīnque-tus; fr. quīnque-ae, "five"] Fifth.

quīque = quī que.

quīs, quae, quid, pron. Interrog.: In direct questions: What? i.e. what sort of a person or thing. In indirect clauses: Who or what, i.e. what person or thing. As Subst.: quīs, What person, who; quid, What thing, what.

quīs, quid, pron. indef. Anyone, anybody, anything; someone, somebody, something;—ne quīs, that no one.

quīs-nam, quae-nam, quid-nam, pron. indef. [quīs, "who or what?" suffix nam] Who, which or what, I, etc., pray.

quīs-quām, quae-quām, quid-quām, quīnque-quām, pron. indef. [quīs, "any one;" suffix quām] Any, any whatever. As Subst.: Any one, any body; nec quīs-quam, and that no one or nobody.

quīs-que, quae-que, quid-que, pron. indef. [quīs, "any;" suffix, que] Each, every, any. With Superlatives to express universality: Every most, all the most....

quīs-quis, no tem, quīs-quis or quid-quis, or quod-quis, pron indef. Whatever, whatsoever. As Subst. Whoever, whoever...

quīs-vis, quae-vis, quid-vis, pron. indef. [quīs, "who;" vis, 2. pers. sing of volo, "to will"] Who or what, you please or will; any whatever.

quō, adv. [for quōm, old form of quōm, acc. masc. sing. of quō, "who?;"

qui, quae, quid, pron. indef. [qui, "who;" quae, "what;" quid, "what?"] Who, which or what, I, etc., pray.

quī, quīm, quīm, acc. sing of quī, "who?");
VOCABULARY.

183

"back;" do, "to give;" To give back, return, restore.

ré-déo, 3. v. a. [for ré-dégo; fr. ré (see reddo). "without force;" ago, "to lead;" To bring or reduce into a certain state.

ré-dégo, actum, igère, 3. v. a. [for ré-dégo; fr. red (see reddo). "without force;" ago, "to lead;" To bring by contract, to farm; to obtain, procure.

ré-intégr, i. v. a. (red see reddo), "again;" intégr, "to make whole;" To restore, renew.

ré-dito, tiónis, l. [ré-déo, "to return;" through true root RED] A returning, return.

ré-dúc-o, duxi, ductum, dicère, 3. v. a. [ré, "back;" die, "to lead;" To lead, or conduct, back.

ré-fégo, tali, latum, ferre, v. a. irreg. [re, "back;" fer; see ré] To bring, or carry, back or backwards: pedem referre (to carry the foot backwards; I.e.) to retire, retreat; to give back, return, reply; gratiam referre: see gratia; To relate, mention.

ré-fringó, frégi, fractum, fringére, 3. v. a. [for réfrango; fr. ré, "back;" frango, "to break;" To break open.

ré-go, tónis, l. [ré-gó, "to direct;" To direct, territory, region.

ré-num, n. [régo, "to rule;" Sovereign, supreme power; a kingdom.

ré-grádior, gresum sum, grád, 3. v. dep. [for ré-grádior; fr. ré, "back;" grádior, "to step;" To return; To withdraw, retire, retreat.

ré-jác-o, jácétum, jácere, 3. v. a. [for ré-jáco, fr. ré, "back;" jäco, "to cast;" Of weapons: To cast, throw, or hurl back; To beat back, force back, repel, the enemy; To sting aside, cast away.

ré-languesco, langui, no sup., languece, 3. v. n. [ré, "without force;" languece, "to become faint or languid;" Of the mind: To become feeble or faint; To become enervated.

ré-línquo, liqui, lietum, luquère, 3. v. a. [ré, "behind;" linquo, "to leave;" To leave behind in a place.

ré-liqui-us, um, adj. [ré, "back;" linquo, "to leave;" That is left or remaining. As Subst. realium, n. That which remains, a remainder; nihil reliquii (nothing of a remainder, I.e., nothing remaining, or left.

ré-mán-ðo, mani, no sup., mánere, 2. v. n. [ré, "behind;" mánéo, "to remain;" To remain or stay behind.

ré-mís-car, no perf. iac., 3. v. dep. [see mensa] To call back to mind, remember.

ré-mít-tor, mis, missum, mittère, 3. v. a. [ré, "back;" mittio, "to send;" To send back; To give up, surrender.

ré-mové-o, movi, motum, movère, 3. v. a. [ré, "back;" movéo, "to move;" To remove, withdraw, send away.

ré-múneror, múnerus sum, múneri, 1. v. dep. [ré, "in return;" múneror, "to give or bestow, as a present;" To recompense, reward, repay, requite.

ré-mus, m. [prob. for ret-mus, akin to l-per-ús, an ear;] op. speqü, "to row;" An ear.

ré-nuntio, nuntiátum, nuntiátum, nuntiáre, 1. v. a. [ré, "back;" nuntio, "to bring word;" To bring, or carry back word; to report.

ré-pello, pulc, pulsum, pellère, 3. v. a. [ré, "back;" pellio, "to drive;" To drive back, repulse, repel.

ré-pent-e, adv. [répens, repentis, "sudden;" Suddenly, on a sudden.

ré-pentino, adv. [répens, repentis, "sudden;" Suddenly, on a sudden.

ré-pens, nus, nunum, adj. [répens, repentis, "sudden;" Sudden, unexpected.

ré-péllo, pél, pertum, pérte, 3. v. a. [lé, "back;" péllo, "to produce;" To find or meet with; to find out, discover, ascertain.

ré-pó-sito, pité, píté, pítum, pité, pético, 3. v. a. [ré-pétio; fr. ré, "again;" pétio, "to produce;" To find or meet with; to find out, discover, ascertain.

ré-pré-ex-ant-o, ati, atum, are, 1. v. a. [ré, "without force;" praesens, praesentis, "present;" To do, or perform, at once, or immediately.

ré-pré-hendo, préhendi, préhensum, préhendere, 3. v. a. [ré, "back;" préhendo, "to seize;" To blame, censure, find fault with.

ré-púdi-o, ati, atum, are, 1. v. a. [repúdi-um, l. a. "a divorce;" hence, "to divorce;" hence] To reject, refuse.
VOCABULARY.

res, ré, f. [root vor], "to speak;" cp. ver-bum; Gr. étoú, étoú] A thing, matter, affair.

ré-scindo, soldi, scissum, scindere, 3, v, a. [ré, "away;" scindo, "to cut"] To cut away, or to pieces; to break up a bridge.

ré-scisco, setvi or soli, sittum, scissère, 3, v, a. [ré, "without force;" scisco, "to ascertain"] To ascertain, find out, learn, get intelligence of.

re-scribo, scripsi, scriptum, scribere, 3, v, a. [ré, "again;" scribo, "to write;"] Of soldiers: To enrol anew; to re-enlist; a word used when soldiers were transferred from their original corps to some other part of the army.

ré-servō, servavi, servátum, servare, 1, v, a. [ré, "back;" servo, "to keep"] To keep back, reserve.

ré-sistō, sittii, sittum, stitère, 3, v, n. [ré, "against;" sisto, "to stand;" To withstand, resist, make opposition or resistance; with Dat.

ré-spicio, specti, spectum, spicère, 3, v, n. [for ré-spicio; fr. ré, "back;" spicēo, "to look"] To look back or behind.

ré-spondeō, spoudi, spousum, spondere, 2, v, a and n. [ré, "in return;" spondeō, "to promise solemnly;" To answer, reply.

respon-sum, si, n. [for respond-sum; fr. respondo, "to answer"] An answer, reply, response.

res-publica, res-públiche, f. [res; publica (f. of publicus), "public;] The commonwealth, state.

ré-spuo, spūtum, spūtere, spūtum, spūtum, spūtum, 3, v, a. [ré, "back;" spūo, "to spit;" To reject, refuse.

1 3-stītīo, stītii, stītum, stītère, 3, v, a. [for re-stātuo; fr. re, "again;" statuo, "to set up"] To set up again; to replace; to restate.

ré-tínēo, tinēi, tantum, tinēre, 2, v, a. [for ré-tendo; fr. ré, "back;" tēnēo, "to hold;" To hold, or keep back; to restrait.

ré-vello, vellum, vellēre, 3, v, a. [ré, "away;" vello, "to pluck;" To pluck, or pull, away; to tear apart.

ré-vertor, versus sum, verti, 3, v, dep. [ré, "back;" vertor, "to turn one's self;" To return.—In the ante-Augustan age the perfect and its derivatives were commonly taken from a form re-vero. The present tenses of re-vero are critically certain in only two passages in two old authors.

ré-vōco, vocavi, vocatūm, vocāre, 1.

v, a. [ré, "back;" voō, "to call;" To call back, recall.

rex, rēgis, m. [for reg-i; fr. reg-o, "to rule;" A king.

rhēdē, ae, f. A four-wheeled chariot or carriage.

ripa, ae, f. A bank of a river or stream.

rógo, āvi, ātum, āre, 1, v, a. To ask, beg, request, solicit.

róta, ae, f. A wheel.

rūb-us, i, m. [prob. rūb-o, "to be read;" A blackberry bush, a bramble.

rūp-es, is, f. [rūmu, "to break;" through root rūs] A city, a steep rock.

rusus, ad, adv. [contr. fr. réversus, "turned back;"] Back again; again, anew, afresh.

sagae, adv. [adverbial neut of obsol. saep-is, "frequent;" Frequently, often, oftentimes.—Particular adverbial expression: saepénūmero (=saepe; númerō, abl. of numerus, "number") Oftentimes, over and over again.

sagittārius, arius, trium, adj. sagitt-us, "an arrow;" Of or belonging to an a-row; arrow.—As Subst.: sagittārius, f, m. a bowman, archer.

sagūs, us, f. [for salv-us; fr. salv-o, "to be well or in good health;" Safety, preservation.

sancio, sanci, sanctum, sanctore, s, v, a. [sanc, a strengthened form of the root sac, to strengthen, whence saecur, "secured;" To confirm, ratify.

sane, sanus, sanitatem, sanctitatem, s, v, a. [sane, "sound" in mind] Soundness of mind, right reason.


sāt-is, adj. and adv. Adj.: Enough, sufficient, satisfactory; satis habenae, to hold or deem enough.—Adv.: To denote diminution, like the English "enough;" Moderately, tolerably.

sātis-facito, feci, factum, fācère, s, v, n. ("To do sufficiently;" hence) With Dat.: To give satisfaction to, whether by word or deed; to make amends; to ask pardon of or apologise to a person offended.

satisfacio, tūnīa, f. [satisfact-o, "to satisfy;" Satisfaction, amends, apology, made to a person offended.

saxum, i, n. [root sax, "sharp;" cp. sagax, sigitā] A huge rough stone; a detached portion or fragment of rock.

scālus, ēris, n. A wicked deed; wickedness, guilt.
VOCABULARY.

185

scientius, iae, f. [scientia, scientius, knowing] Knowledge.

cicio, solvi or soluit, scentum, soire, 4. v. a. To know.

scribo, scrpsi, scriptum, scribere, 3. v. a. To write about; to make mention of in writing.

scum, ti, n. (see custos) A shield.

sectio, titenis, f. [sectio, "to cut"] Booty, spoil, plunder.

(se (reduplicated ses), acc. and abl. of pron. suil.

seclusus; see seclusus.

secreto, adv. [secreto, "secret"] Secretly, privately.

seorum—sum se; see sum.

secondary, prep. gov. acc. [secondary, following] Immediately after, next to, after in time or succession, according to, in accordance with.

secondus, unda, undum, adj. (for sequi-undus; fr. sequor, "to follow") Second: Favorable, propitious, fortunate.

securus, adv. [prob. for sequor; fr. secus, "to be secure"] In comp. with nillo (less by nothing; i.e.) none the less, nevertheless: here nihil is abl. of measure.

sed, conj. [same word as sed-sine, "without"] But.

sedectum (sometimes written sexdecim), num. adj. Indecl. (for sexdecem; fr. sex, "six"); decem, "ten") Sixteen.

sedes, is, fr. [sed-0, "to sit"] A dwelling-place, abode.—Plur.: A settlement as comprising the abodes of several persons.

seditius, is, adj. [contracted from seditio-néus; fr. seditio, "sedition"] Seditious.

sem, abl. [akin to Sans, sana, "the same"]; Gh. 620] Once.

semem-tis, tis, f. [for semin-tis; fr. semin-o, "to sow"] A sowing of seed.

sem-per, adv. [see semel] Ever, always, at all times.

semecto, m. [sinex, sénis, an old man] A member of the council, or assembly of the elders of a state; a senator.

sénatus, atus, m. [sinex, sénis, an old man] The Senate; i.e. the council, or assembly, of elders.

sénatus-consultum; see consultum.

sénex, sénis, adj. comm. gen. [senex, "to be old"] 2d, aged, advanced in years.—As Subst.: comm. gen.: An old man.

sen, na, num. distrib. adj. plur. (for sex-nil; fr. sex, "six") Six each, or apiece; six.

sententia, f. (for sententia; fr. sentiens, sententia, "thinking") An opinion.

sentio, sensi, sensum, sentire, 4. v. a. To perceive.

sentis, is, m. A thorn, briar.

separatim, adv. [separatus, "to separate"] Separately, apart.

sepes, is, f. A hedge, fence.

septem, num adj. indecl. Seven [akin to err-d].

septem-trio, trigon, (more frequently plur.), m. The North Pole, the North fr. Sans, root star, "to strew or scatter," and so, "a strewer of light," a descriptive term for a star. According to this view "septem-triones" means "the seven stars."

septimius, is, imus, num. ord. adj. [septem] Seventh.

sepulchrum, turae, f. [sepellio, "to bury"] A burying, burial.

sequor, a, um, i, 3. v. dep. [root see, "to follow"]; op propos] To follow; to follow in pursuit of, pursue.

serviles, ile, adj. [servus, "a slave"] Of or belonging to, a slave; servile.

servitus, itatis, i. [servus, "a slave"] Slavery, bondage, servitude.

servo, avi, atum, are, v. a. To save, protect, defend from harm, keep unharm'd [akin either to epo, epoo, "to draw or drag," or so, "to draw away or rescue" from an enemy, etc.]; or to Sans. savr-a, "whole, entire," and so, "to make or keep whole," etc.

servus, i. m. (akin to epo, "to drag") A slave, servant.

sae: see se.

se; see sive.

sex, num. adj. indecl. Six [S].

sex a-ginta, num. adj. Indecl. [sex, "six"; (a); ginta = ovar = "ten"] Sixty.

sexcenti, ae, a, num. adj. [sex, "six"]; centum, "a hundred"] Six hundred.

sexdecim; see sexdecim.

si, conj. [S].

abi, dat. of pron. sui.

si, adv. [for si-e, akin to hlo, "this;" suffix ce] In this way, so, thus;
in like manner; to such a degree, so much; sic, to such a degree, that.
sic-ut, adv. [sic, "so;" ut, "as"] So as, just as.
sign-fer, teri, m. [signum, "a standard;" (l) connecting vowel; fer-o, "to bear"] A standard-bearer.
significá-tio, tónias, f. [significa-o, "to signify"] An intimation, a signal.
signi-fic-a-tio-o, aví, átum, áre, i. v. a. [for signi-fic-o; fr. signum, "a sign;" (l) connecting vowel; fác-í, "to make"] To show, point out, indicate.
signum, i. n. A military standard or ensign—signa ferre, to carry on the standards, i.e. to break up the camp; for inferre signa see infero. A signal.
silva, ae, f. A wood, forest [akin to σάφνον].
silv-estris, estre, adj. [silv-s, "a wood"]; Wooded, overgrown with woods, woody.
simul, adv [see semel] Together, at the same time; simul atque, as soon as.
simulá-tio, tónias, f. [simul(a)-o, "to feign"] A feint, pretence, dissimulation.
simuló, aví, átum, áre, i. v. a. [for simul-o; fr. simul-is, "like"] To feign, pretend, dissemble.
si, n. conj. [shortened fr. si-ne; fr. si, "if;" ne, "not"] If on the contrary, if however, but if.
sine, prep. gov. abl. [akin to se, "apart;" "without"] Without.
sinuá-lis, are, adj. [sinu-lis, "single"] Extraordinary, remarkable.
sinister, tra, trum, adj. Left, i.e. on the left hand or side.—As Subst.: sinister, ae, f. The left hand or side.
si-quis, qua, quid or quod, indef. pron. [si, "if;" quí, "any"] If any. As Subst. m. siquís, If any one.
si-ve, (contr. seu), conj. [si, "if;" vi, "or"] Or if, whether—sive (seu).... sive (seu), be it that... or that; if... or... whether... or... sósor, sérí, m. A father-in-law.
sócius, ii, m. [root sak, "to follow;" hence successor]. A confidante, confederate.
sól, sóri, m. [root sak, "to be bright;" scéius (scéius); Gk. σελήνη, "the moon;" χάλιος (σέλεινος); Gk. helle, "brightness"] The sun.
solicítá-tio, tónias, f. [solicit(a)-o, "to instigate"] An instigating, instilling, instigation, urging on.
sollicitó-o, aví, átum, áre, i. v. a. [root solús, Oscan=totus, "all," "whole;" celo, "to stir up"] To instigate, urge, urge on; to tamper with.
sól-um, adv. [sól-us, "alone"] Only, merely.
sólúm, i. n. Ground, soil.
sólus, e, um (Gen. solús, Dat. soil), adj. Alone, only, sole.
sórór, óris, f. A sister; soror ex mater, a sister by his mother, i.e. a half-sister on his mother's side.
sóres, tis, i. A lot.
spatium, ii, n. Distance, interval.—Of time: Space, interval.
spécó-és, ci, f. [speculo, "to see"] Appearance, show.
spéc-tó, tavi, tátem, täre, i. v. a. intense. [id.] To look at earnestly; to regard.
spécúla-tor, tóris, m. [specul(a)-or, "to spy out"] A spy, scout.
spécúl-ór, átus sum, ári, i. v. dep. n. [specul-à, "a watch-tower"] To spy, act the spy.
spér-o, aví, átum, áre, i. v. To hope, expect.
spé-s, e, (Gen. Abl. and Dat. Plur. only in post classical writers) f. [for spér-a: fr. sper-o, as seen by sper-es, an old Acc. Plur. in one of the earliest Roman writers] Hope, expectation;—in pluperfect venire (to come into, i.e.) to form or entertain a hope.
spír-itus, Itás, m [spír-o, "to breathe"] In bad sense and mostly in plur.: Haunthois, pride, arrogance.
sponte; see spónsa.
spont-iis, Gen. and spént-ti, Abl. (fr. an obsolete spóns, of which no other cases than the above are found). I. (for spónt-iis and spónt-ti; fr. spónt-o, "to pledge"). (Gen. spóntis occurs only in phrase Sane spónti esse, to be one's own master, or at one's own disposal). Abl. spónti, with or without post. pron. pron. Of one's (my, thine, his, etc.) own accord; freely, spontaneously.
stá-tim, adv. [stá(a)-o, "to stand"] Immediately, at once.
stá-ti-o, tónias, f. [stá(a)-o, "to stand"] Of soldiers: An outpost, outpost station.
stá-tión-iis, gen. and stá-tión-tes, 3. v. a. [status, uncontr. gen. stát-tis, "a standing position"] To set down as certain in one's own mind; to consider, deem, judge; to decide, resolve, determine.
### VOCABULARY

- **sub-estó, stiit, stísum, sistère, 3. v. n.** [sub, "without force"; estó, "to stand"]
  - To take a stand or position.

- **sub-sum, fili, esse, v. n.** [sub, "beside", near; sum, "to be"]
  - To be beside or near; to be at hand.

- **sub-tráho, tráxi, tráctum, tráthère, 3. v. a.** [sub, "from below"; tráho, "to draw"]
  - Of troops: To draw off, withdraw.

- **sub-vého, vexi, vectum, 3. v. a.** [sub, "from below"; vého, "to carry"]
  - To carry, bring or convey up a stream or by a stream.

### Example Sentences

- "The soldiers hesitated, unsure of the situation."
- "The leaders made a decision to take a stand against the opposition."
témér-e, adv. [ad. (“After the manner of the temerum”); hence] Rashly, unconsideredly.


tempó r o, avi, atum, are, v.n. [prob. akin to tempus, in its etymological force; see tempus] To refrain, abstain, forbear.

With Dat. of reflexive pron.: To moderate, or restrain, one's self.

tem-pus, pórís, n. [root tam, “to cut off”; cp. temp-um, réferre] Time or season of the year; time in general: omni tempore, at every time, i.e., always.

tendo, téendi, tensum or tustum, tendère, 3 v.a. [root tan, “to stretch out”; cp. Grk réie] To stretch out or forth; to extend.

tén-so, ni, tum, ére, 2 v.a. [see tendo] To hold; to possess, be in possession of, etc.; to hold or keep back; to restrain; to occupy.

ténér, éra, érun, adj. [see tendo] Of tender age, young.

ten-to, tavi, tatum, tare, 1 v.a. intens. [ten-co] To attempt, endeavour to do.

ter, num. adv. [trea, trium (with e inserted), “three’’] Three times, thrice.

ter-gum, i, n. The back, whether of men or beasts: terga vertev, to turn the backs, i.e., to take to flight, to flee.

ter-ra, rae, f. [akin to répórou “to be dry”] The earth, soil, ground.

terré-nus, éna, énum, adj. [ter ro, “earth”] Of, or belonging to, the earth.

terr-or, óris, m [terro-“affright”;] Alarm, terror, alarm.

ter-tius, tia, tum, adj. [trea, trium, “three’’] The third.

testa-mountum, menti, n. [testa-or, “to testify or bear witness’’] A will.

test-imoúnum, Imánu, n. [test-or, “to bear witness’’] Witness, evidence, testimony.

testis, is, comm. gen. A witness.

testudo, fádinis, f. [test-a, “a shell’’] Military term: A covering, shed, or penthouse, used for sheltering soldiers engaged in working a battering-ram. From the head of the ram being projected and then drawn under cover, the machine was called “testudo,” or “the tortoise;” the name “testudo” was also given to a body of soldiers who, formed in a compact mass, and with their shields overlapping each other like the scales of a tortoise, advanced to the attack of a place, or defended themselves in the field against the enemy.

timño, ti, no sup., ëre, 2 v.a. and n. Act: To be afraid of, to fear. — Neut.: To fear, be afraid.

tim-idus, is, ida, idum, adj. [tim-so] Fearful, afraid, timid.

tim-or, óris, m. [tim-oi (“A fearing”); hence] Fear, terror.

tóli-éro, éravi, ératum, érére, 1 v.a. [root tol; see tollo] To bear, endure.

tollo, sustuli, subitum, tollère [root tol, whence tolli: see fóro] To lift up; toilere anchorum, to weigh anchor; to take up from its place; to carry or convey away; to do away with, remove.

tor-mentum, menti, n. [fr. torqueo, “to hurl!”] A military engine for hurling missiles.

tót-idem, num. adj. indecl. [tot, “so many”] Just so many, just as many.

tó tus, ta, tum, adj. [“increased,” hence] All, the whole, the whole of.

trab-s, is, f. A beam, timber [akin to tráns-né, “a beam”].

trá-do, dudi, ditum, dère. 3 v.a. [tra, “across”; do, “to give”] To give up, hand over, surrender.

trá-gila, gila, f. [for trahula; fr. trah-o, “to drag”] A kind of large javelin.

tréhó, traxi, traxum, tráhère, 3 v.a. To drag away or along.

trans, prep. gov. acc. Beyond, across, over.

trans-duco, duxi, ductum, dòbro. 3 v.a. [trans, “across”; ducó, “to lead”] To lead across.

trans-grédior, gressus sum, grédl. 3 v.dep. [for transgrédior: fr. trans, “across”; grádi, “to step”] To pass over, pass, cross.


trans-so, vi or in, itum, ire, v. a. [trans, “across”] To go across a thing; to cross, or pass, over.

trans-figo, fixi, fixum, fīgūre, 3 v.a. [trans, “through”; figo, “to fix”; to pierce”] To pierce through, transfix.

trans-nato, nátavi, nátatum, nátire. 1 v.a. [trans, “across”, nátto, “to swim”] To swim across.

trans-porto, portavī, portatum, portam, p. a. [trans, “across”; porto] To carry.” To carry, or convey, across; over; to transport.

tré-cent-i, ae, a, num. adj. [for trí-cent-i; fr. trea, trium, “three”; centum, “a hundred’’] Three hundred.
VOCABULARY.

tres, tria, (Gen. trium), num. adj. Three [tres, tria].
trib-ūnus, un, m. [tribus, "a tribe"] A tribune:—tribunus militum, a military tribune.
tribū-ō, utum, ürē, 3. v. a. To describe, assign.
trī-dūnum, al, n [for tri-divum; fr. tres, tri-um, "three": di-ea, "a day"] A space of three days; three days.
trī-ginta, num. adj. indecl. ("Three tens:" hence) Thirty (tres, tri-um, "three;" ginta = corra = "ten").
trī-ni, na, na, num. distrib. adj. [tres, tri-um, "three"] ("Three each or apiece:" hence) Three.
trī-plex, plēxis, adj. [for tri-plēx; fr. tres, tri-um, "three;" pilōo, "to fold"] Three-fold, triple.
trīs-tis, te, adj. [akin to tōs, "to tremble"] Sad. sorrowful.
trist-itia, itiae, f. [trist-is, "sad"] Sadness, sorrow.
trīb-a, se, f. [akin to tub-ūs, "a tube"] A straight trumpet.
tum, adv. At that time; then [prob. akin to a demonstr. root = Gr. τό]; it is.
tum-ūtūs, ūtūs, m. prob. tum-ō, "to swell") Tumult, uproar, disturbance; insurrection, sedition; servilis tumultus, the insurrection of the slaves.
tum-ūlūs, all, m. [id.] A rising ground, mound.
turpīs, e, adj. Shameful, base, disgraceful.
turpī-tūdo, tūdinis, f. [turpis, in force of "disgraceful"] Disgrace, shame, dishonour.
turrīs, is, (acc. sing. turrīm or tur-rem), f. A tower [tōpūs].
tūtūs, ta, tum, adj. [tō-tor, "to see to"] Safe, secure.

U.
ū-bi, adv. [akin to qui] Of time: When: ubi primum (when first, i.e.) as soon as.
Of place: Where.
ulciscor, ulcus sum, ulciscī, 3. v. dep. To punish, take vengeance on.
ulīs, is, lum, adj. [for un-lus; fr. un-us, "one"] Any. As Subst.: ulīs, lus, m. Any one.
ulter-or, lus, comp. adj [sol. ulter, "that is beyond"] Far.
ultr-ā, prep. gov. acc. [ob. sol. ulter, ult-r-ī, "that is beyond"] Beyond.
ultr-ō, adv. [id. To the further side, on the other side; beyond:—ultrō
VOCABULARY.

Of laws: To enjoy the exercise of.
Of peace: To be in possession of.

utrum-que, adj. [utrumque (the neut. of uter)]
Whether: utrum... an, whether... or;
-utrum... none, whether... or not.

ux-or, oris, f. A wife, spouse.

vaco-o, avi, atum, are, 1. v. n. To be empty, void, or vacant; To be unoccupied.

vaco-us, 6, um, adj. [vaco-o, "to be empty"] With ab: Devoid or destitute of;

vadum, i, n. [vado, "to go"] "That through which one can go;" hence A shallow, shoal.

vag-or, atus sum, ari, 1. v. dep. [vag-us,"wandering"] To wander, roam at large, etc.

vad-60, at, atum, are, 2. v. n. "To be strong or vigorous" in body; hence To be strong in some respect; i.e. to be powerful,
etc. To prevail.

vall-um, i, n. [akin to vall-us, "a stake, palisade"] An earthen wall or rampart set with stakes, palisades; a palisaded mound.

vcr-tus, la, lum, adj. ("Party-coloured, spotted;" hence) Varying, different.

vast-o, avi, atum, are, 1. v. a. [vast-us, "empty"] ("To make vastus;" hence) To lay waste, devastate, ravage.

vaticina-tio, tiosis, f. [vaticin(a)-or, "to predict"] A predicting, soothsaying; a prediction.

ve, enolito conj. Or [akin to Sans. id, "or,"

victor, i, Voc, m. [victorius, "to conquer," through root vic] Conqueror, victor. - As Adj.: Conquering, victorious.

victo-ria,iae, f. [victor, vo-tor] Conquest, victory.

vilmus, tus, m. [for vig-tus; fr. vivo, "to live;" through root viv] A living; a way, or mode, of life.

vico-us, i, m. [root vic, "to dwell"]; op. villa (=vicula); otia] A village.

vido, vidi, visum, videre, 2. v. a. [root vid, "to see;" op. vestis] Act. To see. - See "to see.

vigilia,iae, f. [vigilo, "to watch"] A watch by night. The Romans divided the night into four watches, of three hours each, commencing at 6 o'clock in
the evening, and ending at 6 o'clock in

the morning.

vit-ginti, num. adj., indeed. ("Twice

ten"; hence) Ternity [for bi-ginti; fr. bi.

(--bics), "twice"; gint = soave = "ten").

vit-men, mlns, n. [vit-so, "to bind"]

A plant luxy; an airing, vinthe.

vinco, vinci, vinctum, vincit, 4 v. a.

[prob. akin to vino] To bind, tie.

vino, vies, vicum, vincis, 3 v. a.

To conquer, overcome, vanquish.

vino-ulum, all, n. (vino-to, "to

bind") A chain, bond, fetters.

visor: see vis.

vino-e, a, f. [vinus-us, "pertaining to

the vine"] A vines: a kind of pent-house,

mantes, or shed (built like an arbour),

used in sieges by the assailing party to

defend themselves against the missiles

and the fire hurled from the walls. Its

usual length was sixteen feet, and its

height eight feet. The sides were formed

of wicker work, while the roof was com-

posed of wicker work or planks covered

with raw hides, wet cloths, earth, etc.,
in order to prevent the fire hurled by the

enemy from destroying it. Under cover

of these vines the besiegers carried on

their military operations; either under-

mining the walls, or making a breach in

them by the use of the axes, or battering-

ram.

vinum, i. n. Wine [Fevor].

viri, m. A man.

vir-tus, tatis, t. [vir, "a man"]Cour-

age, bravery, valour.

vis vis (plur. vireas, tarn) f.; Strength,

might, power, force, violence; vim

facere, ("to make," l.e.) employ violence

or force [Viti].

visus, a, us, f. perf. pass. of video;

pro viso, (for that which had been seen,

i.e.) as seen.

vita, tae, t. [for viv-i; fr. viv-o, "to

live"] Life.

vito, av, atum, are, 1. v. a. To avoid,

shun, shrink from.

vix, adv. With difficulty, scarcely,

hardly.

voco, av, atum, are, 1. v. a. To call,

equal; to cite, summon, etc.

volo, voldi, no sup., velle, v. a. irreg.

To be willing; to wish; desire; to have a

wish or desire for;—Only in interrogations,

whether direct or indirect To

signify, mean (akin to belomai — boul-

omai), "to wish."

volunt-tas, tatia, t. [for volent-tas; fr.

volens, volent-is, "willing"] Will, incli-

nation, free-will; wish, desire; good-

will, favour.

volupt-tas, tatia, t. [vulp-e, "accord-

ing to one's desire or inclinations"]

Delight, pleasure.

vox, voes, f. [for voc-o; fr. voc-o, "to

call"] The voice; a word, speech, etc., as

that which is spoken.

vulg-o, adv. [adverbial abl. of vulgar-

us, "the common people"] Commonly,

generally, everywhere.

vulgus, i. m. and n. The multitude

or mass; the common people, mob, popu-

lace.

vuln-o, av, atum, are, 1. v. a.

vulnus, vulniris, "a wound"] To wound.

vuln-us, eris, u. A wound.

vuln-tas, tatis, m. [prob. vul-o, "to

wound"] Expression of countenance, mien,

looks; face.
THE COPP, CLARK CO., LIMITED.

CLASSICS.

**Xenophon's Anabasis, Book III.**
White's Grammar School Text and Vocabulary. With Explanatory Notes by JOHN HENDERSON, M.A.
75 Cents.
(Notes only, in separate volume, 35 Cents.)

**Homer's Iliad, Book VI.**
With Life of Homer, Critical and Explanatory Notes, &c., by REV. T. H. L. LEARY, D.C.L
30 Cents.

**Vergil's Aeneid, Book V.**
Notes and Vocabulary by JOHN HENDERSON, M.A.
60 Cents.

**Caesar's Bellum Gallicum, Books I. & II.**
Notes, Vocabulary and Maps by JOHN HENDERSON, M.A.
75 Cents.
(Also in separate volumes, each 50 Cents.)

**Kelley's & Giles' Keys to the Classics,**
List sent upon application.

**Simpson's Latin Prose,**
**PART I.—CAESARIAN PROSE.**
Special Canadian Edition, — 60 Cents.
GERMAN.

Riehl’s Culturgeschichtliche,
PITT PRESS EDITION.
Notes and Index by H. J. Wolstenholme, B.A.
— IN ONE VOLUME WITH —
Schiller’s Der Taucher,
Notes by W. H. Van der Smissen, M.A.
$1.50.

Freytag’s Die Journalisten,
Commentary by Walter D. Toy, M.A.
40 Cents.

FRENCH.

Enault’s Le Chien du Capitaine,
and Daudet’s La Belle Hivernaire,
With Notes and Vocabulary by E. J. McIntyre,
St. Catharines Collegiate Institute.
75 Cents.

Erckmann-Chatrian—“Madame Therese,”
Notes by Prof. F. Bécher, Harvard College.
70 Cents.

Labiche—La Grammaire,
Notes by Schele de Vere, Ph.D., LL.D.
30 Cents.

De Fivas’ Introductory French Reader,
50 Cents.

THE COPP, CLARK CO., LTD., TORONTO.
ENGLISH.

Shakespeare's Tempest,
CLARENDON PRESS EDITION.
40 Cents.

Scott's Ivanhoe,
BLACK'S EDITION.
15 Cents.

Mackail's Warren Hastings,
With Introduction, Chronological Tables, Critical and
Explanatory Notes, &c.
- TOGETHER WITH -
Notes on Composition and Analysis of Scott's Ivanhoe,
By G. Mercer Adam
- AND -
George Dickson, M.A.,
Principal Upper Canada Coll.
40 Cents.

Chaucer's Prologue,
CLARENDON PRESS.
Edited by Rev. R. Morris, LL.D. With additional Notes by
Rev. W. W. Skeat, Litt. D.
Special Canadian Edition, - -  60 Cents.

Literature, 1890-91,
SELECTIONS FROM LONGFELLOW.
With Life of Longfellow, Notes, &c., by H. I. Strang, B.A.,
and A. J. Moore, B.A.
75 Cents.

THE COPP, CLARK CO., LTD., TORONTO.